st

PREP

FIRST TERM

NEW HELLO!

AL ADWAA

Gem

2024



AL ADWAA
Gem

New Hello!

الصف الأول الإعدادى

الفصل الدراسى الأول

يوسف محمد كاملم

2024

Prepared by

Said Darahem

&

A Group of Experts in Teaching English

7

راجع إجاباتك

نزل إجابات الكتاب بصيغة PDF

ذاكر صح

هنا تجد كودك الشخصي

www.aladwaa.com Follow Us

NAHDET MISR PUBLISHING HOUSE



ذاكر صح

- كل منا يفضل طريقة وأسلوبًا للتعلم، ولكى تكتشف أفضل طريقة للتعلم تناسبك أجب عن الأسئلة التالية، واختر الإجابة المناسبة لك، ثم رتب العدد الإجمالى لإجاباتك من بين كل من: (أ) و (ب) و (جـ):

ضع علامةً أمام (أ) إذا كانت العبارة صحيحة دائمًا بالنسبة لك، وأمام (ب) إذا كانت العبارة صحيحة أحيانًا، وأمام (جـ) إذا كانت العبارة ليست صحيحة أبدًا:

١ لا أفضل الجلوس والاستماع إلى الآخرين فترات طويلة.

٢ أجيد فهم التعليمات والتفسيرات الشفهية.

٣ أصور الكلمات فى عقلى حتى أستطيع تهجيها.

٤ أفضل تكرار سماع الكلمات لمساعدتى على التهجى.

٥ أحب أن يختارنى معلمى لقراءة الدرس.

٦ أستمتع بالمشاركة فى المناقشات كمستمع ومتحدث.

٧ أجد صعوبة فى البقاء دون حركة.

٨ أجيد الربط بين المعلومات التى يتضمنها الدرس وفهمها.

٩ أحرك يدى كثيرًا أثناء الحديث مع الآخرين.

١٠ أستطيع ربط معلومات مختلفة ببعضها، والخروج بنتائج مبتكرة.

١١ أمتلك القدرة على تخيل ما أقرأ.

١٢ أتعلم بشكل أفضل من خلال الأنشطة العملية.

١٣ أحب الاستماع إلى الموسيقى أثناء المذاكرة.

١٤ أفضل أن أقرأ المعلومات بصوت عالٍ لأتمكن من فهمها.

١٥ لا أستطيع التركيز لفترة طويلة عند الاستماع لشخص يتحدث.

	١	٢	٣	٤	٥	٦	٧	٨	٩	١٠	١١	١٢	١٣	١٤	١٥
أ															
ب															
جـ															

اعرف نمط تعلمك

حدد درجاتك

- **إذا كانت معظم إجاباتك (أ) بالنسبة للأسئلة أرقام: ٣ ، ٥، ١٠، ١١، ١٥ فأنت متعلم بصرى.**
- **إذا كانت معظم إجاباتك (ب) بالنسبة للأسئلة أرقام: ٢ ، ٤، ٦، ٨ ، ١٤ فأنت متعلم سمعى.**
- **إذا كانت معظم إجاباتك (جـ) بالنسبة للأسئلة أرقام: ١ ، ٧، ٩، ١٢، ١٣ فأنت متعلم حركى.**

بصرى
ننصحك عند المذاكرة بأن تتعامل مع شىء معروض أو مكتوب لاستيعاب المعلومات، مثل: الرسوم البيانية، والخرائط الذهنية، ومقاطع الفيديو، والبطاقات التعليمية، وأن تحول المادة المكتوبة إلى أشكال ملونة، وصور تعبر عن المادة التى تذاكرها.

سمعى
ننصحك عند المذاكرة بأن تقرأ المعلومات بصوت عالٍ؛ فهذا سيساعدك على فهمها، وكذلك المذاكرة فى مجموعات عن طريق المناقشة وتبادل المعلومات والعصف الذهنى.

حركى
ننصحك عند المذاكرة بأن ترسم ما تسمعه أو تحاول تخيله، وأن تتعلم من خلال الأنشطة التى تتطلب الحركة والتحدث مع الآخرين من خلال تمثيل الدرس على شكل مسرحية مثلًا.

دليلك للمحتوى الرقمى

١ افتح الـ QR Reader



٢ ضع الهاتف على صورة الـ QR



٣ عند ظهور الرابط قُم بالضغط عليه



من خلال الرابط يمكنك أن تستفيد من:

1 **Study** — شاهد فيديو شرح الدرس

2 **Practice** — يمكنك أن تحل تدريبات أكثر على الدرس

3 **Test Yourself** — حل اختبارات أكثر على الدرس

4 **Check your Answers** — راجع إجابات كتاب الشرح

تصنيف بلوم

تم الاعتماد في إعداد التدريبات والأنشطة داخل الكتاب على تصنيف بلوم

نواتج التعلم والمستويات المعرفية:

تمثل نواتج التعلم ما ينبغي أن يعرفه الطالب ويكون قادرًا على أدائه بعد دراسته لمقرر دراسي معين، فيما تشمل الأهداف المعرفية جميع النشاطات الذهنية أو العقلية، ويبدأ تصنيف نواتج التعلم في المجال المعرفي من العمليات العقلية البسيطة ويمتد إلى العمليات الأكثر تعقيدًا (تصنيف بلوم)، ويوضح الشكل التالي هذه العمليات:



يلخص - يؤلف - يخطط - يربط - يصمم
يكتب موضوعًا - يصنف - يقترح.

يقيّم - ينقد - يصنّف - يعلل -
يحكم - يبدي رأيه - يبرهن - يثبت.

يحلل - يستنتج - يصنف -
يستدل - يفرق - يوضح.

يستخدم - يطبق - يربط -
يحلل - يخطط - ينشئ.

يميز - يستنتج - يتنبأ - يكتب -
يعيد صياغة - يعطي أمثلة -
يستدل - يرتب.

يذكر - يتعرف - يحدد -
يصف - يعدد - يسمي.

ستجد تلك الأيقونات بجانب كل سؤال في تدريبات الأضواء؛ لمعرفة تصنيف السؤال وفقًا لهرم بلوم المعرفي.

Creating | Evaluating | Analysing | Applying | Understanding | Remembering

رحلتك مع الأضواء

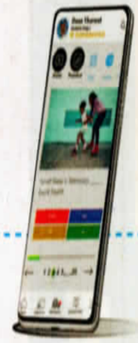


فيديوهات تفاعلية
على كل درس

1 Study

شرح مُبسط ووافٍ





تدريبات تفاعلية
على كل درس

2 Practice

تدريبات متنوعة
ومتدرجة المستوى





اختبار تفاعلي
على كل درس

3 Test Yourself

اختبارات مطابقة لأحدث
المواصفات الامتحانية





اعرف مستواك من
تقارير متابعة الأداء

4 Assess your progress

حدد مستواك فى
نهاية كل اختبار



#معاك_الكتاب_معاك_الApp

Contents

Module 1 Family and friends

Module 2 The world around us

توزيع منهج اللغة الإنجليزية للصف الأول الإعدادى للعام الدراسى 2023-2024
الفصل الدراسى الأول

Month	New Hello! English for preparatory schools Year Three (SB + WB)		
September	Unit 1	December	Unit 5 (cont.) + 6 + Review B
October	Unit 1 (cont.) + 2 + 3	January (2024)	General Revision
November	Review A + 4 + 5		



Unit 1

My family and me

Objectives of the unit

Reading	An interview with twin brothers; Heidi; a text about a gymnast
Writing	A paragraph on hobbies; a description of a person in your family
Listening	An interview with twin brothers
Speaking	Talking about your family; asking questions
Language	Pronouns; present simple
Life Skills	Self-management
Values	Love of family
Issues	Awareness of rights and duties; loyalty and belonging

Tapescripts

WB تشير لأسئلة كتاب التدريبات SB تشير لأسئلة كتاب الطالب

STUDY | Watch a video | # Lessons 1 & 2



SB pages 2 - 5 | WB pages 72 & 73

A Vocabulary

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

Family members أفراد الأسرة			
aunt (n)	عمة/خالة – زوجة العم/الخال	great-grandfather (n)	الجد الأكبر (جد الأب/الأم)
daughter (n)	ابنة	great-grandmother (n)	الجدة الكبرى (جدة الأب/الأم)
grandfather (n)	جد	son (n)	ابن
grandmother (n)	جدة	uncle (n)	عم/خال - زوج العمة/الخالة
Both ذكور وإناث			
cousin (n)	ابن/ابنة (العم/العمة/الخال/الخالة)	great-grandparents (n)	أجداد الأجداد
grandchildren (n)	أحفاد	parents (n)	الوالدان

(be) aged (adj)	بالغ من العمر	interview (n)	مقابلة/حوار
band (n)	فرقة موسيقية	twin (n)	توءم
diary (n)	مفكرة/يوميات	family tree (n)	شجرة العائلة

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

arrive (d) (v)	يصل	football player (n)	لاعب كرة قدم
birthday (n)	عيد ميلاد	musical instrument (n)	آلة موسيقية
busy (adj)	مشغول/مزدحم	sports (n)	ألعاب رياضية
children's hospital (n)	مستشفى أطفال	together (adv)	معًا/ سويًا
favourite hobby	هواية مفضلة	use (d) (v)	يستخدم

Check Point

Choose and complete: hospital – uncle – hobby – aunt

1. My .... is called Wafaa.
2. Reading is my favourite ....
3. My cousin is in the .... because he's ill.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

(n) = noun | (adj) = adjective | (prep) = preposition
(v) = verb | (adv) = adverb | (conj) = conjunction

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

play	music	يعزف موسيقى	make	noise	يصنع ضوضاء
play	chess	يلعب شطرنج	do	hobbies	يمارس هوايات
play	the drums	يعزف على الطبل	do	voluntary work	يقوم بعمل تطوعى
go	swimming	يذهب للسباحة	listen to	music	يستمع إلى الموسيقى
watch	a football match	يشاهد مباراة كرة القدم	You're welcome.		عفوًا

Prepositions — حروف الجر

a picture of	صورة لـ	clap (ped) for	يصفق لـ
belong to	ينتمى إلى/يخص	proud of	فخور بـ
at the hospital	فى المستشفى	on TV/the radio	فى التلفاز/على الراديو
for no money	بدون مال	What kind of ...?	ما نوع ...؟

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.
drive	يقود/يسوق	drove	driven
show	يبين/يوضح	showed	shown
hit	يضرب	hit	hit
throw	يرمى	threw	thrown
write	يكتب	wrote	written
meet	يقابل	met	met

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
finish	ينتهى	start/begin	يبدأ
true	صواب	false	خطأ

Check Point

Choose and complete: to – for – do – make

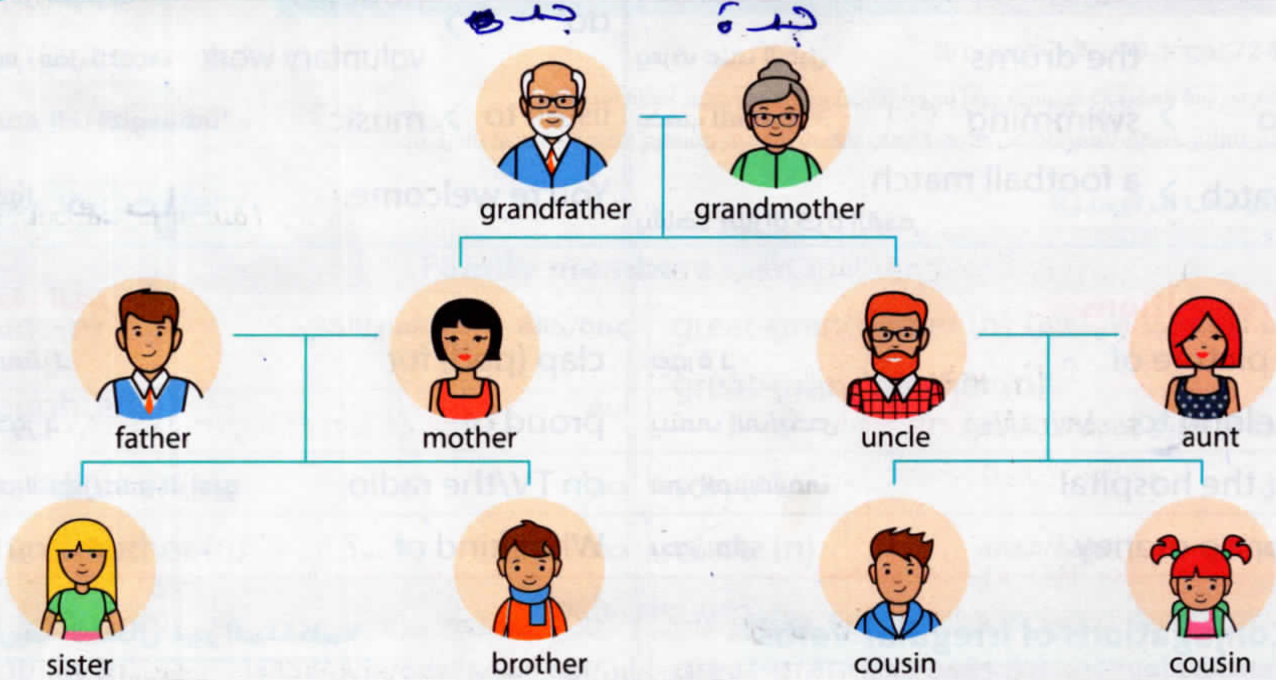
1. Don't .....make..... noise. Your father is sleeping.
2. That car belongs .....To..... my uncle.
3. What hobbies do you .....do..... in your free time?

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا
لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 Family members



Relationship

grandfather	is my father's/ mother's father.
grandmother	is my father's/ mother's mother.
brother	is my father's/ mother's son.
sister	is my father's/ mother's daughter.
uncle	is my father's/ mother's brother.
aunt	is my father's/ mother's sister.
cousin	is my uncle's/ aunt's son/ daughter.

2 **is called** — يُسمى / يُدعى

- My grandmother is called Huda.

3 **Let's + inf.** — هيا بنا (تستخدم للاقتراح)

- Let's **go** to meet our grandparents.

4 **, too** — أيضًا (تأتى فى آخر الجملة المثبتة)

- My mum is a teacher. My dad is a teacher, too.

5 **go + (v + ing)** يذهب / **love – like (noun/ v + ing)** يحب

- I go **swimming** on Saturdays.
- I like **chess/playing** chess.
- I love **football/watching** football matches.

6 **on + (Saturday, Sunday, ...)** — تأتى مع أيام الأسبوع

- I play basketball on **Mondays** and **Wednesdays**.
- Tarek goes swimming on **Tuesdays** and he plays football on **Saturdays**.

7 **twins (n)** — توءم (اسم يمكن جمعها)

تشير إلى مجموعة من الإخوة أو الأخوات من نفس الأم وفى نفس العمر.

- Eyad and Adham are twins.

twin (adj) — توءم (صفة - لا تجمع)

- Sally is my twin sister.
- Hany and Hady are twin brothers.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My father is .... Amr.
   a) calls b) call
   c) called d) cold
2. It's raining. Let's .... an umbrella.
   a) take b) taking
   c) takes d) took
3. I usually go shopping .... Sundays.
   a) in b) at
   c) on d) with

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

(1) مجموعة (2) آلات (3) نفس العمر

قراءة فقط

Definitions التعريفات

band	فرقة موسيقية	a group[1] of people who play music together
chess	شطرنج	a game for 2 people
drums	طبول	musical instruments[2] which you hit to make a noise
twins	توءم	brothers or sisters who are the same age[3]
voluntary work	عمل تطوعى	work you do for no money

هذا الجزء يساعد الطالب على فهم المفردات بشكل أفضل ويقوم بتهيئته للصف الثالث الإعدادى والمرحلة الثانوية.

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

حفظ

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
finish	ينتهى	end	ينتهى
true	صواب	right	صواب
arrive	يصل	come	يأتى

Suffix اللاحقة

حفظ

اللاحقة: حرف أو مجموعة من الحروف توضع فى نهاية الكلمة لتكون كلمة مختلفة وغالبًا ما تغير نوع الكلمة.

Word الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
play (v) يلعب	-er	تحويل الفعل لاسم فاعل	player (n) لاعب
music (n) موسيقَى	-al	تحويل الاسم لصفة	musical (adj) موسِيقى

Similar spelling - Different meaning

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهة
diary	مفكرة/يوميات	dairy	منتجات الألبان
band	فرقة موسيقية	bend	يثنى / يطوى
uncle	عم/خال	ankle	كاحل القدم

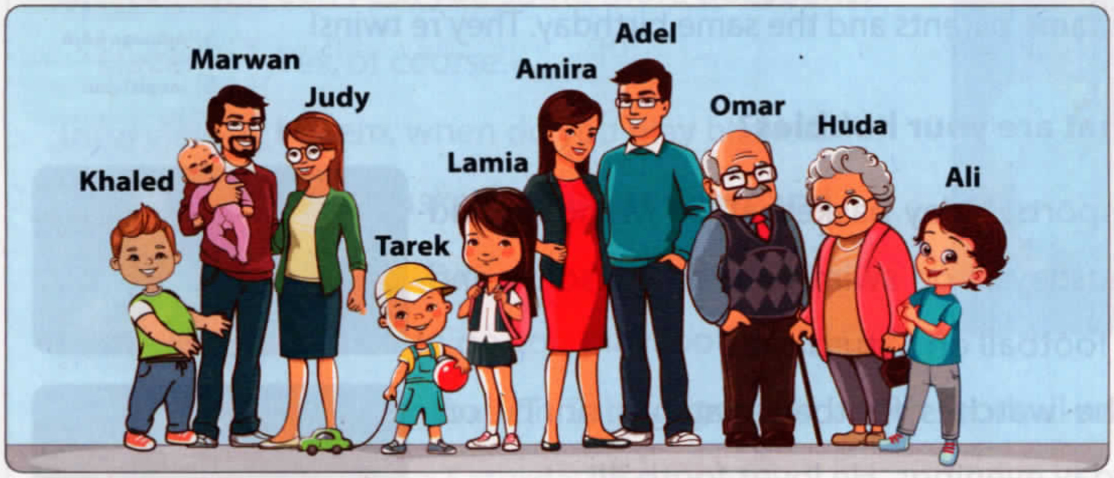
B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 1

Pre-reading question:

- How many members are there in your family?

Read and write the names of the people 1–10. *SB page 3*



(1) الوالدان

(2) ابنة

(3) أبناء

(4) خالة

(5) زوج الخالة

(6) ابن الخالة

Hello! My name's Ali. I'm 13. This is a picture of my family. My mum's name is Amira. She's a teacher. Next to her is my dad. His name is Adel. He's a teacher, too. Both my parents(1) are teachers at my school. They have one daughter(2) – she's my sister, Lamia, and she's 9 years old. And they have two sons(3) – me, and my brother, Khaled. He's 11.

Our grandmother is 64 and she's called Huda. She's my mum's mother. My mum's father is our grandfather – he's called Omar. He's 65. Their daughter's called Judy. She's my mum's sister and she's my aunt(4). My uncle(5) is called Marwan. He is a doctor. Their son is called Tarek, and he's my cousin(6). It's his birthday today – he's 3 years old.

Post-reading question: Choose:

- The main idea of the text is ....

a) Ali's family b) Ali's school

c) Ali's day d) Ali's hobby

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

daughter /'dɔːtəʳ/

picture /pɪktʃəʳ/

Listen and complete the text with possessive adjectives. *WB page 72*

Lara : Hi! **My** name's Lara and this is **my** family. That's **my** brother. **His** name's Ayman. Lina and Hatem are **our** parents. We have one cousin, Khadeeja. **Her** parents are **my** uncle and aunt. **Their** names are Imad and Dina. What about you? What's **your** name?

Pre-reading question: - What's your favourite sport?

Read the interview and answer the question. **SB page 4**

(1)	مقابلة/ حوار
(2)	توءم
(3)	بالغ من العمر
(4)	الموسيقى
(5)	فرقة موسيقية
(6)	عمل تطوعي

An interview[1] with twin[2] brothers

Meet Hazem and Hatem. They are brothers and they are both aged[3] 12. They have the same parents and the same birthday. They're twins!

Interviewer: What are your hobbies?



Hazem I like sports. I play basketball on Mondays and Wednesdays. I go swimming on Tuesdays and I play football on Saturdays.



Hatem And he watches football matches on TV on Saturday evenings. He loves football!

Hazem I love football!



Hatem I don't like football but I like music. I play the drums and I listen to music[4].

Hazem He plays the drums in a band[5].

Interviewer: Do you have any hobbies that you both like?

Hazem We play chess together on Saturdays. Hatem usually wins.

Hatem Yes, that's true! And on Saturday afternoons we do voluntary work[6].

Interviewer: What kind of voluntary work?

Hazem We help in the children's hospital.

Hatem We play games with the children and read them stories. It's great!

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

voluntary /vɒləntri/ Wednesday /wenz.deɪ/

Post-reading questions:

1. Who always wins at chess?
2. **Choose:** The word "voluntary" means work you do ....
   - a) for a lot of money
   - b) for no money
   - c) for much money
   - d) to be rich

Pre-listening question:

- What are your favourite hobbies?

Listen and complete the diaries. *SB page 5*



Interviewer	Can I ask you some more questions?
Hazem	Yes, of course.
Interviewer	Hazem, when do you play basketball?
Hazem	I play basketball on Mondays and Wednesdays.
Interviewer	And when do you play football?
Hazem	I play football on Saturdays and I watch football matches on the TV on Saturday evenings.
Interviewer	When do you go swimming?
Hazem	I go swimming on Tuesdays.
Interviewer	Wow, you are busy! Hatem, when do you play the drums?
Hatem	I play the drums on Mondays at home. And I play the drums in a band on Thursdays.
Interviewer	What do you do on Tuesdays and Wednesdays?
Hatem	I listen to music. I like pop music.
Interviewer	What do you do on Saturdays?
Hatem	I help my mother and I do voluntary work with Hazem. And on Sundays I play chess with Hazem or my dad.
Interviewer	Thank you both.
Hazem	You're welcome.



Post-listening question:

- List the activities that Hazem does every week.

PRACTICE Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

▶ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. My father and mother are my .... (المنوفيه ٢٠٢٣)

   a) grandchildren   b) cousins   c) parents   d) daughters

2. This is my .... He's my mother's brother.

   a) son   b) father   c) ankle   d) uncle

3. Your mum or dad's mother is your .... (دمياط ٢٠٢٣)

   a) grandmother   b) aunt   c) grandfather   d) grandparents

4. Osama plays the violin in a famous .... (الفيوم ٢٠٢٣)

   a) band   b) bank   c) bend   d) pond

5. I like my .... Abdullah because he's very kind and friendly.

   a) aunt   b) sister   c) daughter   d) cousin

6. Eman and Amany are .... They are sisters and aged 15. (المنوفيه ٢٠٢٣)

   a) double   b) couple   c) twins   d) pairs

7. I'm .... I don't have time to play. (الشرقية ٢٠٢٢)

   a) busy   b) free   c) ready   d) strong

8. We usually .... swimming in the sea in summer.

   a) play   b) go   c) do   d) make

9. Your sister is your parent's .... (المنوفية ٢٠٢٢)

   a) daughter   b) cousin   c) mother   d) aunt

10. My little brother is .... five years.

    a) ages   b) age   c) aged   d) age's

11. My sister's .... is in October. It's a special day.

    a) band   b) birthday   c) diary   d) chess

12. I always .... chess with my dad every Friday.

    a) do   b) make   c) get   d) play

13. My father .... to football matches on the radio. WB

    a) listens   b) plays   c) does   d) watches

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We never go to school .... Fridays. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) in b) at c) for d) on
2. Reading and chess are my favourite .... الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
   a) hopes b) foods c) meals d) hobbies
3. I .... tennis matches on TV. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
   a) wash b) read c) watch d) write
4. Our parents are proud .... us. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
   a) at b) of c) on d) to
5. I usually .... to music on the radio. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) listen b) hear c) make d) do
6. The teacher was angry because most boys .... noise.
   a) made b) read c) watched d) wrote
7. A .... is a group of people playing musical instruments together. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣
   a) parent b) party c) band d) chorus
8. Your parents, brothers and sisters are called your family .... بور سعيد ٢٠٢٠
   a) friends b) members c) cousins d) aunts
9. .... are musical instruments which you hit with your hands or sticks. الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
   a) Drums b) Guitars c) Flutes d) Harps
10. My brother has a/an .... to get a job.
    a) instrument b) interview c) match d) visit
11. I write everything during the day in my ....
    a) dairy b) interview c) band d) diary
12. She works at hospital for no money. She does .... work. دمياط ٢٠٢٣
    a) easy b) voluntary c) worthless d) bad
13. My favourite book is .... *"Treasure Island"*. الغربية ٢٠٢٠
    a) cold b) called c) pulled d) scored

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Language

Pronouns
الضمائر

Subject Pronouns ضمائر الفاعل
I/ He/ She/ It/ You/ They/ We
تأتى فى بداية الجملة

Object Pronouns ضمائر المفعول
me/ him/ her/ it/ you/ them/ us
تأتى بعد فعل/حرف جر

Possessive Adjectives صفات الملكية
my/ his/ her/ its/ your/ their/ our
يتبعها الشىء المملوك

Possessive Pronouns ضمائر الملكية
mine/ his/ hers/ yours/ theirs/ ours
لا يأتى بعدها الشىء المملوك

1 Subject & Object Pronouns ضمائر الفاعل وضمائر المفعول

Subject pronouns ضمائر الفاعل (تأتى فى بداية الجملة)		**Object pronouns** ضمائر المفعول (تأتى بعد الفعل أو حرف الجر)	
I	- I have a shirt.	**me**	- My father bought it **for** me.
You	- You have a book.	**you**	- This book belongs **to** you.
He	- He has a jacket.	**him**	- This jacket belongs **to** him.
She	- She has a dog.	**her**	- I **saw** her playing with it.
It	- It has a long neck.	**it**	- I like **watching** it.
We	- We have a bird.	**us**	- This bird **makes** us happy.
You	- You have a house.	**you**	- This house belongs **to** you.
They	- They have a car.	**them**	- This car belongs **to** them.

2 Possessive Adjectives & Possessive Pronouns صفات وضمائر الملكية

Possessive adjectives صفات الملكية صفات الملكية هى صفات تدل على الملكية، وتختلف عن ضمائر الملكية فى أنها (يأتى بعدها الشىء المملوك)		Possessive pronouns ضمائر الملكية ضمائر الملكية هى ضمائر تدل على تملك الشىء وتأتى منفصلة (لا يأتى بعدها الشىء المملوك)	
My	- This is my **pen**.	**mine**	- This pen is mine.
Your	- This is your **book**.	**yours**	- This book is yours.
His	- This is his **jacket**.	**his**	- This jacket is his.
Her	- This is her **dress**.	**hers**	- This dress is hers.
Its	- I have a car, its **colour** is red.	**......**	....
Our	- This is our **house**.	**ours**	- This house is ours.
Your	- This is your **car**.	**yours**	- This car is yours.
Their	- This is their **bike**.	**theirs**	- This bike is theirs.

لاحظ

للسؤال عن مالك الشىء نستخدم (Whose) بمعنى ملك من/لمن.

1. Whose + الشىء المملوك ...?

- **A: Whose** pen is this?
- **B:** It's **my** pen. **B:** It's **mine**.
- **A: Whose** shoes are these?
- **B:** They are Hoda's shoes. They are **hers**. **B:** They are Hoda's.

2. belong to + مالك الشىء تخص/ تنتمى لـ

وتستخدم للتعبير عن الملكية

- This dress **belongs to** my sister.
- These shoes **belong to** my father.
- It's my father's car. It **belongs to** him.

Got it ?

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس

Read and correct the underlined words:

1. This book is Mona's. It belongs to hers. (..............................)
- الإجابة الصحيحة (her) لأن بعد حرف الجر to نضع ضمير مفعول يعود على الاسم (Mona) وهى مفرد مؤنث.
2. That red bag doesn't belong to me. My is black. (..............................)
- الإجابة الصحيحة (Mine) لأن ضمائر الملكية لا يتبعها اسم.
3. Huda and Omar love them parents. (..............................)
- الإجابة الصحيحة (their) لأن صفات الملكية يتبعها اسم (parents).

PRACTICE — Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Throw the ball to ……………….., please. I am waiting. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) I b) mine c) my d) me
2. Grandfather arrives at 5 o'clock. Let's go to meet ……………….. . WB
   a) he b) his c) him d) her
3. This is my aunt. ……………….. name is Amal. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) His b) Her c) Hers d) My
4. Tell ……………….. about your family. البحيرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) I b) my c) me d) mine
5. That's ……………….. father's car. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) I b) me c) my d) mine
6. Our parents are proud of ……………….. because we work hard at school. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) her b) us c) our d) she
7. Look at Basmala and Batoul! ……………….. are walking quickly.
   a) They b) Them c) She d) Her
8. The children took ……………….. books from the teacher. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) they b) their c) theirs d) mine
9. Ali is my friend. I'm writing a letter to ……………….. .
   a) him b) he c) she d) her

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. This car belongs to me. It's <u>my</u>. (………………………) القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
2. Ali is my best friend and <u>her</u> hobby is watching TV. (………………………) القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
3. Amira and Noha love <u>them</u> parents. (………………………) كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢
4. That's <u>me</u> pen and this is yours. (………………………) الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
5. Can you give me <u>you</u> ruler, please? (………………………)
6. I have got a brother. <u>He</u> name is Mustafa. (………………………) دمياط ٢٠٢٣

Time to Practise

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My father gave .... his watch. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
   a) I b) my c) mine d) me
2. The radio belongs to my mother. It's .... الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
   a) her b) mine c) hers d) his
3. Clap for the football players. .... played very well. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) Their b) Them c) They d) Theirs
4. We can ride .... bikes.
   a) ours b) our c) we d) us
5. Your dress is new. .... is old. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣
   a) She b) You c) Mine d) Me
6. Hany and I are friends. .... live in Tanta.
   a) They b) We c) Us d) Our
7. Munir and Mustafa are twins. .... sister is called Radwa. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) Their b) They c) We d) Our
8. **A:** .... pencil is this? **B:** It's Heba's.
   a) Whose b) When c) Where d) What
9. There are two dogs. .... are brown and white.
   a) It b) Its c) They d) Their

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. That pencil case belongs to Ali. It's <u>him</u>. (...................) القاهرة ٢٠٢٠
2. It's her car. <u>He</u> often drives it. (...................) كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢
3. My son always does <u>he</u> homework at night. (...................)
4. This red bag belongs to me. It's <u>hers</u>. (...................) الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣
5. She is my sister. I'm <u>hers</u> brother. (...................) القليوبية ٢٠٢٢

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

D Skills

Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

How to write about your family

كيفية الكتابة عن أسرتك

- My name's (الاسم).
- I'm (عدد السنوات) years old.
- My dad's name is (الاسم). He is a/an (الوظيفة).
- My mum's name is (الاسم). She is a/an (الوظيفة).
- I have (عدد) brothers and (عدد) sisters.
- My grandfather is called (الاسم).
- My grandmother is called (الاسم).
- I have (عدد) cousins. I love my family.

Writing tips

Use capital letters for the beginning of a sentence, names, cities, countries and touristic sites.

استخدم الحروف الكبيرة مع بداية الجملة وأسماء الأشخاص والمدن والدول والمعالم السياحية.

Example

My family tree

My name's Tarek. I'm twelve years old. I love sports. I go to a preparatory school for boys. My dad's name is Ali. He's a teacher of English. He is a good teacher. All the students like him. He's kind and friendly. My mum's name's Aya. She's a nurse. She works in a big hospital. She helps sick people. I have one brother and one sister. My brother is called Hossam. He's 9 years old. My sister is called Nahla. She's 7 years old. My grandfather is called Sabry and my grandmother is called Safia. I have two cousins, Bahaa and Omar. We live in a big city. I love my family very much.

Check Point

Write a paragraph about:

"All about you"

My name's ....
....
....
....
....
....
....

TEST YOURSELF

Take a Test

Unit 1 Lessons (1 & 2)

17

1 **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1. Where does your family live?
   a) In Paris. b) In Cairo. c) In a village. d) In Aswan.
2. Where does your father work?
   a) In France. b) In a school. c) In a hospital. d) In an airport.
3. What's your mother's job?
   a) A doctor. b) A nurse. c) An engineer. d) A teacher.
4. How many brothers do you have?
   a) One. b) Two. c) Three. d) None.

2 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. I like playing the .... in a band. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
   a) chess b) drums
   c) football d) science
2. Famous people usually have a .... life. They have no time to relax. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٠
   a) poor b) strange
   c) busy d) normal
3. Your aunt is your mother's .... كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢
   a) son b) sister
   c) cousin d) daughter
4. That necklace belongs .... my sister.
   a) on b) with
   c) to d) at
5. "False" is the opposite of ....
   a) true b) wrong
   c) proud d) busy
6. Maher .... voluntary work at a hospital.
   a) goes b) gives
   c) plays d) does
7. We are all .... to be Egyptians. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) pound b) proud
   c) pond d) famous

8. Tarek and .... cousin went to the park. الفيوم ٢٠٢٢

a) his b) him c) her d) he

9. .... dresses are these? They are Sara's. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣

a) Who's b) Whose c) Who d) What

10. My dog is bigger than ....

a) yours b) your c) their d) our

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. The dog had his breakfast. (..................)
2. This isn't our ball. Theirs is black and white. (..................)
3. Tarek is my cousin. Today is her birthday. (..................) الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
4. Amgad takes her daughter to the funfair to play and have fun. (..................)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on: المنوفية ٢٠٢٣

"Your family"

....

....

....

....

....

....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

1 The twins are two children born at the .... time.

a) same b) different c) similar d) difficult

2 Everyone should .... a hobby to do.

a) play b) take c) do d) have

3 Here are the photos of Nader and me. .... are sitting under the tree.

a) Them b) You c) We d) They

STUDY

Lessons 3 & 4



SB pages 6 - 8 | WB pages 74 & 75

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

adventure (n)	مغامرة	mountain (n)	جبل
attic (n)	علية المنزل/السندرة	orphan (adj/n)	يتيم
goat (n)	عنزة	sheep (n)	خروف/أغنام

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

airport (n)	مطار	city (n)	مدينة
beach (n)	شاطئ	Egypt (n)	مصر
bread (n)	خبز	How long ...?	كم المدة ...؟

Check Point

Choose and complete: lion – goat – mountain

1 The .... is my favourite farm animal.

2 This .... is very high.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

catch > a plane	يلحق بالطائرة	see > birds	يرى الطيور
come > home	يأتى إلى البيت	walk > in the mountains	يمشى فى الجبال
make > a video call	يجرى مكالمة فيديو	work > hard	يعمل بجد

Prepositions — حروف الجر

away from	بعيدًا عن	in bed	فى السرير
at the top of	فى قمة	live with	يعيش مع
by bus	بالأتوبيس	on the phone	على الهاتف
communicate with	يتواصل مع	talk to	يتكلم إلى/مع
good at	جيد فى	think of	يفكر فى

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.	Present		Past simple	P.P.
catch	يلحق بـ	caught	caught	know	يعرف	knew	known
drink	يشرب	drank	drunk	take	يأخذ/ يستغرق	took	taken
feel	يشعر	felt	felt				

Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
beautiful	جميل	ugly	قبيح
old	كبير السن	young	صغير السن
big	كبير الحجم	small	صغير الحجم
easy	سهل	difficult	صعب

Check Point

Choose and complete: do – come – make – at

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

1. Sally is good .... playing chess.
2. We can .... video calls using the tablet.
3. When does your father .... home from work?

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 take + (مدة زمنية) + to + inf. يستغرق (وقتًا)

- I took two hours to do my homework.

2 help + inf. / to + inf. يساعد

- The internet can help you communicate with your friends.
- I helped my mother to make lunch yesterday.

3 would ('d) like to + inf. يود أن/يريد أن

- I would like to see my grandparents every day.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. How long does it take .... to school?
   a) go b) goes c) to go d) to going
2. I'd like .... when I get older.
   a) travelling b) to travel c) travel d) travels
3. The questions were very difficult. The opposite of "difficult" is "..................".
   a) hard b) easy c) cute d) unimportant

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Definitions التعريفات

goats	ماعز	animals that are like[1] sheep
orphan	يتيم	a child with no mother or father
attic	علية المنزل/السندرة	a room[2] at the top of a house
city	مدينة	a place with lots of[3] houses and shops

(1) مثل
(2) حجرة
(3) كثير من

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
beautiful	جميل	cute	جميل
big	كبير الحجم	large	كبير الحجم

Prefix البادئة

Prefix البادئة	Function الوظيفة	Word	الكلمة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
un-	تعطى عكس المعنى	happy	سعيد	unhappy	غير سعيد
		important	هام/ مهم	unimportant	غير مهم

Countries & Cities بلاد ومدن

Cairo	القاهرة	Morocco	المغرب/مراكش
Cape Town	مدينة كيب تاون (جنوب إفريقيا)	Oman	عُمان
South Africa	جنوب إفريقيا	Paris	باريس
London	مدينة لندن (إنجلترا)	France	فرنسا
England	إنجلترا	Switzerland	سويسرا

Similar spelling - Different meaning

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهه فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهه
away	بعيد	a way	طريق/طريقة
sheep	خروف	ship	سفينة

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 3

Pre-listening question: - Name two countries in Europe and in Africa.

Listen to Sami and Aya. Which three countries do you hear in the conversations?

SB page 7

(1) فرنسا (2) مصر (3) جنوب إفريقيا

Sami My family lives in Cairo, but my dad works in Paris, France[1]. He goes to the airport on Sundays and he catches a plane to Paris. It takes five hours to fly there. And then, he catches a plane home to Egypt[2] on Thursday evening. He works very hard.

On Saturdays, we play football in the park, and we play chess. I love my dad, and I'm happy when he's at home.



Aya My grandmother and grandfather live in South Africa[3]. They live next to the beach in Cape Town. They have a beautiful house. We go and visit them, but it's a long way. It takes twelve hours to fly there.

I talk to them on the phone, but they don't have a computer, so we can't make a video call. I would like to see them every day, but I can't.



Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

South /saʊθ/

Cape Town /ˈkāp-ˌtau̇n/

Post-listening question: - Where do Aya's grandparents live?

Complete the text with these words.

WB Page 74

I am Hassan. My family **lives** in Alexandria, but my dad **doesn't work** in Egypt. He works in London. He **goes** to the airport on Sunday evenings and he **catches** a plane to England. He comes home on Thursday evenings. On Saturday, I **don't go** to school, and my father doesn't work. We **play** chess or we go to the park. On Sunday mornings, we **go** swimming. My brother **is** three and he **doesn't** swim. He **watches** us!

Lesson 4

Pre-reading question:

- What is your favourite story?

Read the story and put these pictures in the correct order.

SB page 8

Heidi

by Johanna Spyri

يتيم (1)	جبال (2)	ماعز (3)
علية المنزل (4)	مغامرات (5)	

Heidi is the story of an orphan[(1)] girl. She goes to live with her grandfather in Switzerland.

Her grandfather is an old man. He lives in a small house in the mountains[(2)] and he has lots of goats[(3)]. Heidi sleeps in a bed in the attic[(4)] of the house. She drinks goat's milk and eats bread and cheese.



Every day she walks in the mountains with the goats, her grandfather and Peter. She sees birds and flowers. She is very happy!



But one day, Heidi's aunt arrives and takes her to the city. Heidi doesn't like the city and she is very sad to be away from her grandfather, Peter and the goats.

Heidi has lots of adventures[(5)] in the city.



Note :

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

orphan /ɔːʳfən/ Switzerland /ˈswɪtsələnd/ attic /ætɪk/

Post-reading question:

- Write a summary of the story.

Practise more

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

▶ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. A room at the top of a house is called a/an .... القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) kitchen b) bathroom c) mountain d) attic
2. .... are animals that are like sheep. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
   a) Monkeys b) Cows c) Goats d) Buffaloes
3. He has no parents. He is a/an .... دمياط ٢٠٢٣
   a) twin b) athlete c) orphan d) footballer
4. We can .... a video call to our cousins in England.
   a) come b) do c) make d) write
5. My cousin is very good .... drawing. بور سعيد ٢٠٢٢
   a) in b) of c) at d) about
6. He goes to the .... on Mondays and he catches a plane to Paris. SB
   a) airport b) station c) club d) school
7. I love my father, and I'm .... when he's at home.
   a) sad b) happy c) ugly d) bad
8. I always talk to my friends .... the phone.
   a) of b) in c) on d) at
9. I like my house because it's ....
   a) beautiful b) bad c) orphan d) ugly
10. Heidi .... in a bed in the attic of the house. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
    a) sleeps b) walks c) leaves d) goes
11. Every day, Laila walks in the mountains to .... birds and flowers.
    a) fly b) see c) eat d) sleep
12. In the morning, I drink milk and eat .... and cheese.
    a) water b) tea c) bread d) juice
13. I usually go to school .... school bus.
    a) to b) with c) on d) by

Time to Practise

▶ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. People like going to the .... in the summer to swim in the sea.
   a) cave b) lake c) beach d) mountain
2. My dad works in London. He always .... a plane to go there.
   a) comes b) catches c) sleeps d) arrives
3. I walk to school because my house isn't far away .... it.
   a) at b) off c) to d) from
4. Heidi .... in the mountains with the goats every day.
   a) walks b) flies c) watches d) takes
5. Many people use the internet to .... with each other.
   a) stay b) live c) go d) communicate
6. Last week, I had a lot of .... in Dream Park. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
   a) adventures b) stories c) animals d) mountains
7. It .... twelve hours to go to Aswan. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) makes b) takes c) gives d) talks
8. She is an orphan girl, so she goes to live .... her grandfather.
   a) at b) about c) to d) with
9. He lives in a small house in the mountains and he has lots of ....
   a) airports b) planes c) goats d) tigers
10. We should work .... to make our country great.
    a) hard b) easy c) busy d) free
11. When I .... home, I have something to eat. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
    a) take b) give c) have d) come
12. Egypt is the most important .... in Africa. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
    a) village b) town c) city d) country
13. I like my grandmother, so I would like .... her every day.
    a) to seeing b) seeing c) see d) to see

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Language

The present simple tense زمن المضارع البسيط

Usage الاستخدام
يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط فى التعبير عن:

1 Facts حقائق
- The sun rises in the morning.
- The earth goes around the sun.

2 Habits and routines العادات والروتين اليومى
- We usually play tennis on Friday.
- Ola listens to music every day.

Form التكوين

I / You / We / They (اسم جمع)	He / She / It (اسم مفرد)
> inf.	> inf. + s/es/ies
I play football at the club.	She walks to school every day.

لاحظ

1. يتم إضافة (es) للفعل المنتهى بـ s/sh/ch/o/x
   - Hana goes to school on foot.
   - Leila washes the dishes in the morning.

2. يتم إضافة (ies) للفعل المنتهى بحرف (y) ويسبقها حرف ساكن
   - The baby cries when he's hungry.
   - Salma studies hard.

Negative النفى

- لنفى الجملة نستخدم (don't/doesn't) بعد الفاعل ويتبعهما المصدر.

I / You / We / They (اسم جمع)	He / She / It (اسم مفرد)
> don't + inf.	> doesn't + inf.
I don't **play** football.	She doesn't **walk** to school.

Got it ?

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Read and correct the underlined words:

1. My brother watch TV every night. (..............................)
   - الإجابة الصحيحة (watches) لأن الفاعل (My brother) مفرد، والفعل ينتهى بـ (ch).
2. Adel and Sami studies hard for their exams. (..............................)
   - الإجابة الصحيحة (study) لأن الفاعل (Adel and Sami) جمع.

Yes/No questions

Do	I / you / we / they (اسم جمع)	> inf. ...?	***Question*** السؤال	**Does**	he / she / it (اسم مفرد)	> inf. ...?

A: Do you **play** football?
B: Yes, I do./ **B:** No, I don't.

A: Does she **walk to school** every day?
B: Yes, she does./ **B:** No, she doesn't.

Wh-questions

Q. word + do/does + subj. + **inf. ...?**

- Where does Tarek **live**?
- How do you **go** to school?

يمكن السؤال باستخدام (Verb to "be") مع الصفات

Am/ Is/ Are + الفاعل + حرف جر / اسم / صفة ...?

1 Are you **a teacher**?

2 Is Ali **ready** for the match?

لاحظ

1

Verb "to be" يكون

am, is, are :يتكون فى المضارع من

- I am (am not) a teacher.
- He is (isn't) happy.
- They are (aren't) at home.

2

Verb "to have" يملك

has, have :يتكون فى المضارع من

- Mona has (doesn't have) a nice car.
- I have (don't have) money.
- We have (don't have) a big house.

Got it ?

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Read and correct the underlined words:

1 Do she live in Cairo? (............................)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (Does) لوجود (she).

2 My brother doesn't travels to Paris. (............................)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (travel) لأن (doesn't) يتبعها فعل فى المصدر.

3 The boys don't happy because their father is abroad. (............................)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (aren't) لأن (verb "to be") يتبعه صفة/اسم.

Practise more

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I .... to bed at ten every day. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) goes b) go c) went d) going
2. How long does it .... you to come to school? WB
   a) takes b) taking c) took d) take
3. Heidi doesn't .... with her parents. She lives with her grandfather.
   a) live b) lives c) lived d) living
4. Maha .... like swimming.
   a) not b) don't c) doesn't d) isn't
5. .... your parents live in Giza? الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
   a) Are b) Do c) Does d) Have
6. .... you play chess? القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) Doing b) Do c) Did d) Does
7. How does Sami .... when his father is at home? القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) feel b) feels c) felt d) feeling
8. What .... you listen to on the radio? أزهر/قنا ٢٠٢٢
   a) does b) are c) were d) do
9. This bird .... beautiful colours.
   a) have b) has c) having d) to have

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. She <u>is watching</u> a nice programme every evening. (..............................) الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
2. Does he <u>gets</u> up early? (..............................) المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
3. Ali <u>don't</u> play football after school. (..............................) دمياط ٢٠٢٣
4. Does <u>you</u> walk to school? (..............................) الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢
5. My father <u>be</u> in France for a holiday. (..............................)
6. Where <u>are</u> you come from? (..............................) الغربية ٢٠٢٢

Time to Practise

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Reham is good at tennis. She .... it every day. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢

a) plays b) play c) playing d) played

2. Mona .... go to school on Friday. بور سعيد ٢٠٢٢

a) don't b) isn't c) hasn't d) doesn't

3. We both .... English books in the evenings. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

a) is reading b) are reading c) read d) reads

4. Fawzi and Hamdi .... painting. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

a) love b) loves c) loving d) be loved

5. They .... a lot of milk.

a) drinks b) don't drink c) aren't drink d) drinking

6. What sport .... like? الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣

a) you don't b) don't you c) doesn't you d) you doesn't

7. I don't .... to music. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢

a) listens b) listen c) listening d) listened

8. .... Adel at home now? الشرقية ٢٠٢٢

a) Is b) Does c) Do d) Has

9. Samy .... go to school on Saturdays. دمياط ٢٠٢٣

a) don't b) doesn't c) hasn't d) isn't

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. I doesn't usually listen to pop music. (..............................) الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
2. Monkeys makes a lot of noise. (..............................)
3. What subject does he studied? (..............................) القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
4. What do her hobbies? (..............................) القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
5. I has my breakfast at school. (..............................)
6. Are you speak English well? (..............................) الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

D Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

1. Speaking

Ask and answer questions about hobbies

السؤال والإجابة عن الهوايات

Situation	ما يقال فى هذا الموقف	Response	جملة الرد

online

عند سؤال شخص عما إذا كان يمارس هواية أم لا نستخدم الصيغة التالية:

Do you listen to music? هل تستمع إلى الموسيقى؟

No, I don't. لا.

Where does your father work? أين يعمل والدك؟

He works in a bank in Cairo. يعمل فى بنك بالقاهرة.

How long does it take you to come to school? ما طول المدة التى تستغرقها لكى تأتى إلى المدرسة؟

It takes about 30 minutes. حوالى ٣٠ دقيقة.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

▶ **Noha is asking Soha about her day.** الشرقية ٢٠٢٢

Noha : Hello, Soha. How are you?

Soha : (1).. .

Noha : (2)..?

Soha : I get up at 6 a.m.

Noha : (3)..?

Soha : I go to school by bus.

Noha : What do you do on Fridays?

Soha : (4).. .

Noha : Do you enjoy your time?

Soha : (5).. .

2. Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب
من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

1. How to write about a member of your family كيفية الكتابة عن فرد من أسرتك

- My (................ 's) name is (الاسم).
- He's (العدد) years old.
- He lives in (المكان).
- He is (الوظيفة).
- His hobbies are (الهوايات).

Writing tips

A paragraph should have at least 10 sentences.

- يجب أن تحتوي الفقرة على عشر جمل على الأقل.

Example

My grandfather

My name is Omar. I'm twelve years old. I have a big family. My grandfather's name is Kamal. He's 65 years old. He lives on a farm in Benha. He's a farmer. He grows apples. His favourite food is fish and rice. His hobbies are reading and fishing. I love him so much because he is friendly and kind. He always helps me and the other members of the family. We usually visit him at the weekend. He tells us interesting stories. He helps us grow different plants on his farm. I'm really proud of him.

2. How to write about your hobby كيفية الكتابة عن هوايتك

- I like playing (اللعبة/الرياضة).
- I play (اللعبة/الرياضة) every week.
- I play it with (الشخص/الأشخاص).
- I play it at the (المكان).
- It's my favourite.

Example

The hobby I like

It's really important to do a hobby when you are free. There are many hobbies to do in life. Everyone has a different hobby. Some people like sports and others like reading, but I like playing chess. It's a game for all ages. This game is for two people. I like to play it on Fridays. I play it with my friends at home. I can play it online with people all over the world. My grandfather taught me how to play chess. Sometimes, I play it on the computer. I like it very much. It's my favourite.

1 Read the following, then answer the questions:

دمياط ٢٠٢٣

My name is Amgad. I live with my family in Giza. I have one sister. She is a student at preparatory school. She goes to school at 8:00 a.m. and returns home at 3:00 p.m. My father is an accountant. He works for a big company. He gets up very early and goes to his work. He comes back home at night. My mother is a teacher. She teaches geography. I get up at 9 o'clock in the morning. I stay at home with my grandmother. I would like to be six to go to school and meet my friends.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What's this passage about? ....
2. Where does Amgad's father work? ....
3. Why do you think Amgad doesn't get up early? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The family lives in ....
   a) the countryside b) a city c) a village d) the desert
5. The underlined word "She" refers to Amgad's ....
   a) teacher b) sister c) grandmother d) mother
6. Amgad wants to be six to go to ....
   a) school b) home c) a company d) a farm

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The .... is a room at the top of the house. بورسعيد ٢٠٢٢
   a) kitchen b) break c) attic d) garage
2. A/An .... is a child with no father or mother. الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢
   a) twin b) orphan c) driver d) happy
3. When the weather is hot, we go to the .... القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
   a) beach b) desert c) moon d) sun
4. Mona is not making a video ...., but she is talking to her friend. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) cell b) call c) photo d) line
5. My uncle travelled to a lot of countries like England and ....
   a) Rome b) France c) London d) Paris
6. It's an adventure to .... a mountain.
   a) climb b) do c) go d) walk

7. I play .... my friends in the club.

a) in b) of c) at d) with

8. Soha .... go swimming on windy days. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢

a) don't b) isn't c) aren't d) doesn't

9. Does Hala .... playing tennis? القليوبية ٢٠٢٢

a) like b) likes c) liked d) to like

10. She .... shopping every week. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢

a) goes b) go c) going d) gone

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Does you listen to music every day? (..........................) المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
2. Does Sama has a blue dress? (..........................)
3. He doesn't plays tennis. (..........................)
4. I am not very good in drawing. (..........................) القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your father"

....

....

....

....

....

....

Challenging Questions

Read and correct the underlined words: مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Do you ready for the concert? (..........................)

2 What sport are you good? (..........................)

3 Adel has a car, so he goes to work by bus. (..........................)

4 **A:** Is Salma happy? **B:** No, she isn't sad. (..........................)

STUDY *Watch a video*

Lessons 5 & 6



SB pages 9 - 11 | WB pages 76 - 78

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary / المفردات الرئيسية

athlete (n)	لاعب رياضى	gymnastics (n)	ألعاب الجمباز
athletics (n)	ألعاب القوى	Olympics (n)	الألعاب الأوليمبية
balance (d) (v)	يوازن	the country (n)	الريف
best friend	أفضل صديق	top (n/adj)	أفضل/أول
gymnast (n)	لاعب/لاعبة جمباز	train (for) (ed) (v)	يتدرب (لمدة)

Additional Vocabulary / المفردات الإضافية

busy life	حياة مشغولة/مزدحمة	physics (n)	الفيزياء
description (n)	وصف	swimming pool (n)	حوض السباحة
nearby (adj/adv)	مجاور	work (ed) (v) hard	يعمل بجد

Check Point

Choose and complete: **best – gymnastics – physics**

1. I like .... It's my favourite subject.
2. Adel is my .... friend. He's a lot of fun.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions / التعبيرات اللغوية

achieve > dreams	يحقق أحلامًا	have > food/a drink	يتناول طعامًا/شرابًا
find > difficult	يجد صعوبة	stay > strong	يبقى قويًا

Prepositions / حروف الجر

a photo **of**	صورة لـ	move **to**	ينتقل إلى

Words and Opposites / الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	**Opposite (Antonym)**	عكسها
healthy	صحى	unhealthy	غير صحى
strong	قوى	weak	ضعيف

Check Point

Choose and complete: weak – strong – of

1. That's a photo .... my best friend.
2. The lion is a .... animal.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيداً لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 so that + فاعل + can/could + inf. لكى

- Habiba eats healthy food so that she can stay strong.
- I went to England so that I could learn English.

2 physics/ mathematics/ gymnastics/ athletics

بعض الكلمات التى تنتهى بـ (ics) هى أسماء مفردة

- Gymnastics **is** a difficult sport.

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Words and Synonyms — الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
healthy	صحى	well	بصحة جيدة
strong	قوى	powerful	قوى

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
athlete (n)	لاعب رياضى	-ics	تحويل اسم الفاعل لاسم	athletics (n)	ألعاب القوى
gymnast (n)	لاعبة جمباز			gymnastics (n)	ألعاب الجمباز

Prefix البادئة

Prefix البادئة	Function الوظيفة	Word	الكلمة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
un-	تعطى عكس المعنى	healthy	صحى	unhealthy	غير صحى

Similar spelling - Different meaning

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهة
weak	ضعيف	week	أسبوع
dreams	أحلام	drums	طبول

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 6

Pre-reading question:

- How can we keep fit?

Read about Habiba Marzouk. Which sport makes her happy? *SB page 10*

Habiba Marzouk achieves[1] her dreams[2]

Habiba Marzouk is a gymnast[3]. She is 18 and lives in Cairo with her family. Habiba has a very busy life. She goes to school and she studies hard. In the evenings, she trains[4] for five or six hours. She is a top[5] gymnast in Africa and she wants to go to the Olympics[6].



(1) يحقق/ ينجز
(2) أحلام
(3) لاعبة جمباز
(4) يتدرب
(5) أفضل/ أول
(6) الألعاب الأوليمبية
(7) ألعاب الجمباز

Habiba's family always helps her. She eats healthy food so that she can stay strong. Gymnastics[7] is a difficult sport but it makes her happy.

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

gymnast /dʒɪmnæst/ gymnastics /dʒɪmnæstɪks/ Olympics /əˈlɪmpɪks/

Post-reading question:

- Why do you think Habiba is happy?

Read and punctuate. *WB Page 77*

My name is **O**mar. **N**abila is my sister. She lives with me and my family in **D**amietta. Her favourite food is fish. I like cheese. We have the same hobbies. We like swimming! We go swimming on **S**aturday and **S**unday. My sister plays chess, too. I do not like chess. How old is **N**abila? She is 12. **T**hat is the same as me. I am 12, too.



Pre-reading question:

- What's your best friend's name?

Read and complete the text about Ali's sister Lamia. *SB page 11*



My name's Lamia. I'm nine years old. I **live** in Aswan with my family. My parents **are** teachers. My brother Ali **is** 13 years old and Khaled is nine. Khaled goes swimming every Friday.

I **listen** to music with **my** brothers. Ali **plays** football at school and he watches football matches on TV. Khaled **goes** swimming every Friday. There is a swimming pool near our house. My best friend is called Aya. We **play** basketball at school, and we're both in the school team. **Our** team is very good!

Post-reading question:

- Do you think that Lamia lives a healthy life? Why/Why not?

Complete the sentences with a possessive adjective. *WB Page 78*

Munir and Mustafa are twins. **Their** sister is called Radwa. **Her** hobby is tennis and she is my best friend. I live with **my** brother and **his** name is Sayed. **Our** house is in Cairo. What is **your** best friend's name?

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

▶ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Habiba Marzouk is a famous .... المنوفية ٢٠٢٣

a) gymnastic **b)** gymnastics **c)** gym **d)** gymnast

2. A baby bird is very .... It can't fly for many days. المنوفية ٢٠٢٢

a) poor **b)** weak **c)** week **d)** strong

3. Fresh food is good for you and it is .... الجيزة ٢٠٢٣

a) unhealthy **b)** bad **c)** healthy **d)** deadly

4. Habiba Marzouk wants to .... her dreams and go to the Olympics. دمياط ٢٠٢٣

a) give **b)** play **c)** check **d)** achieve

5. Habiba eats well because .... is a difficult sport. دمياط ٢٠٢٢

a) gym **b)** gymnastics **c)** gymnast **d)** gymnasium

6. Ahmed has a very .... life. He goes to school and studies hard all the time. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢

a) ugly **b)** free **c)** busy **d)** dirty

7. Athletes work hard to .... their studies and their sport. المنوفية ٢٠٢٢

a) bring **b)** spell **c)** destroy **d)** balance

8. As a gymnast, she .... for 5 or 6 hours daily. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

a) trains **b)** teaches **c)** studies **d)** swims

9. Eating healthy food helps us to .... strong.

a) find **b)** stay **c)** achieve **d)** move

10. We usually have .... when we sleep.

a) habits **b)** hobbies **c)** drums **d)** dreams

11. I like to live in the .... because it's quiet.

a) country **b)** city **c)** town **d)** attic

12. She is a top gymnast and she wants to go to the ....

a) physics **b)** athletics **c)** Olympics **d)** gymnastics

13. My father always .... a drink after dinner.

a) eats **b)** has **c)** trains **d)** moves

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

Speaking

Talking about your best friend

التحدث عن صديقك المفضل

Situation	ما يقال فى هذا الموقف	Response	جملة الرد
What's his/her name?	ما اسمه/ اسمها؟	My best friend's name is (................).	اسم صديقى/ صديقتى المفضلة هو (................).
How old is he/she?	كم عمره/ عمرها؟	He's/She's (العدد) years old.	عمره/ عمرها .... عامًا.
Where does he/she live?	أين يعيش/ تعيش؟	He/She lives in (المكان).	يعيش/ تعيش فى ....
What are his/her hobbies?	ما هواياته/ هواياتها؟	His/Her hobbies are (الهوايات).	هواياته/ هواياتها هى ....

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue: الشرقية ٢٠٢٢

Ahmed is asking Omar about his best friend.

Ahmed : What is your best friend's name?
Omar : (1).. .
Ahmed : Fares! (2)..?
Omar : He's 14 years old.
Ahmed : What does he like?
Omar : (3).. .
Ahmed : Sports! (4)..?
Omar : His favourite sport is football.
Ahmed : Is he friendly and kind?
Omar : (5).. .

Take a Test

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Ali asks Hani about his best friend.

Ali : Who is your best friend, Hani?

Hani : (1).. .

Ali : (2)..?

Hani : He is 13. He is in the same classroom.

Ali : What are his hobbies?

Hani : (3).. .

Ali : (4)..?

Hani : His favourite sport is basketball.

Ali : Is he tall?

Hani : (5).. .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Good students work hard to .... their dreams in life. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) forget b) watch c) fail d) achieve
2. I eat healthy food to stay .... الفيوم ٢٠٢٢
   a) weak b) strong c) unhealthy d) poor
3. It's .... to eat fruit and vegetables. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) warm b) dirty c) unhealthy d) healthy
4. Athletes work hard to .... their studies, work and families. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) practise b) train c) balance d) achieve
5. My sister likes sports. She's a famous .... الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢
   a) gymnast b) charger c) orphan d) jungle
6. The athlete is .... hard to be in the next Olympics. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
   a) using b) raining c) travelling d) training
7. She has a very busy .... She goes to school and studies hard.
   a) live b) life c) alive d) leaf

8. What .... he like doing when he is at home? القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

a) do b) does c) is d) are

9. My grandparents .... in the city. They live in the country.

a) doesn't live b) don't live c) lives d) live

10. London .... in England.

a) is b) am c) are d) be

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Where do your grandfather live? (.....................)
2. Can you help my with the homework? (.....................)
3. Do you busy today? (.....................)
4. Ghada like healthy food. (.....................)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on: الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣

"Your best friend and why you like him/ her"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

1. Famous people always .... a very busy life.

a) move b) find c) stay d) have

2. Some girls .... it difficult to play football.

a) do b) have c) find d) make

3. We usually visit our grandparents .... Sunday evenings.

a) in b) on c) at d) for

Review on Unit 1

Vocabulary

achieve (d)	يحقق/ ينجز
gymnastics	ألعاب الجمباز
adventure	مغامرة
interview	مقابلة/ حوار
aged	بالغ من العمر
mountain	جبل
athlete	لاعب رياضي/ قوي
Olympics	الألعاب الأولمبية
attic	علية المنزل/ السندرة
orphan	يتيم
balance (d)	يوازن
band	فرقة موسيقية
twin	توءم
gymnast	لاعب/لاعبة جمباز
voluntary work	عمل تطوعي
daughter	ابنة
great-grandparents	أجداد الأجداد
great-grandchildren	أبناء الأحفاد
uncle	عم/خال - زوج العمة/الخالة
parents	الوالدان
grandchildren	أحفاد

Language

Subject pronouns ضمائر الفاعل

I/ We/ You/ He/ She/ It/ They

- **They** go to school by bus.

Object pronouns ضمائر المفعول

me/ us/ you/ him/ her/ it/ them

- I go to school with **them**.

Possessive adjectives صفات الملكية

my/ our/ your/ his/ her/ its/ their

- **Their** bus moves at 7:30.

Possessive pronouns ضمائر الملكية

mine/ ours/ yours/ his/ hers/ theirs

- This school is **theirs**.

The present simple tense:

Affirmative:
- They play football.
- He plays football.

Negative:
- They don't play football.
- He doesn't play football.

Questions:
- Do they play football?
- Does he play football?

Skills

Ask and answer questions about hobbies

السؤال والإجابة عن الهوايات

A: Do you listen to music?
B: No, I don't.

A: Where does your father work?
B: He works in a bank in Cairo.

A: How long does it take you to come to school?
B: It takes about 30 minutes.

Talking about your best friend

التحدث عن صديقك المفضل

- What's his/her name?
- My best friend's name is ....
- How old is he/she?
- He's/She's .... years old.
- Where does he/she live?
- He/She lives in ....
- What are his/her hobbies?
- His/Her hobbies are ....

Question Bank

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 1

24

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: الشرقية ٢٠٢٢

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1. Heidi lives with her grandfather because she is ....
   a) ill b) tall
   c) an orphan d) pretty
2. Heidi's grandfather lives in a ....
   a) big house b) small house
   c) flat d) villa
3. Heidi sleeps in/on the ....
   a) attic b) bathroom
   c) ground d) living room
4. Heidi drinks ....
   a) coffee b) tea
   c) juice d) milk

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Ali and Sami are talking about hobbies.

Ali : Can I ask you some questions?
Sami : (1)..
Ali : Do you have any hobbies?
Sami : (2).. . I like sports.
Ali : (3)..?
Sami : My favourite sport is football.
Ali : (4)..?
Sami : I play football on Fridays and Saturdays. What about you?
Ali : (5).. .
Sami : Great! Let's play together.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name is Salim. I'm thirteen years old. My best friend is called Salah. He and I study together. His home is only a ten-minute walk from my place. He is funny and **friendly**. We are always happy to be with each other. He is always kind and helpful to me. When I don't go to school because I'm ill, he comes to my house to ask about me. When he doesn't come to school, I ask about **him**. We also play football together on Fridays. We have the same hobbies. We like swimming! We go swimming on Saturday and Sunday.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title to the passage.

....

2. Why do you think Salim likes Salah?

....

3. What does the underlined pronoun "**him**" refer to?

....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Salim and Salah are ....

a) sisters b) brothers c) students d) teachers

5. The underlined word "friendly" means ....

a) strong b) well c) kind d) healthy

6. Salah's house is .... Salim's house.

a) near b) far c) opposite d) behind

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. These brothers are the same age. They are .... المنوفية ٢٠٢٢

a) cousins b) sisters c) twins d) parents

2. Your dad's brother is your .... المنوفية ٢٠٢٢

a) uncle b) aunt c) sister d) brother

3. People do .... work without getting money. الجيزة ٢٠٢٢

a) voluntary b) business c) group d) job

4. Every day, Heidi walks in the .... with the goats.

a) airports b) mountains c) schools d) pools

5. She is a/an .... girl. She lost her father.

a) busy b) orphan c) ugly d) happy

6. Murad works hard to .... his dreams. الفيوم ٢٠٢٣

a) achieve b) archive c) receive d) believe

7. I .... a lot to play the guitar well.

a) take b) sleep c) achieve d) train

8. **A:** Which house is yours? **B:** .... is next door. الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٣

a) Yours b) My c) Ours d) Their

9. Basel doesn't .... the piano. He plays the flute. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

a) play b) plays c) played d) playing

10. Amira .... with her family in Damietta.

a) to live b) living c) lives d) live

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Adel can't find him book. (..............................) بور سعيد ٢٠٢٢
2. The girl like her teacher so much. (..............................) الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
3. Gymnastics are my favourite sport. (..............................) دمياط ٢٠٢٣
4. What sport do you good at? (..............................)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your favourite hobby"

....

....

....

....

....

....

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Solve more exams	Well done!



Unit 2

It's my favourite subject

Objectives of the unit

Reading	Descriptions of schools around the world
Writing	A paragraph about your journey to school; A paragraph about your daily life
Listening	A discussion about timetables
Speaking	Asking and answering about school and timetables
Language	Adverbs of frequency; possessive 's and s'
Life Skills	Critical thinking; self-management

Tapescripts

WB تشير لأسئلة كتاب التدريبات SB تشير لأسئلة كتاب الطالب

STUDY

Watch a video

Lessons 1 & 2



SB pages 12 - 15 | WB pages 79 & 80

A Vocabulary

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

bell (n)	جرس	library (n)	مكتبة (للقراءة)
daily life	الحياة اليومية	playground (n)	ملعب
far away	بعيدًا	timetable (n)	جدول الحصص
hall (n)	صالة/قاعة	typical (adj)	معتاد/نموذجي/مثالي
head teacher (n)	مدير المدرسة	weekend (n)	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع

School subjects المواد الدراسية

Arabic (n)	اللغة العربية	maths (n)	الرياضيات
art (n)	التربية الفنية/الرسم	music (n)	التربية الموسيقية
computer studies (n)	دراسات الحاسب	religion (n)	الدين
drama (n)	الدراما (أدب المسرحيات)	science (n)	العلوم
English (n)	اللغة الإنجليزية	social studies (n)	الدراسات الاجتماعية
home economics (n)	الاقتصاد المنزلى		

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

different (adj)	مختلف	road (n)	طريق
half past	ونصف	student (n)	طالب
quarter past	وربع	study (y ied) (v)	يدرس/يذاكر
quarter to	إلا ربع	trip (n)	رحلة

Check Point

Choose and complete: **sport – subject – library**

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

1. We read books in the school ....
2. My favourite .... is science.

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

(n) = noun	(adj) = adjective	(prep) = preposition
(v) = verb	(adv) = adverb	(conj) = conjunction

Language Expressions

التعبيرات اللغوية

do	> homework	يؤدى الواجب المنزلى	have	> a lesson	لديه حصة
get	> home	يصل إلى البيت		breakfast	يتناول الإفطار
live	> in Nairobi	يعيش فى مدينة نيروبى	take	> a long time	يستغرق وقتًا طويلًا

Prepositions

حروف الجر

at break	فى الفسحة	It's time for ...	حان الوقت لـ ...
get to	يصل إلى	ways of	طرق لـ

Check Point

Choose and complete: do – at – for – have

1. I play with my friends .... break.
2. I .... my homework in the evening.
3. I .... my breakfast with my friends at school.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.	Present		Past simple	P.P.
choose	يختار	chose	chosen	mean	يعنى	meant	meant
get up	ينهض/يستيقظ	got up	got up	ring	يرن/يدق	rang	rung
hear	يسمع	heard	heard	have	لديه/عنده	had	had

Words and Opposites

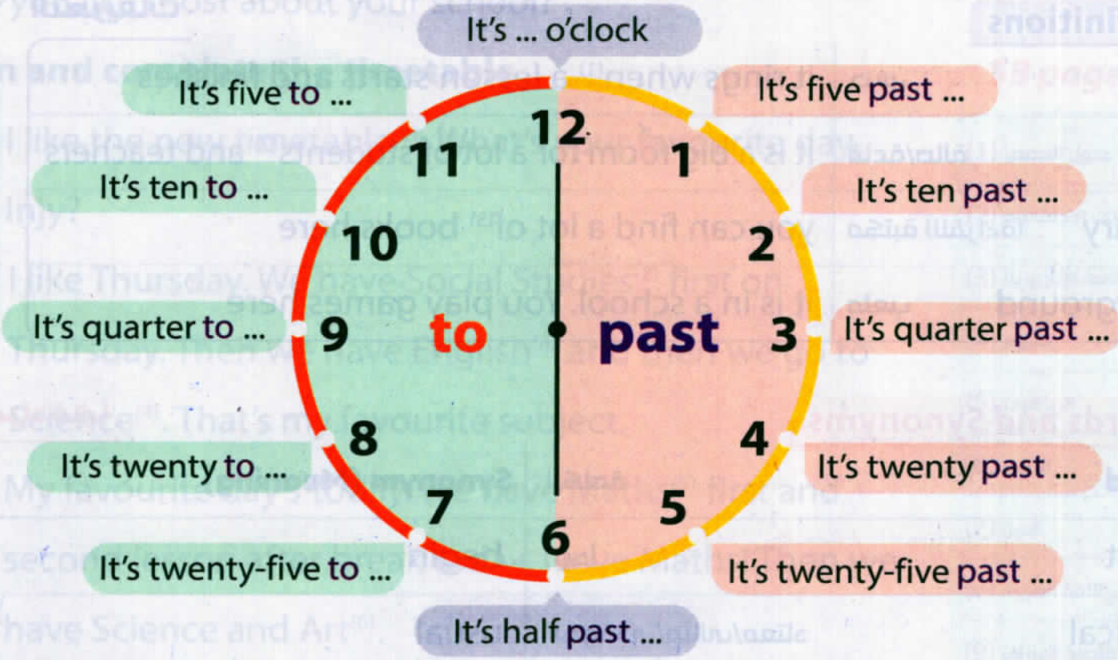
الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
different	مختلف	the same	نفس الشىء
far away	بعيدًا	near	قريب
start	يبدأ	finish	ينهى
typical	معتاد/نموذجى/مثالى	unusual	غير معتاد

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 Ways to tell/say the time: طرق الإخبار عن الوقت:



2 computer studies – home economics – social studies – physics

- المواد الدراسية تعامل معاملة المفرد.

- Social studies **is** my favourite subject.
- Home economics **starts** at ten thirty on Sunday.

3 drive + شخص يوصل شخصًا بالسيارة

- My father always drives me to school.

4 first أولاً / then ثم / second الثاني / next التالي/بعد ذلك

نستخدم الكلمات السابقة عند سرد أحداث أو رواية قصة

- First, I visited my grandmother.
- Then, I met my friends in the club.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Physics .... my favourite subject.
   a) am **b)** is **c)** are **d)** does
2. My mum has a meeting at .... past nine next Sunday.
   a) half **b)** have **c)** halve **d)** quieter
3. To get the opposite of "usual", we add the prefix ".........................".
   a) im- **b)** a- **c)** in- **d)** un-

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ

Definitions التعريفات

bell	جرس	it rings when[1] a lesson starts and finishes
hall	قاعة/صالة	it is a big room for a lot of students[2] and teachers
library	مكتبة (للقراءة)	you can find a lot of[3] books here
playground	ملعب	it is in a school. You play games here

(1) عندما
(2) الطلاب
(3) كثير من

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
start	يبدأ	begin	يبدأ
typical	نموذجى/مثالى/معتاد	usual	معتاد

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
differ (v)	يختلف	-ent	تحول الفعل لصفة	different (adj)	مختلف
teach (v)	يُدرس/يُعلم	-er	تحول الفعل لاسم فاعل	teacher (n)	مدرس

Prefix البادئة

Prefix البادئة	Function الوظيفة	Word	الكلمة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
un-	تعطى عكس المعنى	usual (adj)	معتاد	unusual (adj)	غير معتاد

Similar spelling - Different meaning

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهه
bell	جرس	bill	فاتورة
hall	قاعة/صالة	hill	تل
past	و	paste	معجون

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهه فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 1

Pre-listening question:

- What do you like most about your school?

Listen and complete the timetable. SB page 13

Amal I like the new timetable(1). What's your favourite day, Injy?

Injy I like Thursday. We have Social Studies(2) first on Thursday. Then we have English(3) and then we go to Science(4). That's my favourite subject.

Amal My favourite day's today. We have Maths(5) first and second lesson after break today. I love Maths! Then we have Science and Art(6).

Injy I like Art too, but I'm not very good at it. What do we have tomorrow?

Amal English, then Religion(7) is next, then Arabic(8) and then Home Economics(9). After break, we have Social Studies. Then we have Science and Computer Studies(10). Finally, we have Music(11).

Injy When do we have Drama(12)?

Amal That's the last two lessons on a Tuesday and the last lesson Wednesday. It's time for the next lesson now! See you later!

(1) جدول الحصص
(2) الدراسات الاجتماعية
(3) اللغة الإنجليزية
(4) العلوم
(5) الرياضيات
(6) الرسم
(7) الدين
(8) اللغة العربية
(9) الاقتصاد المنزلي
(10) دراسات الكمبيوتر
(11) الموسيقى
(12) الدراما

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

social /soʊʃəl/ economics /iːkənɒmɪks/ religion /rɪlɪdʒən/

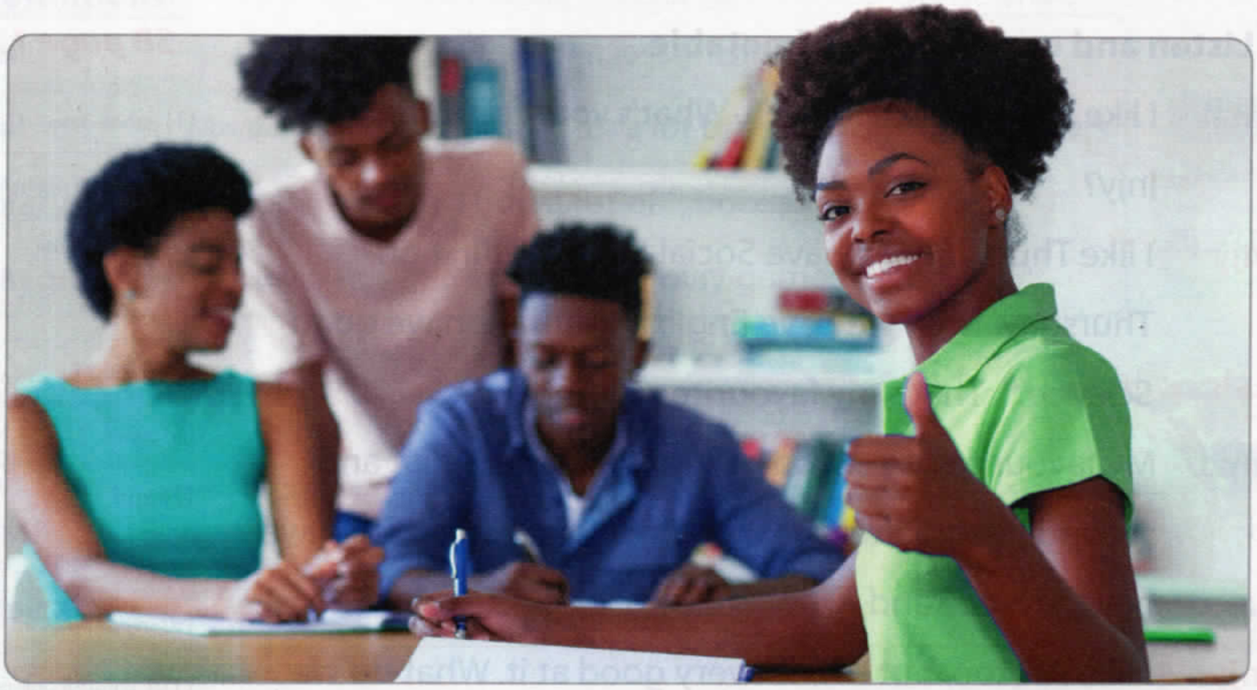
Post-listening questions:

1. What's Injy's favourite subject?
2. Do you think Injy and Amal like Drama? Why?

Pre-reading question: - How long does it take to go to school?

Read the text again and answer the questions. *SB page 14*

Daily life around the world



"I'm Akeyo. I live in Nairobi, in Kenya. This is a typical [1] day for me. On school days, I get up at half past six. I usually have breakfast with my family. My school is far away [2], so we never walk there. My mum and dad drive us there. It always takes a long time because the roads are busy. When we hear the bell [3] at eight o'clock, we go to the school hall [4]. We have four lessons, then it is break. I usually talk with my friends in the playground [5], but sometimes we go to the library [6] to read books. After break, we have more lessons. We have lunch at half past twelve. School finishes at four o'clock. When I get home, I have something to eat, then I always do my homework. My brother and I usually watch TV before we go to bed at about half past eight. I have a busy day!"

(1) نموذجي/مثالي
(2) بعيدًا جدًا
(3) جرس
(4) صالة/قاعة
(5) ملعب (فناء المدرسة)
(6) مكتبة (للقراءة)

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

Nairobi /naɪˈrəʊbi/ typical /tɪpɪkəl/

Post-reading question:

- How do you think Akeyo feels when she returns home?

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... is the subject of how to learn numbers. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
   a) Art b) Maths c) Arabic d) Music
2. My son is good at .... He can draw pictures. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) English b) Arabic c) Maths d) Art
3. We use a mouse in .... lessons. الفيوم ٢٠٢٢
   a) Arabic b) art c) maths d) computer studies
4. We learn about countries in .... lessons. الفيوم ٢٠٢٢
   a) social studies b) religion c) maths d) computer studies
5. The opposite of "the same" is ".................... ". القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
   a) similar b) different c) equal d) alike
6. For homework, we often read books from the .... WB
   a) laboratory b) library c) playground d) hall
7. I usually get up at half .... six.
   a) past b) post c) paste d) to
8. I .... Arabic and English on Sunday.
   a) go b) make c) have d) stay
9. I go to school library at .... الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
   a) break b) brake c) park d) bark
10. On a .... weekend, Omar reads books at the club library. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
    a) hard b) musical c) bad d) typical
11. We learn about food in home .... الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
    a) studies b) economics c) gymnastics d) physics
12. We have eight .... on a school day.
    a) lessons b) numbers c) languages d) bells
13. All the children in our school go to the .... when the head teacher wants to talk to us. WB
    a) bell b) hall c) library d) playground

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Social studies and science are school .... الفيوم ٢٠٢٢
   a) objects b) subjects c) teams d) groups
2. At break, I play games with my friend in the .... بور سعيد ٢٠٢٢
   a) hall b) classroom c) playground d) office
3. You can look at the .... to know how many lessons you'll have today.
   a) desk b) chair c) timetable d) bag
4. What's your .... subject? القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) favourite b) favour c) fat d) heavy
5. I'm not very good .... English.
   a) in b) at c) on d) of
6. .... is an interesting subject.
   a) English b) Gym c) Volleyball d) Handball
7. I usually .... my homework before I sleep.
   a) say b) give c) make d) do
8. It's half .... seven. It's time for school. الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
   a) past b) pass c) to d) too
9. She's great at .... She likes art. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) watching b) playing c) swimming d) drawing
10. We study people and how they live in the .... lessons. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
    a) science b) social studies c) maths d) drama
11. I usually .... lunch at home with my family.
    a) do b) get c) have d) make
12. We have English first on Monday. .... we have Arabic.
    a) Last b) Past c) Then d) After
13. A .... is a big room for a lot of students and teachers.
    a) hill b) hall c) bell d) hole

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Language

Adverbs of frequency ظروف التكرار

always دائماً	usually عادة	often غالباً	sometimes أحياناً	never أبداً
100%	70 - 80%	60 - 70%	50%	0%
★★★★★	☆★★★★	☆☆★★★	☆☆☆★★	☆☆☆☆☆

Usage & Form: التكوين والاستخدام:

They're used to say how often we do things, or how often things happen.

نستخدم ظروف التكرار للتعبير عن مدى تكرار فعل ما، وتستخدم مع زمن المضارع البسيط.

نضع ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل الأساسى كالتالى:

Subject + **adv.** (ظرف التكرار) + inf./verb + s, es, ies

Ex:
- We **usually** play football on Mondays.
- Amr **sometimes** goes to school by bus.
- I **always** walk to school.
- Sally **never** gets up late.

لاحظ

١- يمكن استخدام sometimes أول الجملة أى قبل الفاعل.

- Sometimes, we go to the library to read books.

٢- مع (verb to be) يتم استخدام ظروف التكرار بعد (am/is/are) كالتالى:

Subject + am/is/are + **adv.** (ظرف التكرار) + adj. (صفة)

- They are **usually** late.
- Mona is **always** clever.

٣- عند السؤال عن ظروف التكرار نستخدم أداة الاستفهام (كم مرة How often) كالتالى:

How often + do > (you – we – they – اسم جمع) / does > (he – she – it – اسم مفرد) + inf. + ...?

- **A:** How often do **Akeyo and her brother** walk to school? **B:** They never walk to school.

Got it ?

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Read and correct the underlined words:

- Students go never to school on Fridays. (..........................)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (never go) لأن ظرف التكرار يسبق الفعل الرئيسى للجملة.

PRACTICE Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We .... speak English during our Arabic lessons. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) usually b) sometimes c) always d) never
2. Our teacher .... gives us a lot of homework, not every day.
   a) sometimes b) never c) always d) usually
3. Samy .... goes to school late. دمياط ٢٠٢٣
   a) don't b) never c) hasn't d) isn't
4. Sara always .... funny stories. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) read b) reads c) reading d) is reading
5. She usually .... breakfast with her family. المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
   a) have b) is having c) having d) has
6. It .... rains in the desert in the summer. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
   a) never b) usually c) always d) often
7. My father sometimes .... me to school, but I usually go by bus. الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢
   a) takes b) take c) took d) taken
8. **A:** .... do you go to the club? **B:** Twice a week.
   a) How long b) How many c) How much d) How often
9. I usually .... with my friends in the playground.
   a) talking b) am talking c) talks d) talk
10. It .... takes a long time to go to work because the roads are very busy.
    a) hardly b) ever c) never d) always

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. He helps always his father. (..............................) المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
2. They never walks to school. (..............................) أسوان ٢٠٢٣
3. How often does you eat a day? (..............................) الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
4. Ali visits always his grandparents at the weekend. (..............................) الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
5. How many do you get up at 6:30 a.m.? (..............................) SB
6. Mr. Omar is never helpful. We like him. (..............................) المنوفية ٢٠٢٣

Time to Practise

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Yara never .... video games. الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢

   a) plays b) is playing c) playing d) play

2. We .... go to the beach in winter as it's very cold. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

   a) always b) often c) sometimes d) never

3. Our teacher, Mr Said, ... late for lessons.

   a) are never b) never are c) never is d) is never

4. It is .... very hot in the summer. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٠

   a) never b) sometimes c) often d) usually

5. She always .... a cup of coffee in the morning. القاهرة ٢٠٢٠

   a) drinks b) drank c) drinking d) drink

6. Amir .... plays basketball after school. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

   a) never b) don't c) doesn't d) isn't

7. **A:** How .... do you go to the cinema? **B:** I sometimes go to the cinema. المنوفية ٢٠٢٢

   a) always b) often c) every d) long

8. My sister .... polite and clever. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

   a) always is b) is always c) does always d) always does

9. They .... go to the cinema. They go there once a week.

   a) ever b) never c) sometimes d) always

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. I play always the drums in my free time. (...............................) القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
2. He usually get up early. (...............................) الفيوم ٢٠٢٢
3. She eats never unhealthy food. (...............................) البحيرة ٢٠٢٢
4. My mum and dad always drives me to school. (...............................)
5. My uncle travels often by train. (...............................) الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
6. I always does my homework before I go to bed. (...............................)

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

D Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

1. Speaking

Asking and answering about school and timetables

السؤال والإجابة عن المدرسة وجداول الحصص

Situation	ما يقال فى هذا الموقف	Response	جملة الرد
What's your favourite subject?	ما هى مادتك المفضلة؟	I like maths./My favourite subject is social studies.	أحب الرياضيات/مادتى المفضلة هى الدراسات الاجتماعية.
How many lessons do you have every day?	كم عدد الحصص التى لديك يوميًا؟	I have seven lessons every day.	لدى سبع حصص يوميًا.
Are you good at maths?	هل أنت جيد فى الرياضيات؟	Yes, I am.	نعم.
What time is the break?	متى تكون الفسحة؟	It's at eleven o'clock.	فى الحادية عشرة تمامًا.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

القليوبية ٢٠٢٢

Judy is asking Jana about her favourite subject.

Judy : How are you, Jana?
Jana : (1).. .
Judy : What's your favourite subject?
Jana : (2).. .
Judy : Are you good at science?
Jana : (3).. .
Judy : (4)..?
Jana : Science lesson starts after break on Sunday.
Judy : (5)..?
Jana : It finishes at twelve o'clock.

2. Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

How to write about your day/daily life

كيف تكتب عن يومك/حياتك اليومية

- My name's (الاسم).
- I go to a preparatory school in (المكان).
- I usually get up at (الساعة).
- I often (فعل) in the morning.
- I always (فعل) after school.
- I usually (فعل) with my friends.
- We sometimes go out in the evening.
- I never (فعل) on school days.

Writing tips

A paragraph has:
- a topic sentence.
- supporting sentences.
- a concluding sentence.

يجب أن تحتوى الفقرة على:
- جملة رئيسية
- جمل مساعدة وموضحة للموضوع.
- جملة تلخيصية (تلخص الفكرة الرئيسية للفقرة).

Example

My daily life

My name's Bassem. I always have a busy day. I go to a preparatory school in Giza. I usually get up at 7 o'clock. I wash my hands and face. Then I have my breakfast. I often walk to school in the morning. I go with my friends. I have seven lessons a day. I can do many activities during the break. When I finish school, I come back home at 2:30 p.m. I always do my homework after school. I usually meet my friends. We sometimes go out in the evening. I never sleep late on school days.

Check Point

Write a paragraph about:

"Your day"

My name's ....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

TEST YOURSELF

Take a test

Unit 2 Lessons (1 & 2)

17

1 **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:** نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1. What is your mother's job?

a) A nurse. **b)** A doctor. **c)** A teacher. **d)** A cook.

2. How often do you go shopping?

a) Often. **b)** Always. **c)** Sometimes. **d)** Never.

3. How often does your dad work at the weekend?

a) Never. **b)** Always. **c)** Often. **d)** Sometimes.

4. What does your dad work with?

a) Mobiles. **b)** Televisions. **c)** Tablets. **d)** Computers.

2 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The bell .... when a lesson starts and finishes.

a) gets **b)** means **c)** hears **d)** rings

2. It's half .... seven. It's time for school. الفيوم ٢٠٢٣

a) past **b)** pass **c)** to **d)** too

3. Mostafa loves .... art at school.

a) eating **b)** playing **c)** doing **d)** buying

4. .... school days, I get up at half past six.

a) On **b)** At **c)** In **d)** Of

5. I usually .... breakfast with my family.

a) drink **b)** do **c)** have **d)** tell

6. My dad always .... us to school.

a) has **b)** chooses **c)** arrives **d)** drives

7. The road is always busy, so it .... a long time to get there.

a) has **b)** takes **c)** does **d)** makes

8. Amira .... her homework after dinner. المنيا ٢٠٢٣

a) does never **b)** never is **c)** is never **d)** never does

9. **A:** .... do you go out for lunch? **B:** I sometimes go out for lunch.

a) How many **b)** How tall **c)** How often **d)** How long

10. I .... get up late on holidays.

a) am sometimes **b)** ever **c)** every **d)** usually

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. They often went to the theatre in summer. (....................)
2. Does you usually get up early? (....................)
3. My aunt does always the shopping on Friday. (....................)
4. They play in the club every day. They never go to the club. (....................) الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your school day"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

1. We have maths .... break.

a) in **b)** during **c)** at **d)** after

2. Hala .... her make-up in the morning.

a) never does **b)** is never **c)** never is **d)** does never

3. ...., Toka comes to school late.

a) Never **b)** Always **c)** Sometimes **d)** When

STUDY

Watch a video

Lessons 3 & 4



SB pages 16 - 18 | WB pages 81 & 82

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

notebook (n)	كراسة/دفتر	rules (n)	قواعد
pencil case (n)	مقلمة	uniform (n)	زى موحد
Means/Forms of transport وسائل النقل			
boat (n)	قارب	motorbike (n)	دراجة بخارية
canoe (n)	زورق طويل خفيف/الكنو	snowmobile (n)	عربة الثلج
helicopter (n)	هليكوبتر (طائرة عمودية)	train (n)	قطار

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

camel (n)	جمل	road (n)	طريق
cap (n)	قبعة/كاب	shoes (n)	حذاء
football shirt (n)	قميص كرة قدم	snow (n)	جليد/ثلج
fun (n)	مرح/متعة	village (n)	قرية
office (n)	حجرة المكتب	winter (n)	الشتاء

Check Point

Choose and complete: boat – summer – camel – winter

1 The .... is a desert animal.

2 We cross the river using a ....

3 It's very cold in ....

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

do > homework	يؤدى الواجب المنزلى	say > unkind things	يقول أشياء غير طيبة
follow > school rules	يتبع القواعد المدرسية	take > a journey	يقوم برحلة سفر

Prepositions — حروف الجر

cycle to	يركب الدراجة إلى	on the other side of	على الجانب الآخر من
in a canoe	فى الزورق	on the right	على اليمين
on a snowmobile	فى عربة الثلج	on time	فى الوقت المحدد

Check Point

Choose and complete: on – do – say – to

1. I cycle .... school every day.
2. We never .... unkind things to our classmates.
3. Hany should go to school .... time.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
wear	يرتدى	wore	worn

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
cheap	رخيص الثمن	expensive	غالى الثمن
dangerous	خطير	safe	آمن
forget	ينسى	remember	يتذكر
kind	طيب	unkind	غير طيب
outside	خارج	inside	داخل
wear	يرتدى	take off	يخلع ملابسه

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 **by + وسيلة المواصلات** — تستخدم أمام جميع وسائل النقل بشرط عدم وجود أداة أو ضمير أمام الوسيلة

- I go to school by bus.

in + (a/an/the/my/his....) + car/taxi/canoe

- My father goes to work in his car.

on + (a/an/the/my/his....) + bus/train/plane/snowmobile

- I go to school on the bus.

2 **arrive in + مكان كبير (بلد/مدينة)** — يصل إلى بلد/مدينة دون تحديد الموقع تمامًا

arrive at + مكان صغير (داخلى) (مكتب/مدرسة/مطار) — يصل إلى مكان وموقع محدد داخل البلد أو المدينة

- We arrived in **Luxor** last Sunday.
- When do you usually arrive at **school**?

3 **way to + inf./of + v+ing** — طريقة لـ

- It is a cheap and healthy way to **travel**/of **travelling**.

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Words and Synonyms — الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
cheap	رخيص الثمن	inexpensive	غير مكلف
wear	يرتدى	put on	يرتدى

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
danger (n)	خطر	-ous		تحول الاسم لصفة		dangerous (adj)	خطير

Prefix البادئة

Prefix	البادئة	Function	الوظيفة	Word	الكلمة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
un-		تعطى عكس المعنى		kind (adj)	طيب/عطوف	unkind (adj)	غير طيب/عطوف

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 3

Pre-listening question: - Where do you keep your school supplies?

Listen and match the objects with the people. *WB page 81*

Fatma Hi, Mariam. Is this Malak's pen?

Mariam No, that's Judy's pen. She always uses that pen.



Fatma OK. Whose bag is this?

Mariam That's Huda's bag.

Fatma No, it's not Huda's bag. Her bag is red. This bag is blue.

Mariam Oh, OK. Then it's Malak's bag.

Fatma There's a book on the desk. Is that your book?

Mariam No, it's the teachers' book. All the teachers use that book.

Fatma Ah, I know whose ruler this is. It has Dalia and Azza's names on it.

Post-listening questions:

1. What colour is Huda's bag?
2. How does Fatma know that the ruler belongs to Dalia and Azza?

Life Skills

Remember to follow class and school rules. Complete the rules with always or never. (always/never) تذكر أن تتبع القواعد المدرسية والصفية. أكمل القواعد التالية مستخدمًا

1. We **always** do our homework.
2. We .... listen to the teacher.
3. We .... forget our pencil cases and notebooks.
4. We .... help each other.
5. We .... wear our school uniform.
6. We .... say unkind things to other students.

Can you think of some more rules? Write them. Then compare in pairs.

هل يمكنك التفكير في بعض القواعد؟ اكتبها ثم قارن مع زميلك.

Pre-reading question:

- Is your journey to school difficult or easy?

Read the text and check your answers to Exercise 1. SB page 18

(1) عربية	(4) يركب الدراجة
(2) أتوبيس	(5) زورق
(3) قطار	(6) عربة الثلج

How do they go to school?

In some countries, children live a long way from their school. They do not go to school by car (1), bus (2) or train (3).



1. Every morning, children from this village in Egypt cycle (4) to school. It is a cheap and healthy way to travel. They can always arrive on time.



2. These children live next to Lake Bunyonyi, in Uganda. Their school is on the other side of the lake, so they do not walk to school. They go in a canoe (5). The canoe takes the children to school and back home again every day.



3. This boy lives in the USA. In winter, there is a lot of snow. The children travel to school on a snowmobile (6)!

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

Uganda /juːˈgændə/ village /vɪlɪdʒ/ cycle /saɪkəl/
canoe /kənuː/ snowmobile/snoʊməbiːl/

Post-reading question:

- Mention three ways children use to go to school.

Pre-listening question:

- How do you go to school?

Lesson 4

Listen and check your answers to Exercise 3. *SB page 18*

Narrator 2 : 1

Narrator Every morning, children from this village in Egypt cycle to school. It is a cheap and healthy way to travel.

Boy When the roads are busy, the bus is slow but the bike is quick!

(1) زورق

(2) عربة ثلج

Narrator 2 : 2

Narrator These children live next to Lake Bunyonyi in Uganda. Their school is on the other side of the lake, so they do not walk to school. They go in a canoe[1]. The canoe takes the children to school and home again every day.

Boy Sometimes, when it rains a lot, the water's dangerous and we can't arrive at school on time.

Narrator 2 : 3

Narrator This boy lives in the USA. In winter, there is a lot of snow. The children travel to school on a snowmobile[2]!

Boy It's cold, but it's fast–and fun!

Post-listening questions:

1. If you were a student in the USA, how would you find travelling to school on a snowmobile?
2. When the roads are busy, which is faster, a bus or a bike?

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

▶ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. People travel on a .... when there is snow. الغربية ٢٠٢٢

a) foot **b)** bike **c)** canoe **d)** snowmobile

2. Camels are very .... They can carry 200 kilos of bags. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢

a) weak **b)** low **c)** strong **d)** poor

3. My aunt is very .... She always gives me big presents. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

a) sad **b)** kind **c)** unkind **d)** poor

4. Some children in Egypt .... to school. Bikes are fantastic. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢

a) cycle **b)** play **c)** meet **d)** drive

5. The canoe .... children to school and home again every day. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢

a) drives **b)** rides **c)** takes **d)** cycles

6. Cars, buses, planes and trains are means of .... القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

a) report **b)** airport **c)** port **d)** transport

7. We should .... our school uniform during the school day.

a) forget **b)** wear **c)** help **d)** say

8. Students should .... their homework every day.

a) do **b)** follow **c)** put **d)** say

9. Some students go to school .... a canoe. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢

a) by **b)** on **c)** in **d)** at

10. The children in the USA .... to school on a snowmobile. WB

a) cycle **b)** take **c)** ride **d)** travel

11. My mother gave me a red .... to put my pens in.

a) ruler **b)** pencil case **c)** notebook **d)** timetable

12. We always .... school rules. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢

a) finish **b)** fill **c)** fail **d)** follow

13. He doesn't want to help his friends. He is ....

a) clever **b)** busy **c)** unkind **d)** kind

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Riding bikes is a/an .... way to travel.

a) kind b) unkind c) unhealthy d) healthy

2. We arrived .... Luxor two days ago.

a) in b) at c) on d) with

3. They are polite. They never .... unkind things to their friends. الفيوم ٢٠٢٣

a) say b) talk c) laugh d) listen

4. The opposit of "expensive" is "....................".

a) unhealthy b) busy c) cheap d) unkind

5. He lives in a small .... away from the city.

a) village b) country c) lake d) snow

6. A .... takes people from one side of a lake to another. دمياط ٢٠٢٣

a) bike b) canoe c) snowmobile d) car

7. My school is .... the other side of the lake.

a) from b) in c) at d) on

8. A canoe is a kind of a .... that goes on water. الفيوم ٢٠٢٣

a) taxi b) snowmobile c) boat d) tram

9. I .... on my school uniform at 7 a.m. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

a) have b) talk c) take d) put

10. When the roads are ...., the bus is slow.

a) strong b) expensive c) busy d) cheap

11. They usually .... to school. They go on foot.

a) walk b) cycle c) drive d) fly

12. The opposite of the word "safe" is "....................". القليوبية ٢٠٢٢

a) false b) different c) dangerous d) expensive

13. School .... should be followed. الغربية ٢٠٢٢

a) roles b) rulers c) rolls d) rules

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Language

Possessive 's / s' — الملكية ('s / s')

تستخدم (s')/('s) للتعبير عن ملكية شخص/أشخاص لشيء ما:

نستخدم ('s) الملكية بعد الاسم المفرد غير المنتهي بـ (s)

's

- It's Adel's book.
- That's my friend's car.

نستخدم ('s) الملكية بعد الاسم الجمع الذي ليس آخره حرف (s) (جمع غير منتظم).

- That is not the children's room.

نستخدم (') مع الاسم الجمع المنتظم المنتهي بحرف (s)

s'

- That's the teachers' room.
- This is a girls' school.

يمكن استخدام (') مع الاسم المفرد المنتهي بحرف (s).

- It's Lamees' dress.

لاحظ

١- لا تستخدم ('s) مع الجماد.

- I repaired my car door.

٢- عند امتلاك شخصين أو أكثر لشيء ما، نضع ('s) على الاسم الأخير فقط:

- I know whose ruler this is. It has **Dalia and Azza's** names on it.

٣- عند إضافة ('s) لبعض الوظائف تتحول إلى أماكن:

baker's المخبز/chemist's الصيدلية/butcher's محل الجزارة

٤- عند السؤال عن الملكية نستخدم (ملك من/لمن Whose) كالتالي:

Whose + (object الشيء) + is/are ...?

A: Whose shoes are these? **B:** They are Ali's shoes.

Got it ?

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Read and correct the underlined words:

1. My father repaired the laptop's battery. (..........................)
   - الإجابة الصحيحة (laptop battery) لأنه جماد فلا يتم إضافة ('s).
2. Who's book is that? (..........................)
   - الإجابة الصحيحة (Whose) لأنها تسأل عن الملكية.
3. This is Ayas' car. (..........................)
   - الإجابة الصحيحة (Aya's) لأن Aya اسم مفرد غير منتهٍ بـ s.

Practise more

PRACTICE — Language Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This is .... phone. It's new. الغربية ٢٠٢٢
   a) Ali b) Alis c) Ali's d) Alis'
2. Mr. Samy is in the .... room. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣
   a) teachers' b) teacher's c) teachers d) teacher
3. This is .... bag. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
   a) Ahmeds b) Ahmed's c) Ahmeds' d) Ahmed
4. Those are my .... books.
   a) children b) childrens' c) children's d) children'
5. Her father is called Wael and her .... name is Samar.
   a) mother b) mothers c) mother's d) mothers'
6. **A:** .... dresses are these? **B:** They are Sara's. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) Who's b) Whose c) Who d) What
7. This car belongs to Ghada. It's .... car.
   a) Ghada's b) Ghadas' c) Ghadas d) Ghada'
8. All students have their books. All the .... books are on the table.
   a) student's b) students' c) students d) student
9. .... English class starts at ten o'clock.
   a) Thursday b) Thursday's c) Thursdays d) Thursdays's
10. Ali broke the .... leg yesterday.
    a) table b) table's c) tables' d) tables

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. These are my <u>sister</u> shoes. She likes them. (..............................) القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
2. My <u>friend</u> name is Rawda. (..............................) الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
3. My sister goes to a <u>girl's</u> school. (..............................) الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
4. The childrens' clothes are in that bag. (..............................) دمياط ٢٠٢٣
5. These are the <u>boys</u> football shirts. They want them. (..............................) الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
6. <u>Nada's and Yara</u> school is very big. (..............................)

Time to Practise

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This is .... drum. He likes music.
   a) Hani' b) Hanis c) Hani's d) Hanis'
2. Hala has got red hair. .... hair is very long.
   a) Halas b) Hala's c) Halas' d) Hala
3. My father went to the mechanic to fix the .... door.
   a) cars' b) car's c) car is d) car
4. I had to wait in the .... room till my father finished his work in the hospital. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٠
   a) doctor b) doctor's c) doctors' d) doctors
5. That is not my ball. It is the .... ball. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
   a) childrens' b) childrens's c) children d) children's
6. We buy bread at the ....
   a) baker's b) bakers c) bakers's d) baker
7. .... family is from Tanta. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) Sara b) Sara's c) Saras' d) Saras
8. **A:** .... cap is it? **B:** It's mine.
   a) What b) Whose c) When d) Who's
9. My mum and dad sleep here. This is my .... room.
   a) parents' b) parent's c) parents d) parent
10. Chess is my .... favourite game. It's his hobby.
   a) cousin's b) cousins c) cousin d) cousins'

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. We found Mona bag. (................................) المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
2. The girl's names are Hanen and Marwa. (................................) المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
3. **A:** Can you see Kamal's and Amir classroom?
   B: It is on the right. (................................) WB
4. My uncles favourite sport is basketball. (................................) الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٠
5. My cousin's house is over there. I love them. (................................)
6. We can buy meat at the butcher. (................................) القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

D Skills

Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

1. How to write about your journey to school

كيفية الكتابة عن رحلتك إلى المدرسة

- My name's (الاسم).
- I live in (المكان).
- I go to school with (الشخص/الأشخاص).
- My school is (near/ far from) my house.
- I travel to school by (الوسيلة).

Writing tips

Before writing, you need to think of ideas relevant to the topic.

- قبل البدء فى الكتابة، يجب أن تبحث عن أفكار مرتبطة بالموضوع.

Example

My school journey

My name's Marwa. In some countries, children live a long way from their school. They do not go to school by car, bus or train. I live in Luxor. I go to school with my friends. I'm in preparatory one at school. My school is far from my house, so we never walk to school. We travel to school by ferry. It takes about an hour to arrive at school. The ferry is very nice. We cross the river to get there. It's not an easy journey. The ferry takes us to school and home again every day. I get home at three o'clock. I like my journey to school.

2. How to write about your weekend

كيفية الكتابة عن عطلتك الأسبوعية

- At the weekend, I go to (المكان).
- I go with (الأشخاص).
- We go there by (وسيلة المواصلات).
- We go back home (الوقت).
- We always have a good time.

Example

My weekend

My name's Tamer. I live in Cairo with my family. At the weekend, I go to my grandfather's farm. It's in Giza. I go there with my family. We usually go in my father's car. I like the farm. I help my grandfather plant apples. My brother likes farm animals. He watches them and gives them water. My sister helps my grandmother make lunch. My parents go for a walk to enjoy the green trees there. We always have a good time. It's a lot of fun.

17.5

1 Read the following, then answer the questions:

School starts at half past seven every day. Nabil lives ***near*** his school, so he goes there on foot. He is kind and friendly. He works hard to pass the exams every year. He likes reading, so he goes to the school library twice a week. He hopes to be a doctor because he is good at maths, science and English. He likes meeting clever people, but he doesn't like meeting bad people. He also likes visiting new places. His favourite foods are fish, meat and rice. He helps his mother at home. His favourite sport is football.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage? ....

2. How often does Nabil go to the school library? ....

3. What kind of books do you think Nabil likes to read? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Nabil likes meeting .... people.
a) bad **b)** clever **c)** unkind **d)** unhappy

5. The underlined pronoun "His" refers to ....
a) food **b)** Nabil's father **c)** Nabil **d)** sport

6. The opposite of the word "***near***" is ....
a) far **b)** close **c)** nearby **d)** crowded

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My school .... is a white shirt and blue pants. كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢
a) rule **b)** uniform **c)** form **d)** picture

2. The train left Cairo at 7 o'clock and soon we .... in Giza.
a) walked **b)** arrived **c)** got **d)** went

3. At school, we have many .... to follow.
a) subjects **b)** sports **c)** rules **d)** rooms

4. We usually cycle .... school. القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
a) to **b)** at **c)** in **d)** on

5. There is a nice park .... the other side of the road.
a) in **b)** with **c)** on **d)** to

6. It's .... to travel on a snowmobile. I like it very much.
a) fun **b)** busy **c)** unkind **d)** unhealthy

7. I like to .... to school, it's healthier and costs no money.

a) swim b) drive c) cycle d) fly

8. Room "1" is the .... office. His name is Mr Ibrahim.

الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣

a) teachers b) teachers' c) teacher d) teacher's

9. .... brother is a good tennis player.

a) Waleed b) Waleed' c) Waleed's d) Waleeds

10. We buy medicine at the ....

a) chemist's b) chemists' c) chemists d) chemist

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. A: Who bag is this? B: It's Hadeer's. (..............................)
2. Yesterday match was boring. (..............................)
3. This is Sandy laptop. (..............................)
4. This is a shop for mens clothes. (..............................)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"How children go to school and why"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Challenging Questions

Read and correct the underlined words: مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

1. What is today date, Mazin? (..............................)
2. The chemist is the place where I buy medicine. (..............................)
3. My grandparents' farm is big. He bought it 10 years ago. (..............................)

STUDY *Watch a video*

Lessons 5 & 6



SB pages 19 - 21 | WB pages 83 - 85

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

dinner (n)	وجبة العشاء	language (n)	لغة
favourite (adj)	مفضل	preparatory (adj)	المرحلة الإعدادية
French (n)	اللغة الفرنسية	quite (adv)	إلى حد ما

Language Expressions التعبيرات اللغوية

come > home from	يأتي إلى البيت من	go > shopping	يذهب للتسوق
do > activities	يؤدي أنشطة	read > in bed	يقرأ في الفراش
do > a project on	يقوم بعمل مشروع عن	have > a shower	يستحم

Prepositions حروف الجر

around the world	حول العالم	by + وقت	بحلول
at the end of	في نهاية	for breakfast	على وجبة الإفطار
at the weekend	في العطلة الأسبوعية	on the bus	في الأتوبيس
"be" + from	يأتي من (مكان)	learn about	يتعلم عن

Check Point

Choose and complete: go – language – make – on

1. **A:** What .... do you speak? **B:** French.
2. I never .... shopping on Thursdays.
3. I met Ali .... the bus to school.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
come	يأتى	came	come
put on	يرتدى	put on	put on
wake up	يستيقظ	woke up	woken up

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
friendly	ودود	unfriendly	غير ودود

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية

عند ترتيب المستوى فى مادة ما من الأفضل إلى الأسوأ

very good at/good at/not bad at/quite good at

not very good at/not good at/quite bad at/bad at

- I'm very good at English.
- Heba is good at Arabic.
- I'm not bad at science.
- I'm quite good at maths.
- Kareem is not very good at history.
- I'm not good at drama.
- They're quite bad at science.
- Hanaa is bad at art.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My grandfather is very friendly. The opposite of "friendly" is ....
   a) unfriendly b) horrible
   c) kind d) true
2. My friend, Kareem, is .... good at Arabic.
   a) quite b) quiet
   c) quit d) a quiet

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Definitions التعريفات

an email	رسالة بريد إلكترونى	it is a simple[1] message sent through[2] the internet
Arabic	اللغة العربية	it is the language of Arab countries[3]
art	الرسم	we paint and draw in this lesson
computer studies	دراسات الحاسب	we use a mouse in this lesson
English	اللغة الإنجليزية	it is the language[4] of England
French	اللغة الفرنسية	it is the language of France
maths	الرياضيات	we learn about numbers in this lesson

(1) بسيط
(2) عبر/خلال
(3) الدول العربية
(4) لغة

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
friendly	ودود	kind	طيب
true	صحيح	correct/right	صحيح

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
friend (n)	صديق	-ly	تحول الاسم لصفة	friendly (adj)	ودود

Prefix البادئة

Prefix البادئة	Function الوظيفة	Word	الكلمة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
un-	تعطى عكس المعنى	friendly (adj)	ودود	unfriendly (adj)	غير ودود

Similar spelling - Different meaning

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهه فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهة
quite	إلى حد ما	quiet	هادئ
Arabic	اللغة العربية	Arab	عربى (الجنسية)

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 5

Pre-listening question:

- What is your favourite subject?

Listen and check your answers to Exercise 1. ***SB page 19***



Leila	There's the bell!
Aya	What subject have we got next?
Leila	Let's look at the timetable. We've got computer studies next, in the hall. Hooray!
Aya	Computer studies ... I'm not very good at computer studies!
Leila	I love it! It's my favourite! What's your favourite subject, Aya?
Aya	I like science and languages[1].
Leila	Are you good at languages?
Aya	I'm quite good at English, and I'm not bad at French[2].
Leila	Who's our English teacher this year?
Aya	It's Mrs. Amal.
Leila	Oh good. She's really friendly. When have we got English?
Aya	It's after break.
Leila	What time is break?
Aya	It's from quarter past ten to half past ten. Let's meet in the playground, and go to the library.
Leila	OK!

(1) اللغات

(2) اللغة الفرنسية

Post-listening questions:

1. How do you think Aya can improve her English?
2. How is Mrs. Amal?

Pre-reading question:

- What do you do after school?

Read about Amira. Write the questions a–c in the correct places.

SB page 20

A Day in My Life!

Amira is from Egypt.



Q : 1. **How old are you, and where are you from**?

A : I'm twelve years old, and I'm from Hurghada.

Q : 2. **What subjects do you like**?

A : This year, I'm in preparatory 1 at school. My favourite subjects are science, computer studies and maths. We have science and maths in the first lesson every day, but we only have computer studies on Wednesday. I like music, too, but I'm not very good at it!

Q : 3. **What do you usually do after school**?

A : I sometimes read or watch TV. I always do my homework before I have dinner. After dinner, I usually have a shower and read my book in bed. What time do you wake up and go to bed?

Post-reading question:

- How often does Amira have computer studies?

Read the email and write the missing sentences a–c in the right places.

WB page 84

Hi Nagwa,

How are you? You want to know what my parents do at the weekend. ***My father works with computers***. My mother is a teacher. My dad never works at the weekend, but sometimes my mum looks at students' homework! We often go shopping. When it is not very hot, we usually go to the park. ***My brother always plays football when we go there!*** He is very good at football. What about you? ***What do you do at the weekend?***

Best wishes

Nesma

PRACTICE Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **A:** What is your .... subject? **B:** It's English. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

a) true **b)** friend **c)** favourite **d)** correct

2. .... is the main language of Arab people. كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢

a) French **b)** Spanish **c)** English **d)** Arabic

3. I like my teachers. They're very ....

a) bad **b)** unkind **c)** friendly **d)** sad

4. I usually .... a shower after school.

a) go **b)** do **c)** have **d)** make

5. My mother .... up early to make our breakfast. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣

a) puts **b)** comes **c)** forgets **d)** wakes

6. Which holiday .... can people do in Egypt? المنوفية ٢٠٢٢

a) weeks **b)** views **c)** activities **d)** souvenirs

7. I go to school. I'm in .... one.

a) false **b)** preparatory **c)** right **d)** kind

8. A/An .... is a simple message sent through the internet.

a) email **b)** art **c)** letter **d)** computer

9. Arabic, English and French are all .... الفيوم ٢٠٢٢

a) meals **b)** languages **c)** hobbies **d)** timetables

10. My mother always .... shopping on Sundays.

a) arrives **b)** gets **c)** makes **d)** goes

11. Breakfast, lunch and .... are daily meals. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢

a) dinner **b)** language **c)** petrol **d)** reading

12. My teacher asked us to .... a project about computers.

a) do **b)** make **c)** have **d)** come

13. When I .... home from school, I have something to eat.

a) take **b)** give **c)** have **d)** come

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب
من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

Speaking

Ask and answer questions about school

السؤال والإجابة عن الدراسة

Situation	ما يقال فى هذا الموقف	Response	جملة الرد
How do you travel to school?	كيف تسافر إلى المدرسة؟	I travel to school by bus.	أسافر إلى المدرسة بالأتوبيس.
How long does it take?	كم تستغرق الرحلة؟	About ten minutes.	حوالى ١٠ دقائق.
Who is our teacher of English this year?	من هو مدرسنا فى اللغة الإنجليزية هذا العام؟	Mr Waleed Ali.	الأستاذ وليد على.
When have we got English?	متى موعد حصة اللغة الإنجليزية؟	It's after break.	إنها بعد الفسحة.
What time is break?	متى تكون الفسحة؟	It's at quarter past ten.	فى العاشرة والربع.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

الفيوم ٢٠٢٣

Ahmed is asking Mustafa about his favourite subject.

Ahmed : Hi, Mustafa. Can I ask you a few questions about your school?

Mustafa: (1).. .

Ahmed : What is your favourite subject?

Mustafa: (2).. .

Ahmed : (3)..?

Mustafa: Because English is an interesting subject.

Ahmed : (4)..?

Mustafa: Mr. Omar is my English teacher this year.

Ahmed : How often do you study it?

Mustafa: (5).. .

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Salma is asking Amany about school.

الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣

Salma : Do you mind if I ask you some questions about school?

Amany : (1).. ..

Salma : When do you usually wake up on school days?

Amany : (2).. .

Salma : (3).. ?

Amany : I walk to school because it's very close to my house.

Salma : (4)..?

Amany : My favourite school subject is English.

Salma : Is there a library in your school?

Amany : (5).. I go there daily.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **A:** What .... are you good at, Rana? **B:** English and Italian.
   a) hobbies **b)** sports **c)** foods **d)** languages
2. We always .... dinner at nine in the evening.
   a) have **b)** do **c)** take **d)** give
3. My best friend lives .... Giza.
   a) on **b)** in **c)** from **d)** of
4. We paint and draw in .... lessons.
   a) Arabic **b)** science **c)** maths **d)** art
5. I like my friend Waleed because he is ....
   a) ugly **b)** bad **c)** friendly **d)** unfriendly
6. I get up at seven, then I .... my clothes.
   a) look at **b)** put on **c)** wake up **d)** go to
7. Before I go to bed, I take my favourite book and .... in bed.
   a) read **b)** come **c)** go **d)** have

8. My father asks me not to close the .... door hard.

a) cars' b) car's c) car is d) car

9. My father always .... to work by bus.

a) is going b) going c) goes d) go

10. A: .... dress is this? B: It's mine.

a) Which b) Whose c) When d) What

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. A: How many do you study English? B: Every day. (..............................)
2. What languages are you good for? (..............................)
3. My brother's birthday is on Monday. They are twins. (..............................)
4. Aya never walk to school. (..............................)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on: القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

"A typical day in your life"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

1. My brother always plays football .... we go to the park.

a) when b) why c) which d) what

2. I don't like science, but I'm .... good at it.

a) quite b) not c) never d) hardly

3. Students .... many activities to do at school.

a) stay b) make c) do d) have

Review on Unit 2

Vocabulary

maths	الرياضيات
motorbike	دراجة بخارية
break	فسحة/راحة
notebook	كراسة/دفتر
canoe	زورق طويل خفيف/الكنو
computer studies	دراسات الحاسب
daily life	الحياة اليومية
playground	ملعب
drama	الدراما (أدب المسرحيات)
religion	الدين
English	اللغة الإنجليزية
rules	قواعد
favourite subject	مادة مفضلة
French	اللغة الفرنسية
snowmobile	عربة الثلج
social studies	الدراسات الاجتماعية
timetable	جدول الحصص
home economics	الاقتصاد المنزلى
typical	نموذجى/مثالى
languages	لغات
uniform	زى موحد
Whose ...?	لمن/ملك من ...؟

Language

1 **Adverbs of frequency:** ظروف التكرار:

always دائماً/ usually عادةً/ often غالباً/ sometimes أحياناً/ never أبداً

نستخدم ظروف التكرار للتعبير عن مدى تكرار فعل ما، وتستخدم مع زمن المضارع البسيط.

نضع ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل الأساسى كالتالى:

- Subject + **adv.** (ظرف التكرار) + inf./verb + s, es, ies

يتم استخدام ظروف التكرار بعد (am/is/are) مع (verb to be) كالتالى:

- Subject + am/is/are + **adv.** (ظرف التكرار) + adj. (صفة)

2 ('s): الملكية ('s / s')

- It's **Adel**'s book.
- That is not the **children**'s notebook.

3 (s'):

- That's **the teachers'** room.
- It's **Lamees'** dress.

لا تستخدم ('s) مع الجماد

- I repaired my car door.

عند السؤال عن الملكية نستخدم (Whose) ملك من/لمن

A: Whose shoes are these?

B: They are Ali's shoes.

Skills

Asking and answering about school and timetables:

السؤال والإجابة عن المدرسة وجداول الحصص:

A: What's your favourite subject?

ما هى مادتك المفضلة؟

B: I like maths./

B: My favourite subject is social studies.

أحب الرياضيات/مادتى المفضلة هى الدراسات الاجتماعية.

A: How many lessons do you have every day?

كم عدد الحصص التى لديك كل يوم؟

B: I have seven lessons every day.

لدى سبع حصص يومياً.

A: What time is break?

متى تكون الفسحة؟

B: It's at eleven o'clock.

فى الحادية عشرة تماماً.

A: Who is our teacher of English this year?

من هو مدرسنا فى اللغة الإنجليزية هذا العام؟

B: Mr Mohamed Mesbah.

الأستاذ محمد مصباح.

A: How do you travel to school?

كيف تسافر للمدرسة؟

B: I travel to school by bus.

أسافر للمدرسة بالأتوبيس.

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 2

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1. How is the weather in the USA in winter?
   a) Rainy. b) Sunny. c) Windy. d) Snowy.
2. How do the children go to school there?
   a) By bus. b) By car.
   c) In a canoe. d) On a snowmobile.
3. How is their journey to school?
   a) Fast. b) Fun.
   c) Both a & b. d) Neither a nor b.
4. How is the weather when they go to school?
   a) Hot. b) Cold. c) Wet. d) Cool.

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Dina is asking Jana about her typical day.

القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

Dina : When do you get up?
Jana : (1).. .
Dina : (2)..?
Jana : I have breakfast at six thirty.
Dina : (3)..?
Jana : I go to school at eight o'clock.
Dina : What time do you come home from school?
Jana : (4).. .
Dina : Do you always do your homework after lunch?
Jana : (5).. .

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions: القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

My name is Mustafa. I'm in preparatory one at Tanta Prep School. When I was at primary school, I walked there every day as it was not far from my house. It took me only 10 minutes to get there. This year, my school is far from my house. I get up early every day and take a bus. The streets are very busy, so it takes me a long time to go and **come back**. My dad is friendly, he bought me a bike. It is wonderful. I sometimes cycle to school. Bikes are a healthy way to travel.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the text?

....

2. What does the underlined pronoun "he" refer to?

....

3. Why do you think Mustafa cycles to school?

....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Mustafa is at Tanta Prep School for .... year(s).
   a) one b) two c) three d) four
5. The opposite of "**come back**" is ....
   a) go b) take out c) come to d) get up
6. Mustafa goes to his school by ....
   a) taxi b) car c) train d) bus

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Girls learn how to cook in the .... دمياط ٢٠٢٣
   a) Arabic b) science
   c) maths d) home economics
2. My journey to school .... about 30 minutes.
   a) talks b) wakes c) takes d) makes
3. **A:** What time is it? **B:** It's half .... twelve. المنوفية ٢٠٢٠
   a) on b) in c) to d) past
4. The .... rings at the beginning and the end of the lessons.
   a) ball b) pin c) bin d) bell

5. I usually eat cheese and eggs .... breakfast.

a) with b) to c) by d) for

6. Swimming is my .... hobby. I like it. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

a) expensive b) favourite c) bad d) radio

7. I like English and French. I'm good at ....

a) sports b) languages c) objects d) subjects

8. We .... go to school on Fridays. It's a holiday. الفيوم ٢٠٢٢

a) often b) sometimes c) always d) never

9. Sandy is one of .... friends.

a) Leila's b) Leilas' c) Leilas d) Leila

10. My brother .... a clever tennis player. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٢

a) always b) is always c) always is d) never

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. The mall usually is crowded at the weekend. (....................) الفيوم ٢٠٢٢
2. How often are you travel by plane? (....................)
3. That beautiful blouse is my mothers. (....................)
4. Nour grows always plants in their garden. (....................)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"School rules"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Solve more exams	Well done!

Monthly Models on Units 1&2

هذه النماذج ستساعدك التدرب على الاختبارات الشهرية.

October Model 1

10

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Samir is asking Yehia about his favourite sport.

Samir: Good morning.

Yehia : Good morning. Can I ask you some more questions?

Samir: (1).. .

Yehia : Do you have any hobbies?

Samir: (2).. .

Yehia : (3)..?

Samir: My favourite sport is football.

Yehia : (4)..?

Samir: I play it on Fridays.

Yehia : (5).. .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Your sister is your parents' ....

a) son **b)** uncle **c)** aunt **d)** daughter

2. My uncle travels a lot. He has a lot of ....

a) notebooks **b)** objects **c)** adventures **d)** subjects

3. Athletes work hard to .... their studies, work and their families.

a) practice **b)** balance **c)** arrive **d)** volunteer

4. We arrived at Luxor Airport at quarter .... six.

a) past **b)** paste **c)** post **d)** pasta

5. I can hear the .... It's time for the English lesson.

a) bell **b)** bill **c)** hall **d)** ball

6. Children in Uganda cross the lake in a ....

a) bus b) taxi c) canoe d) snowmobile

7. I usually .... my homework after school.

a) have b) make c) take d) do

8. What time does school .... every day?

a) starting b) start c) starts d) started

9. Tell .... about your family.

a) mine b) my c) me d) I

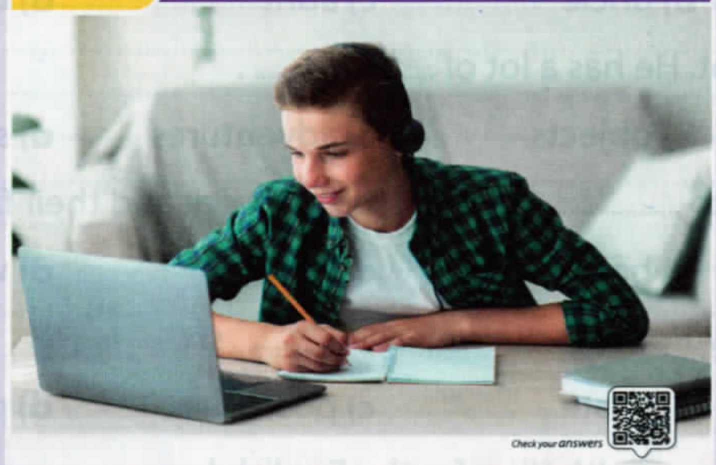
10. It's .... pencil case.

a) Ali b) Ali's c) Alis d) Alis'

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. I usually plays basketball on Sundays. (..................................)
2. She don't like playing tennis. (..................................)
3. He helps always his father with his work. (..................................)
4. A: Who's pencil is yours? B: The red one. (..................................)
5. A: How many do you walk to school? B: Always. (..................................)

Part 2 Final Revision



قم بمراجعة أهم المفردات والقواعد اللغوية والمهارات وحل المزيد من الأسئلة الخاصة بالوحدتين الأولى والثانية عن طريق الذهاب لجزء المراجعة الشهرية بملحق التقويم.

October Model 2

7.5

1 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. .... is a game for two people.

a) Football **b)** Handball **c)** Chess **d)** Volleyball

2. Basmala works hard to .... her dreams.

a) sleep **b)** achieve **c)** have **d)** take

3. When her parents died in an accident, she became a/an ....

a) orphan **b)** kind **c)** age **d)** baby

4. As a gymnast, Ola .... for 5 or 6 hours daily to be fit.

a) teaches **b)** trains **c)** studies **d)** swims

5. I learnt how to cook in the .... lessons.

a) computer studies **b)** social studies **c)** home economics **d)** maths

6. I always borrow books from the school ....

a) lab **b)** library **c)** bookshop **d)** hall

7. People in Egypt are very .... Many tourists like them.

a) friendly **b)** unfriendly **c)** scary **d)** boring

8. Girls always .... to pop music.

a) listening **b)** are listening **c)** listens **d)** listen

9. .... Nabil's sister play handball?

a) Does **b)** Do **c)** Is **d)** Are

10. Fouad is one of .... friends.

a) Samy's **b)** Samys' **c)** Samys **d)** Samy

2 **Read and correct the underlined words:**

1. That pen is me and this is yours. (........................)

2. Where's the teachers room, please? (........................)

3. Who pencil case is this? (........................)

4. That's my father car. (........................)

5. Soliman always walks to school. It's too far. (........................)

October Model 3

15

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Hatem and Hazem are talking about the school day.

Hatem : What's your favourite subject, Hazem?

Hazem : (1).. .

Hatem : (2)..?

Hazem : Mr Samir is our English teacher this year.

Hatem : He's a good teacher. (3)..?

Hazem : We have English today after break. Then we have maths.

Hatem : Good, I like maths. Are you good at maths?

Hazem : (4).. . I like maths.

Hatem : What time is the break?

Hazem : (5).. .

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

"Heidi" is the story of an ***orphan*** girl. She goes to live with her grandfather in Switzerland. Her grandfather is an old man. He lives in a small house in the mountains and he has lots of goats. Heidi sleeps in a bed in the attic of the house. She drinks goat's milk and eats bread and cheese.

Every day she walks in the mountains with the goats, her grandfather and her friend Peter. She sees birds and flowers. She is very happy.

But one day, Heidi's aunt arrives and takes her to the city. Heidi doesn't like the city and she is very sad to be away from her grandfather, Peter and the goats. Heidi has lots of adventures in the city.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the passage mainly about?

....

2. What do you think of Heidi's life?

....

3. Where does Heidi sleep?

....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Heidi's grandfather has lots of ....

a) dogs | b) cats
c) goats | d) lions

5. The underlined pronoun "he" refers to ....

a) Peter | b) Heidi's grandfather
c) Heidi's mother | d) Heidi's cousin

6. The underlined word "***orphan***" means someone who has no ....

a) money | b) friends
c) parents | d) father or mother

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. That car belongs to my uncle. It's him. (..................................)
2. We often goes shopping at the weekend. (..................................)
3. He always swims. He can't swim. (..................................)
4. This is me phone. It's new. (..................................)

4 Write a paragraph of about Eighty (80) words on:

"A day in your school"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



Unit 3

Different people

Objectives of the unit

Tapescripts

Reading	A description of a sports star; a blog post; Alice's Adventures in Wonderland
Writing	A blog post about a friend
Listening	Descriptions of people
Speaking	Describing people; talking about likes and dislikes
Language	have / has got; can / can't
Life Skills	Respect for diversity; resilience

STUDY *Watch a video*

Lessons 1 & 2



SB pages 22-25 | WB pages 86 & 87

A Vocabulary

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

famous (adj)	مشهور	look (ed) like	يشبه
footballer (n)	لاعب كرة قدم	moustache (n)	شارب
beard (n)	لحية	goal (n)	هدف
big smile	ابتسامة كبيرة	runner (n)	عداء/متسابق جرى
Europe (n)	أوروبا	sports star (n)	نجم رياضى
fan (n)	معجب/مشجع	team (n)	فريق
Hair types أنواع الشعر			
curly hair	شعر مجعد	straight hair	شعر مستقيم
dark hair	شعر داكن	blond hair	شعر أشقر
short hair	شعر قصير	long hair	شعر طويل
Sports ألعاب رياضية			
basketball (n)	كرة السلة	squash (n)	الإسكواش
running (n)	الجرى	volleyball (n)	الكرة الطائرة

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

carry (y/ied) (v)	يحمل	normal (adj)	عادى/طبيعى
description (n)	وصف	person (n)	شخص
insect (n)	حشرة	present (n)	هدية
Italian (n/adj)	اللغة الإيطالية/إيطالى	the Cairo Tower (n)	برج القاهرة
glasses (n)	نظارة/نظارات	tortoise (n)	سلحفاة

Check Point

Choose and complete: tiger – tortoise – footballer – like

1. Mohamed Salah is an amazing ....
2. What does your best friend look ....?
3. The .... is a very slow animal.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

(n) = noun | (adj) = adjective | (prep) = preposition
(v) = verb | (adv) = adverb | (conj) = conjunction

Language Expressions

التعبيرات اللغوية

jump	high	يقفز عاليًا	score	a goal	يحرز/يسجل هدفًا
play	video games	يلعب ألعاب الفيديو	take	a holiday	يأخذ إجازة
talk to	fans	يتكلم مع المعجبين	give	money	يعطى (يتبرع) بالمال

Prepositions

حروف الجر

easy for	سهل لـ	play for	يلعب لصالح
have time for	لديه وقت لـ	short for a footballer	قصير بالنسبة للاعب كرة القدم
go at + السرعة	تسير بسرعة	talk to	يتكلم مع/إلى
pick (ed) up	يلتقط	travel around	يسافر حول

Check Point

Choose and complete: for – around – score

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

1. Mohamed Salah can .... a lot of goals.
2. Cristiano Ronaldo plays .... Al Nasr Football Club in the KSA.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.	Present		Past simple	P.P.
build	يبنى	built	built	give	يعطى	gave	given
fly	يطير	flew	flown	win	يفوز/يكسب	won	won

Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
fast	سريع	slow	بطىء
poor	فقير	rich	غنى
strong	قوى	weak	ضعيف
tall	طويل	short	قصير

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 **tall** (طويل) (طول رأسى)

- My brother is tall.

long (طويل) (طول أفقى)

- She's got long hair.

2 How to describe someone's hair: كيفية وصف شعر شخص ما:

01 size	02 colour	03 pattern	04 noun
long	dark	curly	hair
short	black	straight	

- Mohamed Salah has got long, dark, curly hair.

3 What + do/does + الفاعل + look like? للسؤال عن الملامح نستخدم

- What does your father look like?
- He's got short, dark hair.

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائي للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
famous	مشهور	well-known	معروف جيداً
strong	قوى	powerful	قوى

Suffix اللاحقة

Word الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
football (n) كرة قدم	-er	تحويل الاسم إلى اسم فاعل	footballer (n) لاعب كرة قدم

Prefix البادئة

Prefix البادئة	Function الوظيفة	Word الكلمة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
un-	تعطى عكس المعنى	funny (adj) مضحك	unfunny (adj) غير مضحك

Similar spelling - Different meaning

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهة
hair	شعر	hear	يسمع
fans	معجبون	fins	زعانف السمكة
beard	لحية	bread	خبز

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى.

B Reading & Listening Skills

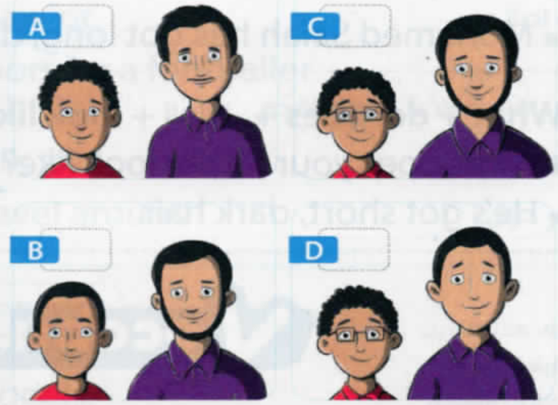
Lesson 1

Pre-listening question:

- What does your father look like?

Listen. Tick (✓) the picture of Samir. *SB page 23*





Mazin	There's my friend, Samir.
Mum	I don't know Samir. What does he look like (1)?
Mazin	He's got short, dark hair (2).
Mum	Oh, I think I can see him. Has he got glasses (3)?
Mazin	No, he hasn't. His dad's with him.
Mum	Has Samir's dad got a beard (4)?
Mazin	Yes, he has.
Mum	Oh, yes. I can see Samir now.

(1) يشبه (2) شعر غامق قصير
(3) نظارة (4) لحية

Note: تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمة التالية:

beard /bɪəʳd/

Post-listening question:

- Do you think that Mazin's mother has met Samir before? How do you know?

Complete the descriptions with these words: *WB page 86*



The woman in the first picture has got long straight **hair** and **glasses**. The man in the second picture has got **short curly** dark hair and a **moustache**. The second woman has got short **blond** hair. The second man has got short dark **hair** and a **beard**.

Lesson 2

Pre-reading question:

- What do you know about Mohamed Salah?

Look at the photo. What do you know about this sports star? *SB page 24*

Mohamed Salah is my favourite sports star(1). He plays football for a very good team(2) in Europe(3). He plays for Egypt, too. He is very good at scoring goals. He is a fast runner(4).



Mohamed Salah has usually got a big smile(5). He is quite short(6) for a footballer(7). He is 1.75 metres tall(8). In this photo, Mohamed Salah has got dark, curly hair and a beard.

He is a kind(9) person. He gives money to build schools and hospitals in Egypt. He also gives money to poor(10) people. He is very friendly(11) and he always talks to his fans.

He has not got much time for hobbies, but when he is at home, he enjoys playing video games and watching films.

(1) نجم رياضي	(2) فريق	(3) أوروبا
(4) عداء سريع	(5) ابتسامة كبيرة	(6) قصير إلى حد ما
(7) لاعب كرة قدم	(8) طويل	(9) عطوف
(10) فقير	(11) ودود	

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

Europe /'jʊərəp/

score /skɔːʳ/

Post-reading questions:

1. Mohamed Salah is a kind person. Explain.
2. Do you think Mohamed Salah is a role model? Why?

Pre-listening question:

- Which sport would you like to practise?

Listen and circle the correct words. *SB page 25*



My favourite sports star is Doaa Elghobashy. She plays volleyball for Egypt. She's very tall. She's 180 centimetres tall. She's strong and she's fast. She can jump very high! She's friendly. She always has a big smile.

Complete the sentences with can or can't. *WB page 87*



Mohamed Salah **can** score lots of goals and he **can** run very fast. He lives in England. He **can** speak English, of course. He lived in Italy for two years, so he **can** speak Italian, too! He is famous, so he **can't** have a normal life. If he goes outside, many people want to talk to him. He is very busy. He **can't** take many holidays.

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

England /ˈɪŋglənd/ famous /feɪməs/ Italian /ɪtæliən/

Post-reading question:

- How many languages can Mohamed Salah speak?

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

▶ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. **A:** Has your sister got short hair? **B:** No, she has got .... hair. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
   a) long b) slow c) fast d) kind
2. Her hair is .... It is not straight. البحيرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) blond b) short c) curly d) long
3. I have got short, dark, curly .... المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) hear b) hair c) ear d) her
4. I can't see well, so I need .... القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) classes b) glasses c) shoes d) books
5. Mohamed Salah has a big ....
   a) smell b) smile c) mile d) small
6. My sister likes writing stories. She wants to be a famous ....
   a) writer b) gymnast c) nurse d) singer
7. Mohammed Salah is quite short .... a footballer.
   a) on b) to c) at d) for
8. He's Maher's brother. He looks .... him.
   a) like b) by c) with d) near
9. She has got .... hair. It's very long.
   a) street b) straight c) funny d) hard
10. Mohamed Salah is very .... He always talks to his fans.
    a) funny b) rich c) friendly d) poor
11. My cousin lives in Italy, but he can't .... Italian well.
    a) speak b) talk c) tell d) watch
12. I had many .... on my birthday.
    a) presents b) films c) holidays d) features
13. Mohamed Salah is an Egyptian .... star. He is very famous. الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٠
    a) sport b) sporty c) sports d) sport's

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Salah can .... a lot of goals. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) break b) save c) find d) score
2. My grandfather has got a big .... on his mouth. المنيا ٢٠٢٣
   a) hair b) beard c) ear d) moustache
3. My hair is .... It isn't straight. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) blond b) curly c) short d) long
4. Mohammed Salah is friendly and always talks to his .... القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) pans b) pins c) vans d) fans
5. A .... is a group of people who play a sport together. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
   a) star b) goal c) footballer d) team
6. One of my hobbies is .... video games.
   a) playing b) scoring c) giving d) writing
7. Sara always reads .... stories. They make her laugh.
   a) sad b) unkind c) funny d) bad
8. Mohamed Salah is a famous sports .... around the world.
   a) moon b) sky c) high d) star
9. Speaking many languages isn't easy .... most people.
   a) with b) in c) at d) for
10. He was the first. He is really a fast ....
    a) worker b) teacher c) runner d) writer
11. He has got dark hair and a .... قنا ٢٠٢٣
    a) beard b) heard c) bird d) tired
12. My grandfather is kind. He helps .... people.
    a) famous b) strong c) rich d) poor
13. My father doesn't have much time .... playing a sport.
    a) at b) for c) on d) to

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Language

1 Have/Has got يملك/لديه/عنده

Form التكوين

I	You	We	They	(اسم جمع)

> have(n't) got ....

- I have got short, curly hair.
- They haven't got curly hair.

He	She	It	(اسم مفرد)

> has(n't) got ....

- Mazin has got a bike.
- My mother hasn't got a car.

لاحظ

يمكن أن نستخدم ظروف التكرار بعد (have/has):

- Mohamed Salah has **usually** got a big smile.

Yes/No questions

Question السؤال

Have + I / you / we / they / (اسم جمع) > got ...?

A: Have **you** got curly hair?
B: Yes, I have. / **B:** No, I haven't.

Has + he / she / it / (اسم مفرد) > got ...?

A: Has **Mazin** got a bike?
B: Yes, **he** has. / **B:** No, **he** hasn't.

Wh-questions

Question word (أداة الاستفهام) + has/have + subj. (الفاعل) + got ...?

A: How many brothers have **you** got?
B: I have got three brothers.

Got it ?

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Read and correct the underlined words:

1. She's get blond hair. (..............................)
   - الإجابة الصحيحة (got) لوجود 's وهى اختصار has.
2. **A:** Have you got glasses? **B:** No, I have. (..............................)
   - الإجابة الصحيحة (haven't) لوجود No الدالة على النفى.

2 Can / Can't يستطيع/ لا يستطيع

Form & Usage: التكوين والاستخدام:

Subject + can + inf. يستطيع

We use can to say what we are able to do:

نستخدم (can + inf.) للتعبير عن القدرة على عمل شيء.

- We can **give** money to help poor people.
- I can **read** English books.

Subject + can't + inf. لا يستطيع

We use cannot/can't to say what we are not able to do:

نستخدم (can't + inf.) للتعبير عن عدم القدرة على عمل شيء.

- I can't **pick up** that box. My arms are weak.
- I can't **swim** well.

Question

Can + subject + inf. ...?

A: Can you **play** the drums? **B:** Yes, I can.

A: Can Eman **play** chess? **B:** No, she can't.

لاحظ

Subject + can + **inf.** = Subject + am/is/are + able to + **inf.**

- Sara can **ride** a bike. = Sara is able to **ride** a bike.

تستخدم can للطلب أو الاستئذان:

- Can I have a cup of coffee, please?

Got it ?

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Omar can't flew a kite. (..................)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (fly) لأن can't يأتى بعدها الفعل فى المصدر.

2. He can drive his father's car? (..................)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (Can he) لأنه توجد علامة استفهام فيجب تقديم Can على الفاعل he.

PRACTICE Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My brother has .... a laptop. بور سعيد ٢٠٢٢
   a) get b) got c) gets d) getting
2. A: Have you got long hair? B: No, I .... got short hair. المنيا ٢٠٢٣
   a) have b) haven't c) has d) hasn't
3. We .... got a big house. Our house is small. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) hasn't b) haven't c) aren't d) weren't
4. Mohamed Salah has .... dark, curly hair. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) gets b) get c) got d) getting
5. I .... got glasses, but my sister has got glasses. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) have b) hasn't c) haven't d) has
6. My father has .... a smartphone. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
   a) get b) got c) gets d) getting
7. All my brothers and sisters .... dark, curly hair.
   a) has got b) have got c) are got d) is got
8. .... Faten's dad got a red car?
   a) Has b) Have c) Do d) Does
9. I .... got brown hair. الفيوم ٢٠٢٢
   a) don't have b) hasn't c) doesn't have d) haven't
10. .... got straight hair?
    a) Have you b) You have c) You are d) Are you

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. <u>Has</u> you got a mobile phone? (..............................) الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
2. Ahmed and I <u>has</u> got curly hair. (..............................) المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
3. Your father has <u>get</u> a good job. (..............................)
4. Have you got a brother? Yes, I <u>haven't</u>. (..............................) المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
5. My best friend <u>have</u> got short, dark hair. (..............................) الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
6. We <u>is</u> got an apple tree in our garden. (..............................) الغربية ٢٠٢٢
7. I'm busy, I <u>can</u> come with you right now. (..............................)

Time to Practise

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What sports .... you play well?
   a) can b) are c) have d) has
2. My dad only speaks English. He .... speak French.
   a) can b) can't c) have d) haven't
3. .... I use your pen, please?
   a) Can b) Has c) Have d) Are
4. They .... live here, the weather is too cold.
   a) can't b) aren't c) haven't d) hasn't
5. I'm sorry, I .... help you today, I'm really busy.
   a) can b) can't c) have d) haven't
6. The girls can .... squash.
   a) play b) plays c) played d) playing
7. I can ride a bike, but I .... drive a car.
   a) am not b) am c) can d) can't
8. Look! Ali is there! .... see him?
   a) You have b) Have you c) Can you d) You can
9. I'm sure you .... do your homework alone. It's very easy!
   a) are b) aren't c) can't d) can
10. I .... speak French, but I know how to write it.
    a) can b) can't c) have d) haven't

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Can your sister <u>singing</u> well? (..........................)
2. He can't <u>picked</u> up that box. (..........................) الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
3. A: Can she fly a kite? B: Yes, she <u>can't</u>. (..........................)
4. He can <u>plays</u> football very well. (..........................)
5. I'm a good footballer. I <u>can't</u> play well. (..........................) الفيوم ٢٠٢٣

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

D Skills

Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

How to write about your favourite sports star.

كيفية الكتابة عن نجمك الرياضى المفضل.

- I like sports.
- My favourite sports star is (الاسم).
- He/She plays (الرياضة).
- He/She is (very/quite) .... (tall/short).
- He/She is (very/quite) .... (fast/strong).
- He/She has got (very/quite) (short/long/straight/curly) hair.
- He/She is (very/quite) .... (kind/friendly).
- He/She always talks to his/her fans.

Writing tips

Note that.

لاحظ الاختصارات التالية:

has = 's
is = 's
have = 've

Example

A sports star

I like sports. There are many sports stars all over the world. My favourite sports star is Mohamed Salah. I like him very much. He is a good footballer. He works hard to achieve his goals. He is 1.75 metres tall. He is quite short for a footballer. He has got dark, curly hair and a beard. He usually has a big smile. He is a fast runner and he scores a lot of goals. He is very kind. He helps many poor people. He gives money to build schools and hospitals. So, all of us should be proud of him.

Check Point

Write a paragraph about:

"Mohamed Salah"

I like sports. ....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1. Who is Basel?
   a) His brother. b) His father.
   c) His uncle. d) His friend.
2. What is his favourite subject?
   a) Arabic. b) Maths.
   c) English. d) Science.
3. What does he like?
   a) Reading. b) Video games.
   c) Writing. d) Both A and B.
4. What kind of hair has he got?
   a) Curly. b) Straight. c) Blond. d) Dark.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She has long .... hair. It's very beautiful.
   a) around b) straight c) funny d) poor
2. My uncle is very funny. He has a big .... on his face.
   a) smile b) ear c) eye d) insect
3. How .... is the Cairo Tower? It is 187 metres.

WB

   a) tall b) long c) wide d) much
4. Mohamed Salah, Cristiano Ronaldo and Haaland are famous ....
   a) dentists b) footballers
   c) teachers d) accountants
5. In football matches, there are two ....
   a) teams b) times
   c) players d) matches
6. Our car can go .... 150 km/h.
   a) for b) at c) by d) with
7. Adel Emam is a famous film .... in Egypt.
   a) star b) moon c) land d) runner

8. Eman .... lots of friends.

a) have got b) haven't c) has got d) hasn't

9. This is too difficult! I .... do it.

a) can b) can't c) have d) haven't

10. We .... a lot of homework to do.

a) are b) can c) has got d) have got

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Have you get any brothers? (....................)
2. What is your sister look like? (....................) القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
3. A: Can your uncle speak Chinese? B: Yes, he can't. (....................)
4. I can pick up that box. My arms are weak. (....................) الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on: القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

"Your favourite sports star"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

1. Can you give me a .... of your house?

a) feature b) room c) description d) present

2. Adel .... to climb that tree.

a) can b) can't c) able d) is able

3. A: Have you got long hair? B: No. I .... got short hair.

a) have b) haven't c) has d) hasn't

STUDY

Watch a video

Lessons 3 & 4



SB pages 26-28 | WB pages 88 & 89

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

adventure (n)	مغامرة	online diary	مفكرة على الإنترنت
blog post (n)	منشور فى مدونة	scary (adj)	مخيف
busy (adj)	مشغول	sensible (adj)	عاقل/حكيم
character (n)	شخصية	strange (adj)	غريب
heart (n)	قلب	Wonderland (n)	بلاد العجائب
history (n)	التاريخ	website (n)	موقع إنترنت

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

children's story (n)	قصة أطفال	main (adj)	رئيسى/أساسى
clear (adj)	واضح	queen (n)	ملكة
information (n)	معلومة/معلومات	simple (adj)	بسيط

Check Point

Choose and complete: scary – busy – queen – simple

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية

1. A .... is the wife زوجة of the king.
2. I can't play with you. I'm very ....
3. The lion is a .... animal.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

do > art/maths	يدرس الرسم/الرياضيات	get > angry	يغضب
go > home	يذهب إلى البيت	make > decisions	يتخذ قرارات
go > swimming	يذهب للسباحة	twice > a week	مرتين فى الأسبوع

Prepositions
حروف الجر

at the end of	فى نهاية	shout at	يصيح فى
frightened of	خائف من	write on a website	يكتب فى موقع إنترنت
learn about	يتعلم عن	play with	يلعب مع / بـ

Check Point

Choose and complete: make – of – at – do

1. I like drawing. I .... art after school.
2. Children are usually frightened .... dark places.
3. Don't shout .... your little brother.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

Conjugations of irregular verbs
تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.	Present		Past simple	P.P.
begin	يبدأ	began	begun	swim	يسبح/يعوم	swam	swum
draw	يرسم	drew	drawn	think	يعتقد	thought	thought

Words and Opposites
الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
angry	غاضب	calm	هادئ
brave	شجاع	coward	جبان
clever	ماهر/ذكى	stupid	غبى
hungry	جوعان	full	ممتلئ
interesting	شيق	boring	ممل
late	متأخر	early	مبكر

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 like + (v+ing/n) يحب — love (v+ing/n) (يحب (بشدة

- I like **swimming.**
- I love **learning** about the past.

2 Adjectives ending with (ed/ing): الصفات المنتهية بـ (ed/ing):

الصفات المنتهية بـ (ed) تصف الكائن الحى الذى يشعر بهذه الصفة.

- He doesn't know what to do. He is bored.

الصفات المنتهية بـ (ing) تصف الكائن الحى أو الشىء الذى يسبب هذه الصفة.

- **The film** was very boring. So, I didn't enjoy it.

3 Study these adjectives: ادرس هذه الصفات:

- A clever person **knows a lot.**
- A sensible person **advises people** and **makes good decisions.**
- A brave person is happy to **do something dangerous.**
- Something scary makes you feel **frightened.**
- A busy person is always **doing something.**
- People often feel angry when they are **unhappy about something.**

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Definitions التعريفات

blog	مدونة	A website on which someone writes regularly. It is like an online diary.	بانتظام

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
angry	غاضب	cross	غاضب
clever	ماهر/ذكى	brilliant	متألق/ذكى

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
frighten (v)	يخيف	-ed	تحويل الفعل لصفة	frightened (adj)	خائف
sense (n)	حاسة	-ible	تحويل الاسم لصفة	sensible (adj)	عاقل/حكيم

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-reading question:

- What would you like to tell us about yourself?

Read the blog post[1] quickly. What is Yunis's favourite sport? *SB page 26*

All about me



Hi! My name is Yunis. I have got short, dark, curly hair. I live in Alexandria with my mum, dad and two brothers.

My favourite school subject is history. I love learning about the past[2]. I like maths and science, too. I do not like art because I am not very good at drawing[3] or painting[4].

(1) منشور على مدونة إلكترونية	(2) الماضي
(3) الرسم	(4) التلوين
(5) مرتين	(6) ممل



I often play sport after school. My favourite sport is basketball. I am good at it because I am tall and I can jump high. I like swimming, too. I go swimming twice[5] a week.

At home, I like reading and playing video games. I do not like watching TV. I think it is boring[6].

Post-reading questions:

1. What do you think of watching TV?
2. Why doesn't Yunis like art?

Pre-listening question:

- What kind of sports do you like?

Listen to the game and write the order. *SB page 27*

Girl 1 Let's play a game. I'm looking at a girl. Who is it?

Girl 2 Does she like watching TV?

Girl 1 No, she doesn't.

Girl 2 Does she like swimming[1]?

Girl 1 Yes, she does.

Girl 2 It's Noha.

Girl 1 Good! OK. Number two. Who is it?

Girl 2 Does she like swimming?

Girl 1 Yes, she does. She loves swimming!

Girl 2 Does she like playing basketball?

Girl 1 No, she doesn't.

Girl 2 It's Dina.

Girl 1 Well done! Three. Who is this?

Girl 2 Does she like watching TV?

Girl 1 Yes, she does.

Girl 2 It's Eman.

Girl 1 No, it isn't.

Girl 2 Does she like basketball?

Girl 1 Yes, she does.

Girl 2 It's Maya.

Girl 1 Yes!

Girl 2 OK, so the last one loves painting[2], she likes watching TV and she doesn't like playing basketball. It's Eman.

Girl 1 Yes again!

Dina ☐

swim

paint

play/basketball



Noha ☐

swim

watch/TV

paint



Eman ☐

watch/TV

paint

play/basketaball



Maya ☐

watch/TV

paint

play/basketaball



(1) السباحة (2) التلوين/ الرسم

Post-listening question:

- Did you like the game? Why/ Why not?

Pre-reading question:

- What's your favourite subject?

Read the blogs and write the questions a–c in the correct place.

WB page 88

a. Which sport do you like?

b. What do you do in the evening?

c. What is your favourite subject?



c. What is your favourite subject?

1 My name is Riham. My favourite subject at school is science. I love learning about how things work. I like doing maths, too. I am quite good at maths.

a. Which sport do you like?

2 I quite like doing sport. My favourite sport is tennis. I like playing it with my friends, but I am not very good at it.

b. What do you do in the evening?

3 I usually go home after school. I do not like playing computer games. After I do my homework, I like reading a book. I like writing stories, too.

Post-reading questions:

1. Why do you think Riham isn't good at tennis?
2. What subjects is Riham good at?

Pre-reading question:

- Who is your favourite writer?

Look at the pictures. What do you think the story is about? Is it a true story?

SB page 28

Alice's Adventures in Wonderland

by Lewis Carroll



Alice's Adventures in *Wonderland*[1] is a famous children's story. **Alice's** adventure[2] begins when she goes to Wonderland. Alice thinks that Wonderland is interesting, but it is a strange[3] place. She is a sensible[4] girl, but she does not understand Wonderland.

Alice is also brave[5] and clever[6]. She meets a lot of interesting characters[7].



Alice often sees **the White Rabbit.** The White Rabbit is very busy[8] – and he is usually very late. He always runs fast.



The Cheshire Cat is a funny animal. He has got a big smile and he is very friendly. He tells Alice about Wonderland and helps her to find different places and characters.



The Queen of Hearts is not very nice. She is a scary[9] person. She is always angry[10] and she shouts at people. Alice is brave, so she is not frightened[11] of her.

At the end of the story, all the characters help Alice so she can go home again.

(1) بلاد العجائب	(2) مغامرة	(3) غريب
(4) عاقل	(5) شجاع	(6) ماهر
(7) شخصيات	(8) مشغول	(9) مخيف
(10) غاضب	(11) خائف	

Post-reading questions:

1. Alice is a brave girl. Explain.
2. What have you learnt from the story?

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

▶ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I like .... because I am very good at drawing.

a) art **b)** history **c)** science **d)** maths

2. I often .... swimming on Fridays.

a) make **b)** catch **c)** go **d)** do

3. I do not like this programme. I think it is ....

a) boring **b)** cool **c)** interesting **d)** good

4. A busy person is always .... WB الجيزة ٢٠٢٣

a) talking **b)** walking

c) laughing **d)** doing something

5. Something scary makes you feel .... WB الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣

a) frightened **b)** happy **c)** funny **d)** free

6. Tamer is writing about his weekend in his online .... الشرقية ٢٠٢٢

a) printer **b)** diary **c)** mouse **d)** laptop

7. A .... person knows a lot. WB

a) brave **b)** busy **c)** clever **d)** sad

8. A blog is a/an .... on which someone writes regularly. المنوفية ٢٠٢٢

a) website **b)** playground **c)** office **d)** library

9. People often feel .... when they are unhappy about something.

a) weak **b)** strong **c)** hungry **d)** angry

10. A sensible person .... good decisions.

a) goes **b)** watches **c)** makes **d)** does

11. I like history, so I love learning about the ....

a) present **b)** past **c)** now **d)** tomorrow

12. Alice is the main .... in the story I read. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

a) diary **b)** blog **c)** post **d)** character

13. She is a wise girl. This means she is .... دمياط ٢٠٢٣

a) naughty **b)** sensible **c)** bad **d)** lazy

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A brave person is happy to do something .... القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

   a) fun b) strange c) bad d) dangerous

2. My father is .... He thinks well. الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢

   a) sensible b) nervous c) bored d) strange

3. She is a .... person, she shouts at people. قنا ٢٠٢٣

   a) friendly b) sensible c) brave d) scary

4. A blog is a/an .... diary. بور سعيد ٢٠٢٢

   a) online b) offline c) inline d) line

5. Ahmed likes .... because he loves learning about the past.

   a) painting b) post c) post d) history

6. He didn't do his homework, so the teacher is very ....

   a) happy b) angry c) brave d) scared

7. I always .... sport on holidays. My favourite sport is football.

   a) play b) make c) go d) take

8. She is good at art. She loves ....

   a) playing b) swimming c) painting d) printing

9. I like .... maths. I am quite good at maths.

   a) giving b) making c) playing d) doing

10. I like reading books and .... stories.

    a) giving b) writing c) helping d) doing

11. We can't live without a ....

    a) heart b) beard c) moustache d) leg

12. Who is the main .... of the story?

    a) character b) website c) adventure d) heart

13. I usually go swimming on Fridays. I do it ....

    a) kindly b) clearly c) nicely d) regularly

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب
من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

1. Speaking

Describing a character from a story

وصف شخصية من قصة

Situation ما يقال فى هذا الموقف	Response جملة الرد
She's clever, brave and sensible. She goes to Wonderland. هى شخصية ماهرة وشجاعة وعاقلة. هى تذهب إلى بلاد العجائب.	She's Alice. إنها «أليس».
He is very busy – and he is usually very late. He always runs fast. هو مشغول جداً. هو عادة متأخر ويجرى بسرعة دائماً.	He's the White Rabbit. إنه «وايت رابيت».
He is a funny animal. He has got a big smile and he is very friendly. هو مضحك. لديه ابتسامة كبيرة وودود جداً.	He's the Cheshire Cat. إنه «شيشاير كات».

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

الشرقية ٢٠٢٢

Noha is asking Sara about reading.

Noha : Hi, Sara. How are you?
Sara : (1).. .
Noha : Do you like reading?
Sara : (2).. . I like reading books very much.
Noha : (3)..?
Sara : I read books at the library.
Noha : (4)..?
Sara : My favourite book is Alice's Adventures in Wonderland.
Noha : Is it interesting?
Sara : (5).. .

2. Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء الى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

1. How to write about your favourite book.

كيف تكتب عن كتابك المفضل.

- I like reading.
- I like reading books by (اسم الكاتب).
- My favourite book is (اسم القصة / الكتاب).
- It's about a girl/boy called (الشخصية).

Writing tips

A paragraph is a group of related sentences that present one topic or one idea.
الفقرة هى مجموعة من الجمل التى تقدم موضوعًا أو فكرة واحدة.

Example

The book I like

I like reading because reading is my favourite hobby. I like reading books by Lewis Carroll. My favourite storybook is *Alice's Adventures in Wonderland*. It's about a girl called Alice. Alice has a lot of adventures in Wonderland. She meets a lot of interesting characters in Wonderland. She meets the White Rabbit which is always late. She also meets the Cheshire Cat which has a big smile, at last she meets the Queen of Hearts. She is always angry and shouts at people. At the end of the story, all the characters help Alice so she can go home again.

2. How to write about your best friend.

كيف تكتب عن صديقك المفضل.

- My best friend is called (الاسم).
- He/She has got (صفة) hair.
- He/She likes (هواياته).
- I like him/her because he/she is a lot of fun.

Example

My best friend

I have many friends. We go to school together. I like to spend good time with them. We usually play together. We help each other. I like them all, but my best friend is called Fatma. She's got long, straight hair. She's got brown eyes. She's very friendly. She likes reading and playing squash. I like her because she's a lot of fun. She helps me when I need help. She usually visits me at home. My parents like her, too. They say that she's a good girl. I hope we go to the same university.

17.5

1 Read the following, then answer the questions: القليوبية ٢٠٢٢

I like reading short stories so much. One of my favourite stories is "Alice's Adventures in Wonderland". It is a famous children's story. Alice had a lot of adventures in Wonderland. She met a lot of interesting characters. Wonderland was a strange, but interesting place for Alice. Alice was a sensible, brave and clever girl. She met the White Rabbit that was always late and ran fast. The Cheshire Cat is a funny animal which helps Alice to find different places and characters. The Queen of Hearts was a scary person but Alice was not frightened of her.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is this passage about?

....

2. How did the Cheshire Cat help Alice?

....

3. What do you think of Alice?

....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "her" refers to ....
   a) the White Rabbit b) the Cheshire Cat c) Alice d) the Queen of Hearts
5. Alice's Adventures in Wonderland is a .... story.
   a) detective b) comic c) children's d) history
6. The underlined word "famous" means ....
   a) unknown b) silly c) funny d) well-known

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He is very .... He has a big smile.
   a) busy b) brave c) angry d) funny
2. Alice had a lot of .... in Wonderland.
   a) adventures b) places c) devices d) water
3. Sally is always angry and she shouts .... people.
   a) on b) at c) in d) about
4. He's very ...., so he is not frightened of anything.
   a) brave b) busy c) angry d) uncle
5. My grandfather is .... He gives us good advice.
   a) bad b) sensible c) scary d) worried
6. She is the .... of this country. She is the most important person there.
   a) story b) character c) queen d) worker

7. I usually visit my grandmother .... a week.

a) double b) second c) two d) twice

8. Nahla .... go out tonight. She has an exam tomorrow. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢

a) can't b) haven't c) will d) can

9. My little sister has .... a doll.

a) get b) got c) gets d) getting

10. What .... Sara got? الشرقية ٢٠٢٢

a) have b) has c) having d) to have

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Have Samir got a beard? (..............................) القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
2. How many lessons do you got today? (..............................) القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
3. I can't open the door. I have got a key. (..............................) الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢
4. You can giving money to the poor. (..............................) الشرقية ٢٠٢٢

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your favourite story"

....

....

....

....

....

....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

1. I like meeting .... people. They are very nice.
   a) bored b) boring
   c) interesting d) interested
2. Clever, brave and sensible are ....
   a) nouns b) verbs
   c) adjectives d) adverbs
3. Children often .... to get what they want.
   a) shout b) go
   c) write d) make

STUDY

Watch a video

Lessons 5 & 6



SB pages 29 - 31 | WB pages 90 - 92

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

exciting (adj)	مثير	secret (n/adj)	سر/سرى
garden (n)	حديقة (منزل)	storm (n)	عاصفة
island (n)	جزيرة	treasure (n)	كنز
review (n)	نقد	wheelchair (n)	كرسى متحرك

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

appearance (n)	مظهر	personality (n)	شخصية
(be) called (v)	يسمى/يدعى	pool (n)	حوض السباحة
cool (adj)	رائع	the country (n)	الريف

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

have > lunch	يتناول الغداء	make > a poster	يعمل ملصقًا إعلانيًا
He is a lot of fun.	إنه ممتع للغاية.	make > notes	يدوّن ملاحظات

Prepositions — حروف الجر

different **from**	مختلف عن	think **of**	يعتقد فى
difficult **for**	صعب لـ	travel **around**	يتنقل حول
far **from**	بعيد عن	work **on** a boat	يعمل على قارب

Check Point

Choose and complete: island – the country – from – cool – garden

1. The weather is very .... in spring.
2. My grandfather has a farm in ....
3. Elephantine .... is in Aswan.
4. My school is far .... my house.

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 Asking about someone's personality:
السؤال عن الصفات الشخصية لشخص ما:

What + is/are + (الفاعل) + like? ما صفاته؟

- **A:** What is your teacher like?
- **B:** He's kind and friendly.

2 Asking about someone's hobbies:
السؤال عن هوايات شخص ما:

What + do/does + (الفاعل) + like doing? ماذا يحب أن يفعل؟

- **A:** What do you like doing?
- **B:** I like playing football.

3 Joining words:
روابط (الإضافة / التناقض / السبب / النتيجة):

and و (للعطف والإضافة)

- He goes to all of my lessons and we have lunch together.

but ولكن (للتناقض)

- Basel can't run, but he's fast in his wheelchair.

because لأن (للسبب)

- I like Basel because he's a lot of fun.

so لذلك (للنتيجة)

- Basel's a lot of fun, so I like him.

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائي للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
exciting	مثير	interesting	شيق

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
appear (v)	يظهر	-ance	تحويل الفعل لاسم	appearance (n)	مظهر
excite (v)	يثير	-ing	تحويل الفعل لصفة	exciting (adj)	مثير

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 5

Pre-reading question:

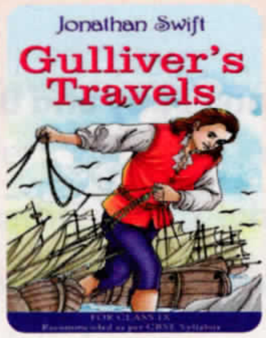
- What's your favourite book?

Match the book reviews to the names of the books. Then write them.

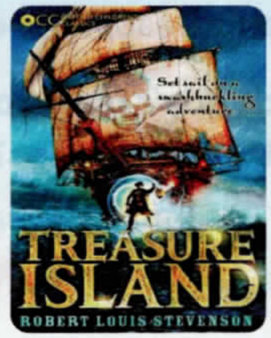
WB page 90



آن من المرتفعات الخضراء



رحلات غوليفر



جزيرة الكنـــــز

My favourite book is *Anne of Green Gables* by Lucy Maud Montgomery. It is about an orphan girl called Anne. She goes to live with a brother and sister in the country. Life is not easy for her and she has many adventures, but Anne is a sensible girl. It is a good book.

My favourite book is called *Gulliver's Travels*, by Jonathan Swift. It is about a clever doctor. He works on a boat but there is a big storm. He falls in the sea and swims to a strange place. All the people here are very tall. Some of them are very friendly, but some of them are scary. I like the book very much.

My favourite book is *Treasure Island*. It is by Robert Louis Stevenson. It is about a brave boy called Jim. He travels in a big boat to an island. It is very far from his home. The boat has got many scary men on it and they all want to find some money on the island. It is very exciting.

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

orphan /ɔːʳfən/ treasure /treʒəʳ/ island /aɪlənd/

Post-reading question:

- Which story did you like most? Why?

Listen and complete the sentences. *WB page 90*

1. My name's Nevine. I like sports and I love playing tennis.
2. I'm Sayed. My favourite subject is English and I like writing stories.
3. Hi, I'm Maya. I like art. I don't like drawing but I love painting.
4. I'm Rami. I love swimming, but I don't like swimming in the sea. It's cold.
5. My name's Lina and this is my sister Maya. We don't like watching TV but we like reading books.

Read Fady's blog post. Why can't Fady and Basel always do the same things?

Lesson 6

SB page 30

Who's your best friend?



My best friend is called Basel. He has got straight hair and brown eyes. He is kind and he is very funny. He likes reading and playing video games. Those are my favourite hobbies, too!

Basel has got a wheelchair[1] because he cannot walk. It is not easy for Basel to travel around school. I open doors for Basel and help him to get things in the classroom.

Basel's wheelchair is not usually a problem. We do a lot of things together[2]. He goes to all of my lessons and we have lunch together. Sometimes we even play football in the playground. Basel cannot run, but he is fast in his wheelchair!

I like Basel because he is a lot of fun. I am very happy that he is my friend.

Fady, 12

(1) كرسي متحرك (2) معًا/سويًا

Life Skills

1. How are people in your life different from you?
2. Are differences important? Why/ Why not?

Practise more

PRACTICE Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

▶ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Yunis likes watching TV because he thinks it's .... (الغربية ٢٠٢٢)
   a) bad b) exciting c) ugly d) boring
2. You should never tell your .... to other people. (الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢)
   a) secret b) post c) poster d) note
3. Hany has got a .... because he can't walk. (الفيوم ٢٠٢٣)
   a) table b) ladder c) pool d) wheelchair
4. Nasser is not very good at maths, ... he is very good at English.
   a) so b) because c) and d) but
5. I like Ahmed because he is a lot of .... (القليوبية ٢٠٢٢)
   a) fins b) fans c) fun d) falls
6. This is not my book: it's different .... mine. (الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢)
   a) from b) at c) on d) about
7. She went to live with her grandparents in the .... It's quiet there.
   a) capital b) boat c) country d) city
8. He likes the sea. He wants to work .... a boat.
   a) out b) to c) on d) of
9. We usually .... lunch at four o'clock.
   a) do b) have c) go d) write
10. We have a house with a big .... We plant some trees there.
    a) garden b) pool c) island d) secret
11. Life is not easy .... poor people.
    a) for b) at c) on d) in
12. This is a good book. I read a good .... about it.
    a) treasure b) country c) review d) poster
13. We went on a school trip. It was .... I enjoyed so much.
    a) cool b) boring c) strange d) bad

1 Complete the following dialogue:

القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

Ahmed asks Hossam about his favourite sport.

Ahmed : What's your favourite sport, Hossam?

Hossam : (1)...

Ahmed : Why are you good at it?

Hossam : (2)...

Ahmed : (3)...?

Hossam : I play basketball in the club.

Ahmed : (4)...?

Hossam : I play basketball twice a week.

Ahmed : Can I play with you?

Hossam : (5)...

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A .... is something you don't want people to know about. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   - a) secretary b) truth
   - c) secret d) lie
2. He can't walk, he needs a .... القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   - a) chain b) swing
   - c) wing d) wheelchair
3. The first day at school was .... I liked it so much.
   - a) exciting b) boring
   - c) ugly d) bad
4. He likes reading and .... video games.
   - a) writing b) playing
   - c) making d) doing
5. An email is a simple .... sent through the internet. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
   - a) gift b) passage
   - c) message d) notebook
6. He has a kind, friendly .... We all like him.
   - a) storm b) review
   - c) problem d) personality

7. Students should .... notes of what their teachers say.

a) make b) do c) play d) catch

8. I love swimming, ... I don't like swimming in the sea.

a) so b) but c) because d) and

9. He is kind .... he is very funny.

a) and b) so c) but d) because

10. Mayar loves .... on Fridays.

a) cook b) cooked c) cooking d) to cooking

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Basmala gets up late on Friday so it's a holiday. (..............................)
2. I like football because I don't like watching matches on TV. (..............................)
3. I wasn't hungry, but I didn't eat. (..............................)
4. I love English, Arabic so Italian. (..............................)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your best friend"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

1. *"Gulliver's Travels"*, ... Jonathan Swift, is about a clever doctor.

a) for b) with c) at d) by

2. This book is about a brave boy .... Jim.

a) is called b) called c) calling d) calls

3. I like Basel because he is a lot of ....

a) smile b) cool c) fun d) funny

Review on Unit 3

Vocabulary

adventure	مغامرة
island	جزيرة
angry	غاضب
appearance	مظهر
moustache	شارب
beard	لحية
personality	شخصية
runner	عداء/متسابق جرى
character	شخصية
children's story	قصة أطفال
sensible	عاقل/حكيم
curly	مجعد
sports star	نجم رياضي
storm	عاصفة
exciting	مثير
strange	غريب
famous	مشهور
team	فريق
the country	الريف
wanderland	بلاد العجائب
friendly	ودود
treasure	كنز
wheelchair	كرسى متحرك
fan	معجب/مشجع

Language

1. Have / Has got

Affirmative

- I have got short, curly hair.
- Mazin has got a bike.

Negative

- They haven't got curly hair.
- My dad hasn't got a beard.

Question

- Have you got glasses?
- Has your father got a beard?

2. Can / Can't

Affirmative

- We can **give** money to help poor people.
- I can **read** English books.

Negative

- I can't **pick up** that box. My arms are weak.
- I can't **swim** well.

Question

- **A:** Can you **play** the drums?
  B: Yes, I can.
- **A:** Can Eman **play** chess?
  B: No, she can't.

Skills

Describing a character from a story

- She's clever, brave and sensible. She goes to Wonderland.

هى شخصية ماهرة وشجاعة وعاقلة. هى تذهب إلى بلاد العجائب.

- **She's Alice.** إنها "أليس".

- He is very busy – and he is usually very late. He always runs fast.

هو مشغول جداً. هو عادة متأخر ويجرى بسرعة دائماً.

- **He's the White Rabbit.** إنه "الوايت رابت".

- He is a funny animal. He has got a big smile and he is very friendly.

هو مضحك. لديه ابتسامة كبيرة وودود جداً.

- **He's the Cheshire Cat.**

إنه "شيشاير كات".

Question Bank

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 3

24

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1. What is your favourite book?

a) Alice. b) Treasure Island.
c) Gulliver's Travels. d) Anne of Green Gables.

2. Who wrote it?

a) Jonathan Swift. b) Lucy Maud.
c) Robert Louis. d) Shakespeare.

3. What is it about?

a) A sailor. b) A brave boy.
c) An orphan. d) A doctor.

4. Where does he/she work?

a) In a garden. b) On a boat.
c) At a hospital. d) At a school.

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue: قنا ٢٠٢٣

Asmaa and Sara are talking about sport.

Sara : Hi, Asmaa. How are you?
Asmaa : (1).. .
Sara : (2)..?
Asmaa : My favourite sport is football.
Sara : (3)..?
Asmaa : I play it at the club.
Sara : Who is your favourite player?
Asmaa : (4).. .
Sara : Does he score a lot of goals?
Asmaa : (5).. .

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions: كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢

I have got many friends, but Akram is my best friend. He has got short, dark, straight hair. He lives in Qalyoubia governorate with his mum, dad and two sisters. His favourite subject is history because he loves learning about the past. He also likes maths and science. He doesn't like art because he isn't good at drawing or painting. His favourite sport is swimming. He likes it greatly. He goes to all of my lessons and we have lunch together. Sometimes we even play football in the playground. I like him because he is a lot of fun. I am very happy that he is my friend.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the passage about?

....

2. What do you think of Akram?

....

3. What does the underlined word "it" refer to?

....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Akram has got ...., straight hair.
   a) dark b) light c) red d) brown
5. Akram lives in .... governorate.
   a) Qena b) Qalyoubia c) Gharbia d) Cairo
6. Akram doesn't like art because he is .... at art.
   a) good b) brilliant c) clever d) bad

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Haaland .... many goals every year.
   a) plays b) helps c) takes d) scores
2. I am a .... of Mohammad Salah. قنا ٢٠٢٣
   a) fin b) fan c) fun d) customer
3. He has three cars and three houses. He is very ....
   a) rich b) poor c) weak d) fast

4. There are many interesting .... in this story. الجيزة ٢٠٢٠

a) devices b) characters c) players d) actors

5. A .... person is the person who always thinks carefully. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢

a) fat b) strong c) sensible d) lazy

6. Hani uses a .... to go to school because he can't walk. بور سعيد ٢٠٢٢

a) pencil case b) wheelchair c) sharpener d) pencil

7. My teacher asked me to .... a poster about a famous person.

a) make b) do c) stay d) save

8. .... got any questions to ask?

a) You have b) Have you c) Do you d) You do

9. My son .... got blue eyes.

a) does b) is c) have d) has

10. I can't .... my coffee. It's too hot.

a) to drink b) drinks c) drink d) drinking

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. I'm tired, so I went to bed very late. (..............................)
2. We can't go now. I am ready. (..............................)
3. The music is so loud. I can't hearing you. (..............................)
4. She can jumps very high. (..............................) القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on: الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢

"A famous sports star"

....

....

....

....

....

....



Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Solve more exams	Well done!

Review A







Units 1, 2 & 3

Review A

Lesson 1

Pre-reading question:

- What is your father's job?

Read the text. Write a title and circle the correct words. *SB page 32*

1. ☐



This is my aunt. Her name's Amal. She's my mum's sister. She's got long, dark, curly hair and she's got glasses. Aunt Amal is very kind.

2. ☐



This is my uncle. His name's Nader and he's got short, dark hair. Uncle Nader is very tall! He's a teacher and he's very clever.

3. ☐



Aunt Amal and Uncle Nader have got two children – a son and a daughter. They're my cousins. Their names are Fares and Malak. This is Fares. He's five. He's got short, curly hair and he's very friendly.

4. ☐



Malak is two. She's got short, straight hair. She likes playing with her toys. She usually has a big smile. I think she's very funny.

Post-reading question:

- Why do you think Malak is funny?

Pre-listening question:

- **Do you think that children like their schools? Why?**

Listen and circle the correct words. *WB page 93*



Aya Hi! My name is Aya. My friends have got long, straight hair but I have got short, curly hair. We go to a girls' school in Cairo. My favourite school subject is Art. I love drawing. I am not very good at it, but I want to be! We have Art at quarter to eleven, after Maths and before English. I have got one brother and one sister. My brother is very friendly and my sister is very clever.

Lesson 2

Listen to Shady talking about his day. Circle the correct words. *SB page 33*



Woman What time do you get up, Shady?

Shady I usually get up at a quarter to seven on a school day.

Woman How do you travel to school?

Shady I always walk to school with my brother. We never go by car.

Woman Do you like school?

Shady Yes, I do! My lessons are interesting and I see my friends. I always sit next to my best friend, Hassan, in lessons.

Woman And what do you do after school?

Shady I sometimes play sport. On Mondays, I play football, and on Wednesdays, I go swimming.

Woman Do you have any other hobbies? Do you play chess?

Shady No! I never play chess. I don't like it. But I often listen to music or watch TV.

Post-listening question: - **What do you usually do in your free time?**



Unit 4

We're using technology!

Objectives of the unit

Tapescripts

Reading	A text message conversation; a text about hobbies
Writing	A paragraph and a poster about online safety
Listening	A description of technology in a classroom; a phone call
Speaking	Describing the technology in your classroom; a guessing game; giving instructions
Language	There is / there are; the present continuous
Life Skills	Problem solving; resilience

WB تشير لأسئلة كتاب التدريبات SB تشير لأسئلة كتاب الطالب

STUDY Lessons 1 & 2

Watch a video



SB pages 34 - 37 | WB pages 95 & 96

A Vocabulary

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

3D printer (n)	طابعة ثلاثية الأبعاد	printer (n)	الطابعة
click on the icon	ينقر على أيقونة (بالكمبيوتر)	send a photo	يرسل صورة
guess (ed) (v)	يخمن	send a text message	يرسل رسالة نصية
look at a website	يلقى نظرة على موقع إلكترونى	tablet (n)	الجهاز اللوحى (تابلت)
mouse (n)	فأرة الكمبيوتر	take a selfie	يلتقط صورة شخصية
MP3 player (n)	مشغل إم بى ثرى	tap on the icon	يضغط على أيقونة (بالهاتف)
phone charger (n)	شاحن الهاتف	use technology	يستخدم التكنولوجيا
print (ed) (v)	يطبع	write an email	يكتب رسالة بريد إلكترونى

Language Expressions التعبيرات اللغوية

design >	an icon	يصمم أيقونة	make >	a model	يصنع نموذجًا
do >	computer studies	يدرس الكمبيوتر		chess pieces	يرتب قطع الشطرنج
	homework	يقوم بعمل الواجب	sleep >	in a chair	ينام على كرسى

Prepositions حروف الجر

at the moment	فى هذه اللحظة	look for	يبحث عن
charge ... with	يشحن ... ب	on a laptop/ a computer/ a mobile phone	على اللاب توب/ الكمبيوتر/ الهاتف المحمول

Check Point

Choose and complete: MP3 player – for – tap – use

1. I can't find my pen. Will you help me look .... it?
2. Most people .... technology nowadays.
3. I listen to music on my ....

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والتعبيرات اللغوية و حروف الجر.

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

(n) = noun	(adj) = adjective	(prep) = preposition
(v) = verb	(adv) = adverb	(conj) = conjunction

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
mean	يعنى/يقصد	meant	meant
send	يرسل	sent	sent

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
new	جديد	old	قديم
online	عبر الإنترنت	offline	غير متصل بالإنترنت
sleep	ينام	wake up	يستيقظ

Language Notes

1 Would you like to + inf. …..? هل تود أن/هل تريد أن ...؟

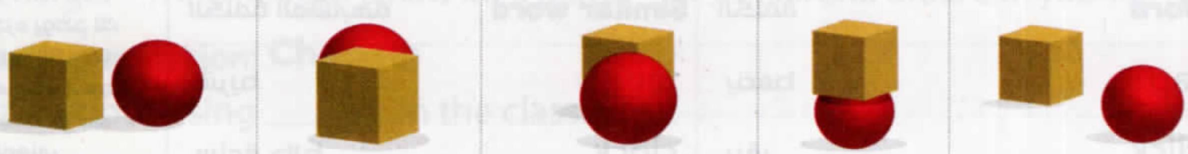
I'd (would) like to + inf. أنا أود أن

- Would you like to **use** a 3D printer?
- I'd like to **take** a selfie.

2 الاسم المركب من كلمتين عند جمعه نجمع الكلمة الثانية فقط.

- laptop computers / mobile phones.

3 Prepositions of place: حروف جر المكان:



next to بجانب/بجوار | behind خلف | in front of أمام | under تحت | near بالقرب من

4 An MP3 player

لاحظ استخدام an مع كلمة MP3 player لأنها تبدأ بصوت متحرك حيث إن حرف (M) ينطق (em)

- There's an MP3 player on the desk.

5 one of + (اسم جمع) + فعل مفرد واحد من .....

- One of my friends likes computer studies.

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Definitions التعريفات

A printer الطابعة	a machine[1] which is connected to[2] a computer and can make copies[3] of information	(1) آلة
An MP3 player مشغل إم بى ثرى	a machine or a computer program[4] that plays music	(2) متصلة بـ (3) تنسخ (4) برنامج
A blog مدونة	is an online[5] diary.	(5) عبر الإنترنت

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
send	يرسل	post	يرسل بالبريد/ينشر
small	صغير	tiny	صغير جدًا

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
charge (v)	يشحن	-er		تحول الفعل لاسم		charger (n)	شاحن
print (v)	يطبع					printer (n)	الطابعة

Similar spelling - Different meaning

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى.

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهة
tap	يضغط	tape	شريط
click	ينقر	clock	ساعة حائط
mouse	فأرة	mouth	فم

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. One of my sisters .... in primary school.
   a) are b) is c) has d) have
2. To get the noun from the verb "print", add the suffix "....................".
   a) -er b) -or c) -ment d) -ness

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 1

Pre-reading question:

- What forms of technology do you use at school?

Read Ziad's description of his classroom. Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false sentences. *SB pages 34 & 35*



(1) الأجهزة اللوحية
(2) أجهزة الكمبيوتر المحمول
(3) فأرة
(4) طابعة
(5) يطبع
(6) هاتف محمول
(7) يشحن
(8) شاحن الهاتف
(9) مشغل أغان

I am Ziad and this is a picture of my classroom. We often use tablets (1) in school. There are two laptop computers (2) in the classroom, too. One laptop has got a mouse (3). I don't know why it's called a mouse. Do you know? And there's a printer (4), too. My friend, Omar, is printing (5) his homework.

I have got a mobile phone (6) but it's in my bag – we don't use our phones in the classroom. Mr Osman has got a phone on his desk. He's charging (7) his phone with a phone charger (8). And he's got a new MP3 player (9), it's small and blue. Can you see it?

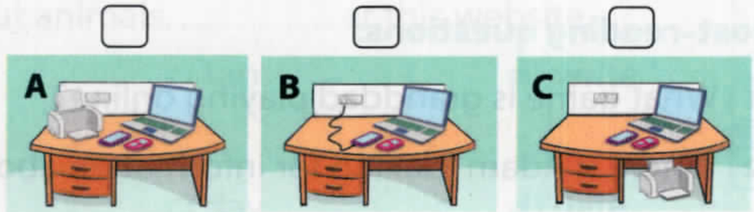
Post-reading question: Choose:

- The text is about using .... in the classroom.

a) mobile phones b) technology c) nature d) sports

Listen to the description of the classroom. Tick (✓) the correct picture. *SB page 35*

There's a laptop computer on the table. Under the table, there's a printer. There isn't an MP3 player, but there are two mobile phones near the laptop. The laptop has got a mouse.



Lesson 2

Pre-reading question:

- What is your father doing now?

Read the text message conversation. What is in this photo? *SB page 36*

online

- Hi, Granddad. It's Adam. What are you doing?

* I'm playing chess online (1). I'm winning at the moment!

- Are you using your new laptop?

* Yes, it's quite easy to use. What are you doing?

- I'm doing my computer studies homework. I'm looking at websites for information about 3D printers (2).

* What are your mum and Alia doing?

- They're taking selfies (3). I'm sending you one of their photos now.



(1) عبر الإنترنت
(2) الطابعات ثلاثية الأبعاد
(3) يلتقط صورًا شخصية

* Oh yes! That's a great photo.

Type a message

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

website /websaɪt/
information /ɪnfəˈmeɪʃən/

Post-reading questions:

1. What game is granddad playing online?
2. Where is Adam looking for information about 3D printers?

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

▶ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. I bought a new MP3 .... to play music. الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
   a) computer   b) player   c) speaker   d) printer
2. I use the .... to recharge my mobile phone. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) earphone   b) tablet   c) charger   d) mouse
3. You can use the .... to click on different icons on the computer. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) mouse   b) printer   c) charger   d) mouth
4. I .... on the icon many times, but the mobile didn't work. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣
   a) clicked   b) tapped   c) rung   d) knocked
5. I'd like to .... a selfie in front of the river. دمياط ٢٠٢٣
   a) make   b) take   c) tap   d) click
6. We use our .... in the classroom to learn.
   a) chargers   b) tablets   c) players   d) phones
7. A/An .... is a kind of computer. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) white board   b) charger   c) MP3 player   d) laptop
8. I like .... models. This is a model plane.
   a) sending   b) writing   c) making   d) doing
9. The whiteboard is .... the teacher.
   a) between   b) next   c) behind   d) in front
10. I like to play games .... my mobile phone.
    a) in   b) on   c) at   d) for
11. The book is full of useful ....
    a) design   b) white board   c) information   d) printer
12. To know some information about animals, ... at this website.
    a) look   b) click   c) tap   d) write
13. A blog is a/an online ....
    a) diary   b) dairy   c) day   d) date

WB

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Can you .... me a text message when you arrive? الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) take b) send c) play d) do
2. There is a keyboard .... to the laptop. المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
   a) far b) in front c) next d) under
3. My brother likes to .... computer studies.
   a) make b) use c) send d) do
4. He .... his mobile to talk to his friends.
   a) makes b) smiles c) uses d) sends
5. Computers and mobiles are examples of .... الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
   a) food b) technology c) subjects d) hobbies
6. He's charging his phone .... a phone charger.
   a) in b) on c) with d) by
7. We can .... a video call with our cousins in England. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) make b) take c) see d) send
8. Don't .... photos to people you don't know. WB
   a) receive b) make c) send d) play
9. .... the icon on your computer. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) Give b) Fill c) Click d) Play
10. I looked .... my watch everywhere, but I didn't find it.
    a) after b) at c) for d) up
11. Marwan likes playing games .... He is on the internet every day. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
    a) online b) offline c) line d) outline
12. There is a mouse .... the laptop on the teacher's desk. WB
    a) far b) in front c) next d) near

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Language

1 There is: يوجد للمفرد — There are: يوجد للجمع

Affirmative

There is + اسم مفرد (يعد) / اسم لا يعد ... .
- There is a printer.
- There is some water.

There are + اسم جمع ... .
- There are two laptops.
- There are some boys here.

Negative

There isn't + اسم مفرد (يعد) / اسم لا يعد ... .
- There isn't a printer.
- There isn't any water.

There aren't + اسم جمع ... .
- There aren't any laptops.
- There aren't any boys here.

Yes/No questions

Is there + اسم مفرد (يعد) / اسم لا يعد ...?
- Is there a printer?
- Is there any water?

Yes, there is. / No, there isn't.

Are there + اسم جمع ...?
- Are there **any** laptops?
- Are there **any** boys here?

Yes, there are. / No, there aren't.

Remember — **some & any**

- نستخدم (some) بمعنى بعض (فى الجملة المثبتة)، ويأتى بعدها اسم يعد (جمع) أو اسم لا يعد:

- There are some **apples** in this dish.
- There is some **rice** in this dish.

- يمكن استخدامها أيضا فى العرض والطلب:

- Would you like some **tea**? (عرض)
- Can I have some **books**? (طلب)

- نستخدم (any) بمعنى أى (فى الجملة المنفية والسؤال بمعنى هل)، ويأتى بعدها اسم يعد (جمع) أو اسم لا يعد:

- There **aren't** any **tablets** in my classroom.
- **Is** there any juice in the bottle?

Got it ?

Read and correct the underlined words:

1. There are any notebooks in your bag? (..............................)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (Are there) لوجود علامة استفهام (صيغة سؤال).

2. There are any oranges on the tree. (..............................)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (some) لأن الجملة مثبتة.

2 The present continuous tense: زمن المضارع المستمر

Usage الاستخدام

We use the present continuous to talk about things that are happening now.

- يستخدم للتعبير عن شيء يحدث الآن (وقت الكلام).

- I am reading a story **now**.
- She is writing a letter **at the moment**.

Form التكوين

Subject	be	
I	am	inf + ing
He / She / It	is	inf + ing
You / We / They	are	inf + ing

- I am **playing** football.
- He is **reading** a book.
- They are **swimming**.

Key words الكلمات الدالة

(now الآن - Look! انظر - Listen! أنصت - Watch out! احترس! - still ما زال

at the moment فى هذه اللحظة - at present فى الوقت الحاضر)

- My grandfather is using his laptop now.
- My uncle is watching TV at the moment.

لاحظ ◄ عند إضافة الـ (ing) للفعل:

- الأفعال المنتهية بـ (e) نحذف الـ (e) عند إضافة الـ (ing): (take - taking) - (come - coming)
- بعض الأفعال المنتهية بحرف ساكن يسبقه حرف متحرك، غالبا ما نضاعف الحرف الأخير قبل إضافة الـ (ing):
(put - putting) - (cut - cutting) - (swim - swimming)
- الأفعال المنتهية بـ (ie) نحذف الـ (ie) ثم نضع (ying). (die - dying) - (lie - lying)

Got it ?

Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Ramy study English at the moment. (....................)
- الإجابة الصحيحة (is studying) لوجود (at the moment) الدالة على المضارع المستمر.

2. Watch out! A car comes. (....................)
- الإجابة الصحيحة (is coming) لوجود (Watch out!) الدالة على المضارع المستمر.

3. I can't go out. I do my homework. (....................)
- الإجابة الصحيحة (am doing) لأنه لا يستطيع الخروج الآن، أى زمن فعل الواجب مضارع مستمر.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There's .... cheese in the fridge. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
   a) any b) some c) a lot d) many
2. I'm very thirsty. Can I have .... cold water, please?
   a) many b) a lot c) some d) any
3. There .... a printer above the table.
   a) is b) are c) has d) have
4. Are there .... tablets? القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) some b) a c) any d) a lot
5. There isn't an MP3 player, but there .... two mobile phones.
   a) are b) aren't c) is d) isn't
6. .... any juice in the bottle?
   a) Is there b) Are there c) There is d) There are
7. There .... any notebooks in my bag. دمياط ٢٠٢٣
   a) is b) isn't c) are d) aren't
8. There aren't .... boys in the class. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
   a) some b) any c) no d) much
9. There isn't .... meat on the table.
   a) a b) a lot c) some d) any
10. .... any girls in your class?
   a) There is b) Is there c) There are d) Are there

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. There aren't <u>some</u> eggs in the fridge. (....................) دمياط ٢٠٢٢
2. **A:** Is there any milk in the bottle? **B:** No, there <u>is</u>. (....................)
3. <u>Is</u> there any figs in the fridge? (....................) المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
4. We don't have <u>some</u> books on the shelves. (....................) الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
5. There <u>aren't</u> any rice in the dish. (....................) المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
6. Can I have <u>any</u> juice, please? (....................) القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

Time to Practise

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. They .... at websites for information now. دمياط ٢٠٢٣
   a) are looking b) looking c) looked d) look
2. Look! Adel .... in the garden. القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
   a) works b) are working
   c) is working d) work
3. My sisters are .... the dishes at the moment.
   a) wash b) washes c) washing d) washed
4. The boys .... in the playground now.
   a) play b) played c) are playing d) playing
5. My friend .... his homework now. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
   a) printed b) is printing
   c) printing d) prints
6. Mum and my sister .... a cake at the moment. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) is baking b) are baking c) bakes d) baked
7. Basmala .... sleeping now.
   a) can b) does c) is d) has
8. Some kids .... noise inside the class.
   a) is making b) makes c) making d) are making
9. .... is cleaning the house at the moment.
   a) Mayada b) Mayada and her mum
   c) We d) I

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. She is <u>watches</u> a nice programme now. (....................) المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
2. Ahmed is <u>played</u> chess online. (....................) دمياط ٢٠٢٣
3. I <u>drink</u> tea at the moment. (....................) الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣
4. Ali and Kamal <u>is</u> riding their bikes. (....................)
5. Listen! She <u>sings</u> beautifully. (....................)
6. My little sister <u>aren't</u> doing her homework at the moment. (....................)

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

D Skills

Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء الى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

How to write a description of your classroom.

كيفية كتابة وصف عن حجرتك الدراسية.

- My name's (الاسم).
- We often use (اسم الجهاز) in school.
- There are (العدد) tablet computers in the classroom.
- There aren't any (اسم الجهاز).
- There's a printer, too.
- We use it to print our homework.
- I've got a mobile phone, but I don't use it at school.

Writing tips

Use a heading to tell people what your paragraph is about.

- استخدم عنوانًا لتخبر الناس عن موضوع فقرتك.

Example

Classroom objects

My name's Samy. Our life is going fast now because of technology. Technology helps us get information easily. We often use tablets in school. There are four tablet computers in the classroom. We use them to look for information on the internet. There aren't any laptops. There's a printer, too. We use it to print our homework. There is a board. The teacher always explains the lessons on it. I've got a mobile phone, but I don't use it at school. My favourite lesson is computer studies. At break, I look at websites for new video games.

Check Point

Write a paragraph about:

"Your classroom"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1. What do you love?
   a) Park. b) Break. c) Nature. d) Technology.
2. What is your favourite hobby?
   a) Playing video games. b) Watching TV. c) Playing football. d) Reading.
3. How often do you play on your laptop?
   a) Often. b) Always. c) Usually. d) Never.
4. How often do you play on your mobile phone?
   a) Usually. b) Always. c) Never. d) Sometimes.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A .... is a photo you take for yourself. الغربية ٢٠٢٢
   a) door b) printer c) selfie d) castle
2. My computer .... makes a loud click.
   a) mouse b) printer c) charger d) tablet
3. Young people use the .... to listen to music. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) charger b) MP3 player c) printer d) mouse
4. You can .... on the icon and find information. قنا ٢٠٢٣
   a) tap b) tape c) try d) look
5. Mr. Osama is .... his phone with a phone charger. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) wearing b) killing c) breaking d) charging
6. We usually use mobile phones to send .... messages. القاهرة ٢٠٢٠
   a) test b) taste c) text d) taxi
7. There is a phone charger .... of the printer. الفيوم ٢٠٢٢
   a) next b) behind c) in front d) under
8. My sister .... me with my homework at the moment.
   a) helps b) helping c) helped d) is helping

9. .... a lot of supermarkets in your city?

a) Is there b) There is c) There are d) Are there

10. There aren't .... trees in front of my house.

a) any b) some c) a d) a lot

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Manal having lunch with her family now. (..............................)
2. There isn't some sugar in my tea. (..............................)
3. I'm play chess online now. (..............................) القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
4. There are an MP3 player behind the laptop. (..............................) القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Technology you use in the classroom"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

1. If you .... an icon for "take a selfie", what will it look like?

a) design b) tap
c) click d) do

2. There are two .... in the classroom.

a) laptop computer b) laptops computers
c) laptops computer d) laptop computers

3. My brother studies at .... university in the USA.

a) an b) some
c) a d) much

STUDY | Watch a video

Lessons 3 & 4



SB pages 38 - 40 | WB pages 97 & 98

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

dancer (n)	راقصة	programme (n)	برنامج
dictionary (n)	قاموس	school uniform (n)	زى مدرسى
nature (n)	الطبيعة	wave (d) (v)	يلوح بيده

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

break time (n)	وقت الفسحة	puzzle (n)	لغز
drop (ped) (v)	يسقِط	stay (ed) (v)	يبقى/يقيم/يظل

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

bring > a drink	يحضر مشروبًا	go > outside	يذهب للخارج
do > a hobby	يؤدى هواية	have > a hobby	لديه هواية
talk to > a friend	يتحدث مع صديق	mime > an action	يمثل حدثًا
give > advice	يعطى نصيحة	take > notes	يسجل ملاحظات

Prepositions — حروف الجر

at break/lunchtime	فى الفسحة/وقت الغداء	put my hand up	أرفع يدى لأعلى
on an MP3 player	على مشغل الموسيقى	smile at	يبتسم لـ
programme on	البرنامج يعرض	write with	يكتب باستخدام

Check Point

Choose and complete: programme - at - stay - wave

1. A: What's your favourite TV ....? B: Wicked Tuna.
2. Smile .... the camera to get a good photo.
3. We don't .... in class during the break.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسة والتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
bring	يحضر	brought	brought
wear	يرتدى	wore	worn

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
different	مختلف	similar/same	مشابه
stay	يبقى/يقيم/يظل	leave	يغادر
hot	حار	cold	بارد

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 like/don't like + being يحب/يحب ألا يكون .....

- I like being in the garden.
- I don't like being in the house.

2 use + المفعول + to + inf. / for + v +ing يستخدم ..... لـ

- Hala is using her mobile phone to make/ for making a video call.

3 need + (n) يحتاج / **need to + (inf.)** يحتاج إلى أن

- I need **some water**, please.
- I need to **drink** some water, please.

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
hot	حار	warm	دافئ
stay	يبقى/يقيم/يظل	remain	يبقى/يظل

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
act (v)	يتصرف	-ion		تحول الفعل لإسم		action (n)	عمل/تصرف
dance (v)	يرقص	-er		تحويل الفعل لاسم فاعل		dancer (n)	راقصة

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-listening question: - What are your brothers/sisters doing now?

Listen to the conversation between two sisters. What's Randa doing?

SB page 38



Randa Hi, Sherifa, it's Randa.

Sherifa Oh, hello Randa! Where are you? Are you at home?

Randa Yes, and Uncle Yasser's here with our cousins Ola, Reem and Samira.

Sherifa What's mum doing?

Randa She's looking at a website. She wants to make a cake.

Sherifa Yum! Mum makes the best cakes. Is she using the tablet?

Randa No, she isn't. She's using the laptop. Uncle Yasser's using the tablet. He's writing an email.

Sherifa Is grandmother watching TV?

Randa Yes, she is. It's her favourite programme[1] on now.

Sherifa Of course. What are Ola and Samira doing?

Randa They're taking selfies in the garden.

Sherifa Again? They are always taking selfies!

Randa I know. Reem isn't taking a selfie; she is listening to music on her Mp3 player.

Sherifa She's a good dancer[2]! What are you doing, Randa?

Randa I am talking to you!

Sherifa Oh yes!

(1) برنامج

(2) راقصة

Post-listening questions:

1. Do you think they are enjoying their time? Why?
2. If you were Sherifa, would you return home quickly to be with your family?

Pre-listening question: - What do you like to do when you have free time?

Read the conversation between Leila and Judy. Correct the mistakes. Listen and check your answers. *WB page 97*



Judy Hi, Leila. Where are you?

Leila Hi, Judy. I'm **in** the park with my family.

Judy What **are** you doing there?

Leila I'm **sitting** under a tree. It's very sunny.

Judy **Are** your brothers sitting, too?

Leila No, they aren't. They're playing football.

Judy Is your dad **playing** football with them?

Leila No, he isn't. He's not here. He's working today. But my Uncle Hassan is playing football!

Judy What**'s** your mother doing?

Leila Er, wait... here she is. She's bringing me a drink of water. Thanks, Mum!

Post-listening question:

- Do you think Leila will feel sad because her father isn't with them?

Lesson 3

Pre-reading question:

- What are you doing now?

Read the puzzle. Match the numbers with the people. *SB Page 39*

Soha is not making a video call, but she is talking to her friend. Amira is not using any technology. Fatma has got long, curly hair. She is writing. Hala is using her mobile phone to send a text message. Leila is not using a mobile phone. She is using a tablet. Mona is smiling at her phone! She is taking a selfie.

Post-reading question:

- In which room are the girls sitting?

Pre-reading question:

- Do you like using new technology? Why/ Why not?

Read about Wael and Mazin. Who has got a laptop? *SB Page 40*



I love technology (1)! My favourite hobby is playing video games. I usually play them on my laptop, but sometimes I play them on my mobile phone.

Can you guess my favourite lesson at school? Yes, it's Computer Studies! At break and lunchtime (2), I stay (3) in the classroom and I look at video game websites on my phone.

Wael, age 12



I love nature (4). I like walking and watching the trees, animals, flowers and insects (5) all around us. I don't like being in the house; I like being in the garden and looking at the sky. At school, I always go outside at break. I go when it's very hot or cold!

I've got a mobile phone. I don't send text messages or make video calls on my phone, but I take photos of flowers.

Mazin, age 13

(1) التكنولوجيا
(2) وقت الغداء
(3) يبقى/يقيم
(4) الطبيعة
(5) حشرات

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمة التالية:

insect /ɪnsekt/

Post-reading questions:

1. What does Mazin like?
2. Is it good to have a hobby that you do all the time? Why/ Why not?

Life Skills

1. What do you think of Wael and Mazin?

   ....

2. Who do you think needs help?

   ....

3. What advice can you give him?

   ....

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

▶ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. I love .... I like watching trees, animals and flowers. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) technology b) games c) nature d) sport
2. Pupils should wear their school .... at school. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
   a) uniforms b) forms c) reforms d) performs
3. Never .... to your friend during lessons.
   a) talk b) take c) use d) make
4. We can use a .... if we don't know the meaning of a word.
   a) puzzle b) diary c) dictionary d) notebook
5. I'll go to the kitchen and .... a drink to my grandmother.
   a) do b) mime c) watch d) bring
6. The boy went on the bus and .... to his mother.
   a) waved b) stayed c) moved d) dropped
7. I like to write .... that pen. It's really good.
   a) in b) for c) to d) with
8. If I want to ask my teacher, I .... my hand up.
   a) fly b) wave c) put d) drop
9. My little sister always .... water on the floor.
   a) drops b) writes c) gives d) brings
10. **A:** How long did you .... in Alexandria? **B:** Two weeks.
    a) stay b) say c) leave d) visit
11. We usually have our sandwiches .... break.
    a) by b) at c) in d) with
12. It's usually .... in summer.
    a) dark b) cold c) sunny d) cool

Time to Practise

▶ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. My father is a firefighter. He always wears his .... at work. القليوبية ٢٠٢٠

a) rule **b)** uniform **c)** form **d)** picture

2. I always listen to songs .... my MP3 player.

a) in **b)** on **c)** by **d)** with

3. Our teacher always smiles .... us. He's friendly.

a) with **b)** of **c)** at **d)** about

4. I .... many hobbies on holidays.

a) bring **b)** take **c)** make **d)** do

5. I usually .... notes during the lesson.

a) take **b)** help **c)** do **d)** bring

6. I like doing .... They make me think.

a) toys **b)** bikes **c)** kites **d)** puzzles

7. Mum .... the best cakes.

a) designs **b)** takes **c)** makes **d)** does

8. It's her favourite programme .... now.

a) on **b)** in **c)** with **d)** by

9. I like playing video games on my ....

a) kite **b)** MP3 player **c)** laptop **d)** dictionary

10. Students should learn how to use their .... in English classes.

a) hobbies **b)** posters **c)** puzzles **d)** dictionaries

11. I use my phone .... send text messages to my friends.

a) to **b)** for **c)** by **d)** at

12. I always .... advice to my little brother. الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٣

a) get **b)** bring **c)** take **d)** give

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Language

The Present Continuous Tense زمن المضارع المستمر

Negative النفى

Subject	Negative	
I	am not	inf + ing
He / She / It	is not (isn't)	inf + ing
You / We / They	are not (aren't)	inf + ing

- I **am not** **playing** football.
- He **is not (isn't)** **reading** a book.
- They **are not (aren't)** **swimming**.

Question السؤال

Yes/No questions

Am / Is / Are + **subj.** الفاعل → inf. + ing ...?

- **A:** Are you **studying** French?
- **B:** Yes, I am. - **B:** No, I am not.

Wh- questions

Q. Word + كلمة الاستفهام am / is / are + **subj.** الفاعل → inf. + ing ...?

- **A:** What are you doing? - **B:** I'm helping my father.

Got it ?

Read and correct the underlined words:

1 **A:** You are taking a selfie? **B:** No, I am writing an email. (..............................)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (Are you) لأنها صيغة سؤال لوجود علامة استفهام.

2 Why is Sara cry? (..............................)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (crying) لأن is يتبعها فعل مضاف إليه (ing).

3 He doesn't sending a text message. (..............................)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (isn't) لأن الفعل sending آخره (ing).

Practise more

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... taking a photo? الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣
   a) She is b) Is she c) She has d) Has she
2. **A:** Is she watching TV? **B:** No, she .... الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
   a) is b) isn't c) does d) doesn't
3. She is not .... a video call, but she is talking to her friend. الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
   a) making b) makes c) make d) to make
4. Be quiet! Your little brother .... القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) sleeps b) sleep c) is sleeping d) has slept
5. Sally .... her homework at the moment. She is cooking. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٢
   a) doesn't do b) does c) is doing d) isn't doing
6. We .... watching TV, but we are making lunch.
   a) don't b) haven't c) aren't d) isn't
7. What is John .... at the moment? الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
   a) do b) doing c) does d) did
8. **A:** Are you wearing brown shoes? **B:** Yes, I .... المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) am b) is c) are d) was
9. **A:** Is Tamer working at the moment? **B:** No, he .... washing his car.
   a) doesn't b) does c) is d) isn't
10. What .... your friends doing at the moments?
   a) do b) have c) are d) is

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. He isn't <u>study</u> his lessons now. (..............................) الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
2. <u>Does</u> your brother sleeping now? (..............................) القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
3. <u>He is</u> writing emails at the moment? (..............................)
4. What games <u>do</u> you playing online? (..............................) قنا ٢٠٢٣
5. **A:** Are you eating? **B:** Yes, I <u>do</u>. (..............................)
6. What are the girls <u>does</u> now? (..............................) الجيزة ٢٠٢٣

D Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب
من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

1. Speaking

Ask and answer questions about your friend.

السؤال والإجابة عن صديقك.

Situation	ما يقال فى هذا الموقف	Response	جملة الرد

online

Are you sitting next to your best friend?
هل تجلسين بجوار صديقتك المفضلة؟

Yes, I am. نعم.

Is she wearing black shoes? هل هي ترتدي حذاء أسود؟

No, she isn't. لا.

What are your friends doing? ماذا يفعل أصدقاؤك؟

They are watching TV. إنهم يشاهدون التلفاز.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

Judy is talking to Leila on the phone.

Judy : Hi, Leila. Where are you?

Leila : Hi, Judy. (1).. .

Judy : The park! (2)..?

Leila : I'm sitting under a tree in the park. It's very sunny.

Judy : Are your brothers sitting, too?

Leila : (3).. . They are playing football.

Judy : (4)..?

Leila : No, my father isn't sitting with us. He's working today.

Judy : What is your mother doing?

Leila : (5).. .

2. Write it right

1. How to write about what your family are doing now.

كيفية الكتابة عما تفعله عائلتك الآن.

- My name's (الاسم).
- I live in (المكان).
- My father is (الوظيفة).
- I have got (العدد) brothers and (العدد) sisters.
- My mother is (ما تقوم به). My father is (ما يقوم به).

Writing tips

Try reading your paragraph out loud to make sure it makes sense.

- حاول قراءة فقرتك بصوت عال لتتأكد أن لها معنى.

Example

What your family are doing now

My name's Amal. I live in Cairo. My father is an engineer. My mother is a teacher. I have got two brothers and no sisters. I am in preparatory one. My brothers go to primary school. We are a happy family. All of us are busy now. My mother is in the kitchen. She is cooking dinner. She is a good cook. Her food is delicious. My father is watching TV. He's watching a football match at the moment. My brothers are playing video games. I am doing computer studies. It's my favourite subject. We are waiting for our dinner. We are very hungry now.

2. How to write about staying safe when you use technology.

كيفية الكتابة عن بقائك آمنًا عندما تستخدم التكنولوجيا.

Example

How to stay safe online

The internet is very important. We all use the internet every day. It is easy to use the internet. But when we are online, we need to be more careful. We need to follow some rules to stay safe. Keep your password secret. Don't tell anyone about it. Don't make friends with people you don't know. Don't tell people your personal information, like your telephone number. Don't send photos to people you don't know. Don't answer a phone call or video call from someone you don't know. If you are worried about something, tell your parents or your teacher.

1 Read the following, then answer the questions:

القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

I am Sameer and this is a picture of my classroom. We often use tablets in school. There are two laptop computers in the classroom, too. One laptop has got a mouse. I don't know why it's called a mouse. Do you know? And there's a printer, too. My friend Hady is printing his homework. I have got a mobile phone but it is in my bag. We don't use our phones in the classroom. Mr Hamdy has got a phone on his desk. He's charging his phone with a phone charger. And he's got a new MP3 player. It's small and brown. Can you see it?

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the best title for this text?

....

2. Do you think it is important to use computers at school? Why/ Why not?

....

3. What are the means of technology mentioned in the passage?

....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the ....
   a) MP3 player b) printer c) mobile d) charger
5. Hamdy is ....
   a) a teacher b) a student c) a classmate d) Hady's friend
6. You can listen to music using a/an ....
   a) printer b) MP3 player c) mouse d) picture

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I always eat salad .... lunchtime.
   a) on b) at c) of d) to
2. I like watching trees and birds. I like ....
   a) water b) hobbies c) sports d) nature
3. This .... gives me a lot of information about animals.
   a) screen b) website
   c) mouse d) charger
4. The teacher always .... us some advice at the end of the lesson.
   a) gives b) follows c) takes d) makes

5. Don't .... litter in the river. We drink from it.
a) follow b) drop c) take d) mime

6. At break, students shouldn't .... in the class.
a) use b) bring c) stay d) leave

7. It is always very .... in summer. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
a. hot b) cold c) rainy d) snowy

8. Manal's father is not .... today.
a) works b) working c) work d) worked

9. They aren't sleeping, but they .... their tablets.
a) use b) using c) are using d) aren't using

10. What's your mother ....?
a) doing b) do c) did d) does

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. No, they are watching TV. They're playing football. (....................)
2. What are you read online? (....................)
3. My dad is at home. He is working today. (....................)
4. Sally is playing chess online? (....................)

4 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

"What your family are doing now"

....
....
....
....
....
....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

1. Everyone should .... a hobby to do.
a) do b) have c) make d) give

2. Sally .... her tablet and sending photos to her friends.
a) uses b) using c) used d) is using

3. They .... taking selfies.
a) always have b) have always c) are always d) always are

STUDY Lessons 5 & 6

Watch a video



SB pages 41 - 43 | WB pages 99-101

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

boil (ed) (v)	يغلى	password (n)	كلمة المرور/السر
colourful (adj)	زاهى اللون/ملون	personal information	معلومات شخصية
instructions (n)	تعليمات/إرشادات	tea bag (n)	كيس شاى
kettle (n)	غلاية	telephone number	رقم التليفون

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

answer > a call	يرد على مكالمة	make > friends with	يكوِّن صداقة مع
come > home	يأتى إلى البيت	make > tea	يعمل شاى
keep > secret	يحافظ على سرية	say > hello	يقول أهلًا
look > interesting	يبدو شيقًا	stay > safe	يبقى آمنًا

Prepositions — حروف الجر

a cup of tea	فنجان شاى	go onto a website	يدخل على موقع إلكترونى
agree with	يتفق مع	take out	يخرج
ask for help	يطلب المساعدة	turn on	يشغل (جهاز)
example of	مثال لـ	worried about	قلق على

Check Point

Choose and complete: stay - to - colourful - for

1. Girls like to wear .... clothes.
2. I usually ask my teacher .... help .
3. It's important to .... safe online

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
drink	يشرب	drank	drunk
keep	يحافظ على	kept	kept

Words and Opposites
الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
agree	يوافق	disagree	لا يوافق
popular	محبوب/شائع	unpopular	غير محبوب
safe	آمن	dangerous	خطير
worried	قلق	calm	هادئ

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 stop + v + ing يتوقف عن فعل شيء

- Stop playing on your phone and listen to me.

2 Why don't you + inf. ....? لمَ لا.....؟ (تستخدم لتقديم الاقتراح).

- Why don't you use an MP3 player?

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائي للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Definitions
التعريفات

Word		Definition
password	كلمة السر	a word or numbers you use to go onto a website
secret	سر	something[1] you do not want to tell[2] people about

(1) شيء ما
(2) يخبر

Words and Synonyms
الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
agree	يوافق	accept	يقبل
popular	محبوب/ شائع	famous	مشهور

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
colour (n)	لون	-ful		تحول الاسم لصفة		colourful (adj)	ملون
person (n)	شخص	-al				personal (adj)	شخصي

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 5

Pre-reading question: - Are you good at using technology?

Read the instructions and put the pictures in the correct order. *SB page 41*



How to send a text message:

- First, tap the messages icon.
- Write your text message.
- Tap the name of the person.
- Then tap the SEND icon.

2. Complete the text:

How to make a video call:



- Turn your tablet on.
- Tap the name of the person.
- Say Hello!

Post-reading question: - How can you send an email?

Lesson 6

Work in pairs. Complete the table with this advice. Can you add any sentences? *SB page 42*

Stay safe when you use technology

- Keep[1] your password[2] secret[3].
- Make friends with people you don't know online.
- Tell people your personal information[4] (e.g. telephone number[5]).
- Send photos to people you don't know.
- Ask for help from a parent or teacher.
- Answer a phone call or video call from someone you don't know.
- Tell a parent or teacher if you are worried about something.



(1) حافظ على
(2) كلمة المرور
(3) سر
(4) معلومات شخصية
(5) رقم الهاتف

Do (✓)	Don't (x)
• Keep your password secret.	• Don't make friends with people you don't know online.
....	....
....	....

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

▶ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. It's important to stay .... online. بني سويف ٢٠٢٢
   a) safe b) worried c) angry d) save
2. "...................." is a word or numbers you use to go onto a website. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
   a) Keyword b) Crossword c) Password d) Secret
3. Write the .... for how to make a cup of tea. بور سعيد ٢٠٢٢
   a) information b) messages c) icons d) instructions
4. Don't .... a phone call from someone you don't know. الغربية ٢٠٢٢
   a) ask b) reply c) answer d) write
5. To make a video call, ... your tablet on.
   a) turn b) look c) come d) keep
6. We use the .... to make water hot. الفيوم ٢٠٢٢
   a) cattle b) kite c) can d) kettle
7. Please keep it .... I don't want anyone to know about my plan. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) secret b) secretary c) quite d) away
8. Don't tell anyone about your .... information on the internet. دمياط ٢٠٢٣
   a) personally b) personality c) personal d) person
9. Children shouldn't make friends .... people they don't know.
   a) for b) with c) at d) of
10. If you have a problem, ... for help from a parent or teacher.
    a) ask b) say c) stay d) keep
11. My mother is always worried .... me when I'm late outside.
    a) on b) at c) for d) about
12. We .... water when we want to make tea.
    a) stay b) say c) boil d) answer
13. Most children like to wear .... clothes.
    a) bad b) unpopular c) dangerous d) colourful

C Language

Imperative صيغة الأمر

Affirmative الإثبات

- تبدأ صيغة الأمر فى الإثبات بالفعل فى المصدر أو Always + inf. بدون الفاعل. ويمكن ذكر المخاطب.

- Go to the shop.
- Open the door, please. / Please, open the door.
- Always **follow** school rules.
- Nelly, tidy your room, please.

Negative النفى

- وتبدأ صيغة الأمر فى النفى بـ (Don't /Never + inf.) ثم الفعل فى المصدر بدون الفاعل. ويمكن ذكر المخاطب.

- Don't go to the shop.
- Don't open the door, please. / Please, don't open the door.
- Never **come** to school late.
- Don't speak loudly, Omar.

Got it ?

Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Following your school rules, Basmala. (..............................)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (Follow) لأنها صيغة أمر و هى تبدأ بالفعل فى المصدر.

2. Didn't talk during the lesson. (..............................)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (Don't) لأنها صيغة أمر منفى.

3. Ali, brings some water, please. (..............................)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (bring) لأن Ali هنا مخاطب، وبعدها فعل أمر يبدأ بالفعل فى المصدر.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... on your tablet to make a video call. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) Turns b) Turn c) Turning d) Turned
2. .... shout. My father is asleep. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) Don't b) Not c) Do d) Often
3. To send a text message, ... the SEND icon. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
   a) tap b) tapping c) tapped d) to tap
4. .... photos to people you don't know.
   a) Send b) Don't send c) Didn't send d) Sending
5. Lara, ... your password secret.
   a) kept b) keeping c) keep d) keeps
6. Use technology and .... safe online.
   a) to stay b) staying c) stayed d) stay
7. Don't .... a phone call from someone you don't know.
   a) answer b) answering c) answers d) answered
8. .... a few minutes preparing yourself for exercises. الغربية ٢٠٢٢
   a) Spends b) Spend c) Spending d) Spent
9. First, ... some water in a kettle.
   a) putting b) to putting c) to put d) put
10. .... write on your desk, keep it clean.
   a) Didn't b) Doesn't c) Never d) Can't

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Don't eating when you use a computer. (..............................) القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
2. Taking out the tea bag. (..............................) المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
3. Boils the water, Nada. (..............................) بور سعيد ٢٠٢٢
4. Tamer! Didn't leave your toys here. (..............................)
5. Make noise in the library. (..............................) القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
6. Don't been rude to other people. (..............................)

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Sherief is asking Lamiaa about Reem, Sara and Aya.

Sherief : What are Reem and Sara doing?
Lamiaa : (1).. .
Sherief : Again! They are always taking selfies. (2)..?
Lamiaa : Aya is listening to her MP3 player.
Sherief : Do you like taking selfies, Lamiaa?
Lamiaa : (3).. .
Sherief : (4)..?
Lamiaa : Because my phone camera isn't good.
Sherief : Can we take a selfie together with my phone?
Lamiaa : (5).. .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Please, ... the TV on to watch the new film.
   a) make b) keep c) turn d) stay
2. You should keep your .... secret. الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢
   a) sport b) food
   c) friends d) password
3. It is good to .... new friends.
   a) make b) do c) stay d) spend
4. Our English book .... interesting, so lots of people use it.
   a) takes b) makes c) looks d) asks
5. Stay safe when you use ....
   a) puzzle b) password c) technology d) secret
6. We use the kettle to .... water.
   a) keep b) stay c) look d) boil
7. Don't .... photos to people you don't know. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) talk b) write c) send d) click
8. He .... a story now. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) read b) reads c) has read d) is reading

9. Look! the car is .... very fast. البحيرة ٢٠٢٢

a) moves b) moving c) move d) moved

10. .... your hands before eating.

a) Wash b) Washing c) To wash d) Washed

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Do your parents sitting under the tree? (.......................................)
2. There are some juice in the bottle. (.......................................)
3. Don't to use your phone in class. (.......................................)
4. Sally, writes your name on your book. (.......................................)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on: القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

"How to stay safe online"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

1 When the mobile rings, I like to .... the call.

a) send b) write c) answer d) make

2 Stay safe .... you use technology.

a) when b) which c) how d) why

3 Toka, ... come to school late.

a) doesn't b) don't c) isn't d) can't

Review on Unit 4

Vocabulary

3D printer	طابعة ثلاثية الأبعاد
personal information	معلومات شخصية
phone charger	شاحن الهاتف
popular	محبوب/ شائع
click on the icon	ينقر على الأيقونة
instructions	تعليمات
school uniform	الزى المدرسى
keep ... secret	يحافظ على سرية
kettle	غلاية
send a text message	يرسل رسالة نصية
stay safe	ابق آمنا
take a selfie	يلتقط صورة شخصية
make a video call	يقوم بإجراء مكالمة فيديو
tap on the icon	يضغط على الأيقونة
mobile phone	تليفون محمول
mouse	فأرة الكمبيوتر
technology	التكنولوجيا
MP3 player	مشغل إم بى ثرى
nature	الطبيعة
whiteboard	السبورة البيضاء
password	كلمة المرور/ السر
write an email	يكتب رسالة بريد إلكترونى

Language

There is/There are:

Affirmative
- There is a printer.
- There are some boys here.

Negative
- There isn't a charger.
- There aren't any tablets.

Questions
- Is there an MP3 player?
- Are there any mobile phones?

The present continuous:

Affirmative
- She is writing an email now.
- I'm doing my homework.

Negative
- They aren't studying.
- I'm not eating now.

Questions
- What are you doing now?
- Is Ali watching TV now?

Imperative:
- Go to the shop.
- Huda, boil that water.

Negative
- Don't boil that water, Huda.
- Please, don't open the door.

Skills

Ask and answer questions about your friend:

- **A:** Are you sitting next to your best friend?
  - **B:** Yes, I am.
- **A:** Is she writing with a pen or pencil?
  - **B:** She is writing with a pencil.
- **A:** What are they doing?
  - **B:** They are watching TV.

Question Bank

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 4

24

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1. Rana likes ....
   a) biology b) technology c) science d) maths
2. She likes playing ....
   a) video games b) basketball c) tennis d) football
3. Rana plays on her ....
   a) laptop b) tablet c) TV d) computer
4. Her favourite subject is ....
   a) English b) maths c) social studies d) computer studies.

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Salwa is telling Nada that she is going to the library. الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢

Nada : Hello, Salwa. Where are you going?
Salwa : Hello, Nada. (1).. .
Nada : (2).. ?
Salwa : I'm going to the library to read a story. What about you?
Nada : (3).. .
Salwa : Why are you going to the club?
Nada : I'm going to the club to play basketball.
Salwa : (4).. ?
Nada : Yes, I'm in the school basketball team. Do you want to come with me?
Salwa : (5).. .

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions: القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

I love technology. It's very useful for me. Technology helps us to do our work. We use it every day. We can send messages, do researches and play games. But to stay safe online, you have to follow some important instructions. First, keep your password secret. You shouldn't tell people your personal information (e.g., telephone number). Don't make friends with people you don't know online.

Don't send photos to people you don't know. Don't answer a phone call or video call from someone you don't know. If you are worried about something, tell a ***parent*** or a teacher.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What should you do when you are in trouble?

....

2. What is the main idea of the passage?

....

3. Why do you think you have to follow these rules when you are online?

....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. You should keep your .... secret.

a) text b) email c) poster d) password

5. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ....

a) telephone b) instructions
c) technology d) call

6. The underlined word "***parent***" means ....

a) mum or dad b) uncle
c) teacher d) mum's sister

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I will send you a/an .... message soon. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

a) text b) test c) photo d) icon

2. A .... is a small computer that you carry around. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢

a) mouse b) mobile c) laptop d) charger

3. .... the icon on your mobile phone. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣

a) Click b) Tap c) Look d) Make

4. Young people like to .... a selfie with their smart phones.

a) print b) keep c) take d) make

5. My little brother loves ...., so he spends a lot of time in the garden.

a) nature b) future c) furniture d) culture

6. I can boil water in the .... to make tea.

a) laptop b) kettle c) charger d) radio

7. The opposite of the word "safe" is ".....................". القليوبية ٢٠٢٢

a) false b) different c) dangerous d) depressed

8. She would like .... video games.

a) play b) to play c) playing d) played

9. Ahmed is .... a text message to his father. المنيا ٢٠٢٣

a) send B) sends c) sent d) sending

10. .... too much TV!

a) Watch b) Not watch c) Watching d) Don't watch

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. First, putting some water in a kettle. (..............................) القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
2. Ali, didn't go out. It's raining outside. (..............................)
3. What she is cooking now? (..............................)
4. Can I have any water? (..............................) الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on: المنوفية ٢٠٢٣

"Technology makes our life easy"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Solve more exams	Well done!

Monthly Models on Units 3&4

هذه النماذج ستساعدك فى التدرب على الاختبارات الشهرية.

November Model 1

15

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Ali is asking Amr about his favourite sports star.

Ali : Who is your favourite sports star?

Amr : (1) ....

Ali : What sport does Mohamed Salah play?

Amr : (2) ....

Ali : (3) .... ?

Amr : He plays for Liverpool Team.

Ali : (4) .... ?

Amr : Yes, he scores a lot of goals.

Ali : Do you want to be like him?

Amr : (5) ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A plane is very .... It can go at 900 km/h.
   a) tall b) long c) weak d) fast
2. Alice is the main .... of the story.
   a) crater b) character c) adventure d) book
3. My cousin's hair is not straight. It is ....
   a) blond b) short c) long d) curly
4. You can .... your mobile using a phone charger.
   a) charge b) change c) hear d) choose
5. You must keep your password ....
   a) easy b) famous c) secret d) known
6. You can .... a video call to your brother in Dubai.
   a) do b) make c) send d) write

7. His father has got a white long .... on his face.

a) bread	b) board	c) beard	d) broad

8. .... there a mouse next to the laptop?

a) Is	b) Has	c) Are	d) Does

9. Hamza .... got curly hair.

a) is	b) have	c) was	d) has

10. At the moment, students .... to a story.

a) listened	b) are listening	c) listens	d) listen

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. My brother is read a book at the moment. (..............................)
2. I was sitting in a cafe now. (..............................)
3. Didn't talk to strangers. (..............................)
4. **A:** Are there a tablet in your classroom? **B:** Yes, there is. (..............................)
5. What is Adel do at the moment? (..............................)

Part 2 **Final Revision**





قم بمراجعة أهم المفردات والقواعد اللغوية والمهارات وحل المزيد من الأسئلة الخاصة بالوحدتين الثالثة والرابعة عن طريق الذهاب لجزء المراجعة الشهرية بملحق التقويم.

November Model 2

15

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I need paper for the ....
   a) camera b) screen c) printer d) mouse
2. The lion is a .... animal.
   a) kind b) scary c) friendly d) worry
3. My little daughter has got a big ....
   a) smell b) smile c) small d) smelt
4. My grandfather has got a big .... on his mouth.
   a) beard b) hair c) moustache d) eye
5. It's important to stay .... online.
   a) safe b) worried c) angry d) colourful
6. You can .... a selfie on your mobile.
   a) help b) make c) run d) take
7. .... video games is my favourite hobby.
   a) Giving b) Playing c) Doing d) Making
8. .... throw rubbish in the street.
   a) Never b) Doesn't c) Didn't d) Aren't
9. **A:** Can you phone me at 6:00 pm? **B:** No, I ....
   a) can b) doesn't c) can't d) didn't
10. My best friend .... short, dark hair.
    a) has got b) have got c) got d) is

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Ali have got lots of books. (..............................)
2. Ahmed and I has got curly hair. (..............................)
3. Ola is write a paragraph at the moment. (..............................)
4. There isn't some cheese. (..............................)
5. Where can we meeting today? (..............................)

November Model 3

21

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Ahmed is asking Amir about using technology in his school.

Ahmed : Do you use technology at your school?

Amir : (1).. . We use tablets.

Ahmed : Really! Can you use a tablet?

Amir : (2).. .

Ahmed : (3)..?

Amir : We use tablets in all subjects.

Ahmed : (4)..?

Amir : Yes, my classroom has got a smart board.

Ahmed : Do you use mobile phones at class?

Amir : (5).. . We can't use them.

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Mohamed Salah is my favourite sports star. He plays football for a very good team in Europe. He plays for Egypt, too. He is very good at scoring goals. He is a fast runner and a clever footballer.

Mohamed Salah has a big smile. He is quite short for a footballer. He is 1.75 metres tall. Mohamed Salah has got dark, curly hair and a beard. He is a kind person. He gives money to build schools and hospitals in Egypt. He also gives money to poor people. He is very friendly and he always talks to his fans. He hasn't got much time for hobbies, but when he is at home, he enjoys playing video games and watching films.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What's the best title for the passage?

....

2. Who does Salah talk to?

....

3. Do you think Salah is a great sports star?

....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Mohamed Salah gives money to .... people.

   a) poor b) rich
   c) clean d) happy

5. "***Fast***" is the opposite of ....

   a) short b) weak
   c) slow d) friendly

6. Mohamed Salah has got .... hair.

   a) curly b) white
   c) straight d) blond

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Keeps your password secret. (....................................)
2. There aren't some books. (....................................)
3. Does she like watch TV? (....................................)
4. Has your father get a beard? (....................................)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

المنوفية ٢٠٢٣

"Your favourite sports star"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



Unit 5

Holidays

Objectives of the unit

Reading	A description of a holiday; an advertisement for learning English
Writing	An advertisement for a holiday; an email about a holiday
Listening	A conversation about a holiday; a discussion about a day out
Speaking	Describing a place; talking about a holiday; responding to news
Language	The past simple
Values	Respect
Issues	Environmental awareness

Tapescripts

WB تشير لأسئلة كتاب التدريبات SB تشير لأسئلة كتاب الطالب

STUDY

Watch a video

Lessons 1 & 2



SB pages 44 - 47 | WB pages 102 & 103

A Vocabulary

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

bat (n)	خفاش	make a sandcastle	يصنع قلعة رملية
cave (n)	كهف	ride a bike	يركب دراجة
climb a mountain	يتسلق جبلًا	river (n)	نهر
delicious (adj)	لذيذ	see a camel	يرى جملًا
desert (n)	صحراء	sleep in a tent	ينام فى خيمة
forest (n)	غابة	swim in the lake	يسبح فى البحيرة
have a picnic	يقوم بنزهة خلوية	visit a family	يزور أسرة
jungle (n)	أدغال/غابة كثيفة الأشجار	waterfall (n)	شلال

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

dark (adj)	مظلم	museum (n)	متحف
echo (n)	صدى الصوت	quiz (n)	اختبار مصغر
fantastic (adj)	رائع	turn (n)	دور
hotel (n)	فندق	warm (adj)	دافئ
map (n)	خريطة	weather (n)	طقس

Prepositions — حروف الجر

a place with	مكان به	on the beach	على الشاطئ/البلاج
call out	ينادى	ride on a camel	يركب جملًا
frightened of	خائف من	search for	يبحث عن
in the rocks	فى الصخور	think of	يفكر فى

Check Point

Choose and complete: with – warm – hotel – mountains

1. The weather is .... today.
2. Climbing .... is a dangerous sport.
3. The beach is a place .... a lot of sand and water .

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية وحروف الجر.

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

(n) = noun | (adj) = adjective | (prep) = preposition
(v) = verb | (adv) = adverb | (conj) = conjunction

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.	Present		Past simple	P.P.
eat	يأكل	ate	eaten	ride	يركب	rode	ridden
have/has	يملك/لديه	had	had	see	يرى	saw	seen
hear	يسمع	heard	heard	speak	يتحدث	spoke	spoken

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
get into/in	يدخل فى	go out of	يخرج من
quiet	هادئ	noisy	صاخب

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 **called** التى تُسمى/ الذى يُسمى
is called يُسمى

- We visited a city called Marrakesh.
- My friend is called Mohammed.

2 **would ('d) like to + inf.** يود أن

- Where would you like to **go**?
- I'd like to **go** to the beach.

3 **when** عندما (للوقت)

- When I was eight, I went to Siwa.

4 **where** حيث (للمكان)

- A forest is a place where there are lots of trees.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I'd like .... Al Azhar Park in Cairo.
   a) visit b) visiting c) to visit d) to visiting
2. My teacher .... Mohammed is from Giza.
   a) calling b) called c) is called d) calls
3. We will visit the village .... my grandfather was born.
   a) which b) that c) where d) when

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ

Countries/ Cities/ Places
بلاد/ مدن/ أماكن

Al Azhar Park	حديقة الأزهر	Marrakesh	مدينة مراكش (بالمغرب)
Djara cave	كهف الجارة	Morocco	دولة المغرب
Egypt	مصر	Siwa	واحة سيوة
Hurghada	مدينة الغردقة	the Sahara Desert	الصحراء الكبرى

Words and Synonyms
الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
get into	يدخل فى	enter	يدخل
delicious	لذيذ	tasty	لذيذ
fantastic	مدهش	amazing	مدهش

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
frighten (v)	يخيف	-ed			تحول الفعل لصفة	frightened (adj)	خائف

Similar spelling - Different meaning

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى.

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهة
desert	صحراء	dessert	حلوى
quiet	هادئ	quite	إلى حد ما
hear	يسمع	here	هنا
bat	خفاش	boat	قارب

B. Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 1

Pre-listening question:

- A place with a lot of sand but no water. What is it?

Listen to Taha and his sister playing a game. Can you guess the places?

SB page 45

Taha Guess[1] where I am, Sara. I'm in a place where there are a lot of trees.

Sara Are there monkeys in the trees?

Taha No. It's very dark and quiet.

Sara Are you in a forest[2]?

Taha Yes, I am!

Sara My turn! I'm in a place with a lot of sand[3].

Taha I know! You're in the desert[4].

Sara No, I'm not. There isn't any water in the desert. There's a lot of water in my place.

Taha You're on the beach[5]!

Sara That's right.

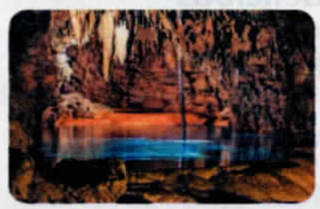
Taha Now, I'm in a dark place. When I speak, I can hear my words again and again. Listen. (calls out with echo) Hello! (echo comes twice)

Sara That's easy. You're in a cave[6]! Can you see any bats[7]?

Taha No, I can't. It's very dark in here!







(1) يخمن
(2) غابة / أدغال
(3) رمال
(4) الصحراء
(5) الشاطئ
(6) كهف
(7) خفافيش

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

desert /dezə^{r}t/ cave /keɪv/ echo /ekoʊ/

Post-listening question:

- Have you ever been in a cave? If yes, how did you feel?

Pre-reading question:

- How was your last summer holiday?

Look and read. Match the photos with the descriptions: *SB page 46*

My holiday photos

1. ☐ Last summer, when the weather was hot, we went to the beach near my home in Hurghada. Mariam made this sandcastle (1). There was a cave in the rocks. But Mariam didn't want to go into the cave (2) because she was frightened!



(1) يصنع قلعة رملية
(2) يدخل الكهف
(3) يقوم بنزهة خلوية
(4) يتسلق جبلًا
(5) ينام في خيمة

2. ☐ In October, we visited my uncle, aunt and cousins in Cairo. We had a picnic (3) in Al Azhar Park. We ate delicious food. Then we played games and Ali rode his bike.



3. ☐ When I was eight, we went to Siwa. We swam in the lake, and climbed the mountain (4). We saw camels and slept in a tent (5) in the desert. It was my favourite holiday!



Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

sandcastle /ˈsændˌkɑːsəl/
frightened /fraɪtənd/
delicious /dɪlɪʃəs/

Post-reading questions:

1. When did they visit their uncle?
2. What activities did they do at Siwa?

Pre-reading question:

- Where did you go last summer?

Complete the sentences with the past simple form of the verbs in brackets.

WB page 103



Hi Eman,

Last summer, my family **had** a fantastic holiday in Morocco. We **visited** a big beach and then we **slept** in a nice hotel. We **didn't swim** in the sea. It **wasn't** very warm! But I **rode** on a camel. That **was** fun. We **visited** a city called Marrakesh, too, and we **went** to a museum. We also **ate** some delicious food.

Write soon.

Hana

Post-reading question:

- What's this email about?

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

Morocco /məˈrɒkəʊ/

Marrakesh /məˈrækɛʃ/

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The .... is very high and there's lots of water in it. بور سعيد ٢٠٢٢

   a) beach b) cave c) lake d) waterfall

2. "..................." is a place inside the mountain. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

   a) Cave b) River c) Lake d) Waterfall

3. The .... is my favourite place to go in summer to swim. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

   a) cave b) mountain c) beach d) desert

4. Children like to build .... on the beach. دمياط ٢٠٢٣

   a) mountains b) lakes c) waterfalls d) sandcastles

5. A .... is a tropical forest with lots of trees and plants. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣

   a) desert b) waterfall c) cave d) jungle

6. People don't like to go .... caves because they are dark.

   a) out of b) by c) for d) into

7. We usually .... a picnic at the weekend.

   a) swim b) find c) have d) make

8. Most children like playing .... the beach.

   a) of b) for c) on d) to

9. Last summer, the .... was very hot.

   a) sandcastle b) weather c) picnic d) game

10. Mariam didn't want to go into the cave because she was ....! القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

    a) frightened b) delicious c) dark d) quiet

11. We sleep in tents when we go to the ....

    a) villa b) hotel c) flat d) desert

12. We had an English .... every Sunday, so I have to study hard every day.

    a) quiz b) camp c) taste d) ride

13. Boys like to .... their bikes on holidays.

    a) ride b) build c) see d) make

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My mother makes .... food. We all like it. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣

   a) bad **b)** delicious **c)** unknown **d)** sad

2. When we went camping, my brother .... a very high mountain. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢

   a) climbed **b)** chopped **c)** rode **d)** bought

3. We went camping in the desert and slept in a .... there. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣

   a) tent **b)** lake **c)** river **d)** kitchen

4. There are a lot of trees in the .... الشرقية ٢٠٢٢

   a) jug **b)** sky **c)** jungle **d)** weather

5. There isn't any water in the ....

   a) river **b)** desert **c)** lake **d)** sea

6. Our garden is a good place .... a lot of trees.

   a) with **b)** for **c)** by **d)** to

7. A .... is a small animal like a mouse with wings that flies around at night.

   a) boat **b)** bat **c)** bait **d)** bite

8. It's very .... and quiet in the forest. I can't see anything.

   a) tasty **b)** delicious **c)** safe **d)** dark

9. I saw some boys swimming in the ....

   a) mountain **b)** forest **c)** lake **d)** desert

10. Many people like to .... on camels.

    a) ride **b)** drive **c)** climb **d)** swim

11. It was my favourite holiday! It was ....

    a) dark **b)** fantastic **c)** terrible **d)** bad

12. I'm trying to find the park on the ....

    a) picnic **b)** map **c)** desert **d)** cave

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Language

The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضى البسيط

Usage الاستخدام

- We use the past simple tense to talk about actions that started and ended in the past.

- نستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط لنتحدث عن فعل حدث فى الماضى وانتهى أو حدثين متتابعين فى الماضى.

- I visited my uncle yesterday.

1 Verb "to be":

Affirmative الإثبات

Subject	Verb	Complement
I / He / She / It	was	frightened. / hungry. / a nurse. / big.
We / You / They	were	early. / at school. / quiet.

Negative النفى

Subject	Verb	Complement
I / He / She / It	wasn't	sad. / thirsty. / a teacher. / small.
We / You / They	weren't	late. / at home. / noisy.

wasn't = was not

weren't = were not

Yes/No Questions: السؤال بمعنى هل:

+ **Affirmative**	They were happy.	She was frightened.
? **Question**	Were they happy?	Was she frightened?

Got it ?

Read and correct the underlined words:

1. There are a lot of people on the beach last holiday. (.......................)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (were) لوجود (last) وهى تدل على الماضى.

2. Ali didn't at the park last Monday. (.......................)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (wasn't) لأنه لا يوجد فعل فى المصدر.

2 Regular & Irregular verbs:

Affirmative الإثبات

Subject + التصريف الثانى للفعل

- I arrived late for school.

لاحظ تنقسم الأفعال إلى قسمين:

1 Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

- تتكون بإضافة (d/ ed/ ied) للمصدر:

live ►	lived
visit ►	visited
study ►	studied

2 Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

- يتغير فيها شكل الفعل وليس لها قاعدة محددة:

eat ►	ate
buy ►	bought
take ►	took

Key words الكلمات الدالة

- فى الماضى in the past - منذ ... ago - الماضى ... last - أمس (yesterday)

in + سنة فى الماضى (in 2010)

- We **visited** Luxor 2 years ago. - I **bought** this car in 2015.

Negative النفى

- نضع (didn't) بين الفاعل والمصدر.

Subject ► did not (didn't) + **inf.** + ...

- You didn't **buy** a new notebook.

Got it ?

Read and correct the underlined words:

1 She don't go to school yesterday. (..........................)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (didn't) لوجود كلمة (yesterday) الدالة على الماضى البسيط.

2 I watched a scary movie next weekend. (..........................)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (last) لأن فعل الجملة (watched) فى الماضى.

3 Salma didn't visited her aunt last Friday. (..........................)

- الاجابة الصحيحة (visit) لأن (didn't) يتبعها مصدر الفعل.

Practise more

PRACTICE Language Exercises

Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I .... to Aswan last winter. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

a) went b) go c) goes d) going

2. .... your friends ready for the exam last week? الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣

a) Do b) Did c) Does d) Were

3. Yesterday, we didn't .... our lessons. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣

a) studied b) study c) studying d) studies

4. Mona .... to school yesterday because she was ill. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٢

a) not come b) doesn't come c) don't come d) didn't come

5. We camped in the forest and .... in a tent. كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢

a) sleep b) sleeps c) slept d) sleeping

6. When I .... eight, we went to Siwa.

a) was b) am c) is d) are

7. We .... swim in the sea. It wasn't very warm.

a) aren't b) weren't c) didn't d) don't

8. Sally .... happy at the party yesterday.

a) has b) is c) was d) were

9. My grandmother .... a nurse. She was a doctor.

a) wasn't b) didn't c) isn't d) hasn't

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. He <u>visit</u> his friends yesterday. (..............................) بور سعيد ٢٠٢٢
2. Suzy <u>doesn't</u> like swimming when she was young. (..............................) القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
3. They <u>travelled</u> by car. They walked. (..............................) القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
4. I rode on a camel. That <u>is</u> fun. (..............................) الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
5. Rana and Mayada <u>didn't</u> at school yesterday. (..............................)
6. They didn't <u>climbed</u> the tree. (..............................)

Time to Practise

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Last week, we .... them some presents. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
   a) give b) gives c) gave d) giving
2. He didn't .... the prize last week.
   a) win b) won c) winning d) wins
3. We .... Port Said last year. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) visit b) visited c) visiting d) visits
4. He .... at home last week. الغربية ٢٠٢٢
   a) were b) had c) was d) is
5. She .... in Alexandria when she was a little girl. كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢
   a) lives b) lived c) living d) is living
6. Last summer, the weather .... hot.
   a) was b) were c) is d) are
7. My family .... a fantastic holiday in Morocco last summer.
   a) are having b) having c) have d) had
8. I .... Pizza for dinner last night. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) eat b) eating c) ate d) eaten
9. We .... in the sea because it was too cold.
   a) didn't swim b) swam c) don't swim d) swim

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. They <u>study</u> for two hours last night. (....................................) الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢
2. They <u>don't</u> visit their uncle a week ago. (....................................) القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
3. Ali <u>didn't</u> at school yesterday. (....................................) الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
4. We went to the theatre <u>next</u> week. (....................................) الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢
5. <u>Were</u> you wear your jacket last night? (....................................) الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
6. We played games and <u>rides</u> bikes. (....................................) المنوفية ٢٠٢٣

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

D Skills

Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

How to write about your last weekend. كيف تكتب عن عطلتك الأسبوعية الماضية.

- Last weekend, I went to (المكان).
- I went with (الشخص / الأشخاص).
- We went by (الوسيلة).
- We (الأنشطة التى قمتم بها).
- We didn't (الأنشطة التى لم نقم بها).
- It was a fantastic holiday.

Writing tips

Review your paragraph for spelling and grammar mistakes.

راجع الأخطاء الإملائية وأخطاء القواعد فى فقرتك.

Example

Your last holiday

I like travelling very much. I visited many places around Egypt. Last holiday, I went to Hurghada. It's a beautiful city by the beach. There's a lot to do and see there. I went with my family. We went by bus. It is a beautiful place. We did many activities there. We swam in the sea and made sandcastles. We didn't see camels there. We ate delicious food, then we played games. My brother rode his bike. We left the place late at night. We enjoyed our time very much. It was a fantastic holiday.

Check Point

Write a paragraph about:

"Last weekend"

Last weekend, I went to ....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

TEST YOURSELF

Take a Test

Unit 5 Lessons (1 & 2)

17

1 **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:** نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1. When did Ragab travel to Aswan?
   - **a)** Last week. **b)** Last month.
   - **c)** Last winter. **d)** Last summer.
2. Who did Ragab travel with?
   - **a)** His friends. **b)** His class.
   - **c)** His relatives. **d)** His family.
3. How did Ragab travel?
   - **a)** By train. **b)** By bus.
   - **c)** By car. **d)** By plane.
4. What did Ragab buy from shops?
   - **a)** Tickets. **b)** Souvenirs.
   - **c)** Food. **d)** Fruit.

2 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. I can hear my words again and again inside a ....
   - **a)** river **b)** lake **c)** forest **d)** cave
2. Can you sleep in a .... in the desert? القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   - **a)** villa **b)** hotel **c)** flat **d)** tent
3. I .... on a camel in the forest when we had a picnic there.
   - **a)** drove **b)** rode **c)** went **d)** flew
4. I can't climb this .... It's very high. الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
   - **a)** forest **b)** mountain **c)** street **d)** jungle
5. You can enjoy sitting on the .... by the sea. كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٠
   - **a)** jungle **b)** beach **c)** mountain **d)** river
6. There's a lot of .... in the desert. كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٠
   - **a)** sand **b)** castles **c)** water **d)** plants
7. A .... is a place where water falls from a high place. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٢
   - **a)** waterwheel **b)** waterfall **c)** lake **d)** sea

8. She didn't .... to the beach yesterday. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣

a) goes b) went c) gone d) go

9. .... you and your friends worried before the last exam?

a) Was b) Are c) Were d) Did

10. When we arrived, it .... very windy. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣

a) is b) was c) be d) were

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Mona went to the zoo next week. (..............................) كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٠
2. Sara doesn't buy a camera yesterday. (..............................)
3. When I am eight, I went to London. (..............................)
4. I eat fish for lunch yesterday. (..............................) الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on: القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

"A trip you made"

....

....

....

....

....

....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

1. When I speak, I can hear my words again and again. It's a/an ....

a) cave b) echo c) mountain d) jungle

2. It's not good to .... your friends loudly in the street.

a) call out b) search for c) think of d) swim in

3. My uncle .... Nabil is a doctor.

a) calls b) calling c) called d) is called

STUDY Lessons 3 & 4

Watch a video



SB pages 48 - 50 | WB pages 104 & 105

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

camp (ed) (v)	يعسكر/يخيم	holiday flat (n)	شقة العطلة
castle (n)	قلعة	language school (n)	مدرسة لغات
climb up (ed) (v)	يصعد	student (n)	طالب
exciting (adj)	مثير	souvenir (n)	هدية تذكارية
holiday courses (n)	دورات فى فترة الإجازة	view (n)	منظر طبيعى

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

dolphin (n)	دولفين	flag (n)	علَم
enjoy (ed) (v)	يستمتع بـ	wonderful (adj)	رائع

Check Point

Choose and complete: wonderful – castle – souvenirs – student

1. I visited the .... It is very ancient.
2. We spent a .... time in Alexandria last summer.
3. I bought some .... from Khan El-Khalili.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions التعبيرات اللغوية

do >	a project	يقوم بعمل مشروع	make >	an advertisement	يقوم بعمل إعلان
	activities	يقوم بأنشطة		a list	يقوم بعمل قائمة
have >	a holiday/time	يقضى إجازة/وقتا	ride >	a horse	يركب حصانا

Prepositions
حروف الجر

advertisement for	إعلان لـ	for a holiday	لقضاء عطلة
a ride on	رحلة على	get to	يصل إلى
by the lake/beach	بجوار البحيرة/الشاطئ	go on holiday	يذهب في إجازة
find out	يكتشف	in Arabic	باللغة العربية

Check Point

Choose and complete: do – by – ride – for

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

1. We can .... many activities in summer.
2. I read an advertisement .... a good job.
3. My father bought a new flat .... the beach.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs
تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
learn	يتعلم	learnt	learnt
show	يعرض/ يبين	showed	shown

Words and Opposites
الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
friendly	ودود	unfriendly	غير ودود
stay	يقيم	leave	يترك/يغادر
wonderful	رائع	terrible	فظيع/سيئ جدًا

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

Subject + first/last + past simple أول/آخر مرة ...

- When I first **came** to the language school, I was not very good at English.
- I last **saw** my uncle was three days ago.

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ

Definitions التعريفات

camp	يخيم/يعسكر	sleep for a time in a tent[1]
castle	قلعة	a big, strong building[2] from the past
dolphin	دولفين	a friendly sea animal
holiday flat	شقة العطلة	a place to stay for a holiday
souvenir	هدية تذكارية	something you buy to remember[3] a holiday
view	منظر طبيعى	what you can see from a place

(1) خيمة
(2) مبنى
(3) يتذكر

Places أماكن

England	إنجلترا	London	لندن
France	فرنسا	the Cairo Tower	برج القاهرة
Germany	ألمانيا	the London Eye	عجلة لندن (معلم سياحى)
Jordan	الأردن	Windsor Castle	قلعة وندسور

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
interesting	شيق	exciting	مثير
wonderful	رائع	amazing/fantastic	مذهل/رائع

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
advertise (v)	يعلن	-ment		تحول الفعل لاسم		advertisement (n)	إعلان
wonder (v)	يتعجب	-ful		تحول الفعل لصفة		wonderful (adj)	رائع

Similar spelling - Different meaning

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهة
camp	معسكر	comp	مشط
view	منظر طبيعى	review	مقال نقدى
flat	شقة	flag	علم

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى.

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 3

Pre-listening question:

- Where did you go last holiday?

Listen and check your answers to Exercise 1.

SB page 48

Hatem Hi, Yunis! How was your holiday [1]?

Yunis Hi, Hatem! It was great, thanks!

Hatem Where did you go?

Yunis I went to Jordan [2] by plane.

Hatem Wow! Did you visit your family there?

Yunis No, we stayed in a holiday flat [3] by the beach. We had a wonderful view [4] from the windows. Every morning, I saw dolphins [5] in the sea.

Hatem Did you swim in the sea?

Yunis Yes, we did. We swam every day! We used a map and read a book about Jordan, and we visited a lot of famous places. We went to this old castle [6]. Look, here's a picture of it on my phone.

Hatem How did you get to the castle?

Yunis We climbed up the mountain!

Hatem Did you buy any souvenirs?

Yunis Yes, I did. I bought this small souvenir [7] for you.

Hatem Oh, how interesting! Egypt's flag [8] is also red, white and black. Jordan's flag has another colour–green, too. Thanks, Yunis!

(1) إجازة/عطلة
(2) الأردن
(3) شقة العطلة
(4) منظر
(5) دولفين
(6) قلعة
(7) هدية تذكارية
(8) علم





Post-listening question:

- Where would you like to go next holiday?

Note:
تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:
castle /kɑ:səl/ souvenir /su:vənɪəʳ/

Pre-reading question:

- What activities do you do on holiday?

Read the text quickly and answer the questions in pairs. *SB page 50*

Learn English in London!

- (1) دورات تدريبية
- (2) مدرسة لغات
- (3) قلعة وندسور
- (4) ملكة
- (5) عجلة لندن
- (6) يستمتع بـ



- Our students come from all around the world to study and learn in this exciting city.
- Holiday courses[1] are for one, two or three weeks.



I had a wonderful time at the language school[2]! I was there for two weeks. It was nice to meet students from different countries.

My favourite place was Windsor Castle[3]. We went there by train. We walked all around the castle, but we did not see the Queen[4]!



Mona, Egypt



I learnt English and had a really great holiday at the same time! London's shops are fantastic. I bought a lot of souvenirs. My favourite activity was a ride on the London Eye[5], because there was a beautiful view of the city from the top.



Laura, France



When I first came to the language school, I was not very good at English. But the teachers helped me a lot. The lessons were fun, and for homework we did interesting projects. I enjoyed[6] speaking English!



Jurgen, Germany



Post-reading questions:

1. Why do you think Mona didn't see the Queen?
2. Why did Laura like the ride on the London Eye?
3. How were Jurgen's lessons?

Complete the email with the past simple form of the verbs in brackets.

WB page 105

Hi Ali,

Last summer, I **travelled** to Egypt because I wanted to learn Arabic. I **went** to a language school in Cairo. I **had** a wonderful time. I **was** there for two weeks. The people in Cairo **were** very friendly. Now, I have many new friends.

When I first went to the language school, I **wasn't** very good at Arabic. But the teachers **helped** me, and the lessons **were** fun. Now, I can talk to my new friends in Arabic!

Cairo's shops are fantastic. I **bought** lots of souvenirs. My favourite place was the Cairo Tower. I **enjoyed** the view of the city from the top. What did you do last summer?

Write soon and tell me.
Andy, England

Project

- Work in groups. Find out which holiday activities people can do in Egypt. Make a list.

قم بالعمل فى مجموعة. قم باكتشاف أنشطة الإجازة التى يمكن للناس ممارستها فى مصر. قم بعمل قائمة.

- Work in pairs. Make an advertisement for a holiday in Egypt.

قم بالعمل الثنائى. قم بعمل إعلان عن إجازة فى مصر.

1. Choose one activity you can do in Egypt. اختر نشاطًا تستطيع فعله فى مصر.
2. Design and write an online advertisement and add pictures.

   صمم واكتب إعلانًا وصورًا عبر الإنترنت.
3. Show your advertisement to the class and talk about it.

   اعرض إعلانك على الفصل وتحدث عنه.

PRACTICE Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There was a beautiful .... of the river from the top. قنا ٢٠٢٣

a) view **b)** review **c)** preview **d)** viewing

2. I bought many .... for my friends from Paris. دمياط ٢٠٢٣

a) souvenirs **b)** caves **c)** menu **d)** hobbies

3. When we went camping, my brother .... up a very high mountain. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢

a) bought **b)** chopped **c)** rode **d)** climbed

4. A dolphin is a friendly .... animal. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

a) wild **b)** land **c)** sea **d)** plant

5. I .... a horse in the forest when we had a picnic there. الفيوم ٢٠٢٢

a) drove **b)** rode **c)** went **d)** flew

6. Children like .... because they can play and enjoy themselves.

a) holidays **b)** courses **c)** advertisements **d)** flats

7. We went to Jordan and .... in a nice hotel.

a) lived **b)** enjoyed **c)** left **d)** stayed

8. Tourists like to visit .... places in a country.

a) unfriendly **b)** famous **c)** bad **d)** boring

9. We visited our uncle who lives .... the beach in Alexandria.

a) to **b)** for **c)** by **d)** of

10. Our new flat is .... It's cool.

a) wonderful **b)** boring **c)** bad **d)** ugly

11. When we went to Jordan, we took a .... to know every place there.

a) course **b)** flat **c)** flag **d)** map

12. We stay in a holiday .... when we travel to Hurghada.

a) activity **b)** flat **c)** course **d)** mountain

13. Egypt's .... is red, white and black.

a) flat **b)** mountain **c)** flag **d)** map

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A .... is a big, strong building from the past. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣

a) castle b) hotel c) souvenir d) desert

2. Most teachers ask us to .... projects for homework.

a) do b) make c) take d) see

3. Which holiday .... can people do in Egypt? الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣

a) activities b) views c) souvenirs d) projects

4. Some slow learners take summer .... to be good at school subjects. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢

a) holidays b) camps c) views d) courses

5. You can search for a job in .... in newspapers. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢

a) adventures b) advertisements c) flats d) technology

6. I bought many .... for my friends from Paris. دمياط ٢٠٢٣

a) souvenirs b) caves c) menu d) hobbies

7. .... should study their lessons well to be good at them.

a) Courses b) Visitors c) Students d) Parents

8. London is a/an .... city. Lots of people like to visit it.

a) boring b) exciting c) bad d) ugly

9. He .... a great time at Al Azhar Park.

a) had b) made c) rode d) did

10. Basmala is good at English because she goes to a/an .... school.

a) course b) activity c) language d) subject

11. I decided to buy something to .... that holiday.

a) have b) stay c) remind d) remember

12. My favourite activity was a ride .... the London Eye.

a) for b) at c) in d) on

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Language

The Past Simple Tense Questions الأسئلة فى زمن الماضى البسيط

Question السؤال

1 Yes/No questions:

Did + subject + **inf.** ...?

- **A:** Did you **watch** TV last night?
- **B:** Yes, I did. / No, I didn't.

Was/Were + subject + ...?

- **A:** Was he at the cinema last week?
B: Yes, he was. **B:** No, he wasn't.
- **A:** Were they excited about the trip?
B: Yes, they were. **B:** No, they weren't.

2 Wh- questions:

Q. word (أداة استفهام) ▶ did + subject + **inf.** ...?

- **A:** What time did you **go** to bed?
- **B:** I went to bed at 10 o'clock.

Q. word (أداة استفهام) ▶ was/were + subject + ...?

- **A:** Where were you yesterday?
- **B:** I was at the cinema with my friends.

لاحظ

عند السؤال عن الفاعل فى الماضى البسيط لا نستخدم الفعل المساعد (did) بل نستخدم الماضى من الفعل الأساسى:

- Who helped you yesterday? - My mother helped me.

Got it ?

Read and correct the underlined words:

1 How did you travelled to Paris? (..................)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (travel) لوجود كلمة (did) التى يأتى بعدها الفعل فى المصدر.

2 Where does he last week? (..................)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (was) لوجود كلمة last الدالة على الماضى وعدم وجود فعل فى المصدر والفاعل مفرد.

3 Did you in London two days ago? (..................)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (were) لوجود كلمة ago الدالة على الماضى وعدم وجود فعل فى المصدر والفاعل جمع.

Practise more

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Where did you go on holiday .... summer? الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
   a) last b) next c) least d) the following
2. A: When .... she return to Cairo? B: Last Friday. الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
   a) does b) did c) do d) don't
3. Who .... Hassan see in the park last Tuesday? الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢
   a) does b) did c) has d) have
4. Did Hany .... a mountain last year? المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
   a) climbing b) climb c) climbed d) climbs
5. .... you ready for the exam yesterday? القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) Do b) Did c) Was d) Were
6. How .... your last holiday?
   a) was b) did c) is d) does
7. A: Where did you go? B: I .... to Jordon.
   a) go b) goes c) going d) went
8. A: Did you watch TV? B: Yes, I .... الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) don't b) do c) didn't d) did
9. What did you .... for dinner last night? الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
   a) eat b) ate c) eats d) eating
10. A: Did you visit your family there? B: No, we ....
    a) did b) was c) didn't d) wasn't

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Which musical instrument did you played? (..............................)
2. Who did you saw last Monday? (..............................) القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
3. Did you and your family staying in a hotel? (..............................) القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
4. Where do you go last week? (..............................) القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
5. What do you have for breakfast yesterday? (..............................) الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
6. Did you at Alexandria last week? (..............................) الفيوم ٢٠٢٢

D Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

1. Speaking

Asking and answering questions about your last holiday

السؤال والإجابة عن إجازتك الماضية

Situation ما يقال فى هذا الموقف	Response جملة الرد
Where did you go on holiday? أين ذهبت فى الإجازة؟	I went to Alexandria. ذهبت إلى الإسكندرية.
Did you swim in the sea? هل قمت بالسباحة فى البحر؟	Yes, I did. I saw a dolphin too, and I swam with it. نعم. ورأيت دولفينًا أيضًا وقمت بالسباحة معه.
What food did you eat? ما الطعام الذى أكلته؟	I ate a lot of fish. أكلت الكثير من السمك.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue: الفيوم ٢٠٢٣

▶ **Ahmed and Ibrahim are talking about the summer holiday he spent in Alexandria.**

Ahmed : Did you go to Alexandria on holiday?
Ibrahim : Yes, I did.
Ahmed : (1)..?
Ibrahim : Yes, I did. I saw a dolphin, too.
Ahmed : (2)..?
Ibrahim : I ate fish.
Ahmed : Is fish cheap or expensive there?
Ibrahim : (3).. .
Ahmed : Did you have a good time there?
Ibrahim : (4).. .
Ahmed : When did you come back?
Ibrahim : (5).. .

2. Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

How to write about your summer holiday

كيفية الكتابة عن إجازتك الصيفية

- Last summer, the weather was (حالة الطقس).
- We went to (المكان).
- It's a/an (صف المكان) place.
- We stayed in a hotel. The hotel was near the beach.
- We went to the beach. I (الأفعال التى قمت بها على الشاطئ).
- My sister/brother (الأنشطة التى قام بها).
- We had a wonderful time there.

Writing tips

Check your paragraph for spelling and grammar.

- تحقق من القواعد اللغوية أو من عدم وجود أخطاء لغوية فى فقرتك.

Example

What you did last summer

Last summer, the weather was very hot. Our father decided to take us to a nice place to have a wonderful time. We thought of lots of places, but we decided to go to Marsa Matrouh. It's a quiet and fantastic place. We stayed in a comfortable hotel. It was near the beach, so we didn't walk too long. We spent a good time on the beach. My little sister made a sandcastle. I swam in the sea whose water was very clean. My mother made us delicious food. My father and mother liked sitting on the beach. My sister and I played with a ball on the beach. We stayed for two weeks there. We enjoyed our time a lot.

Check Point

Write a paragraph about:

"My summer holiday"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

TEST YOURSELF

Take a test

Unit 5 Lessons (3 & 4)

17.5

هذا التدريب عبارة عن أسئلة تراكمية تهدف لقياس مدى استيعابك للدرسين.

1 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Last summer, I had a holiday course in English in the exciting city of London. I had a wonderful time at the language school. I was there for two weeks. It was nice to meet students from different countries. My favourite place was Windsor Castle, but I did not see the Queen. I learnt English and had a really great holiday at the same time! London's shops were fantastic and I bought a lot of souvenirs. My favourite activity was a ride on the London Eye because there was a beautiful view of the city from the top. It was really a wonderful visit.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. When did the writer go to London? ....
2. What is the best title for this text? ....
3. Do you think the writer enjoyed the visit? Why/ Why not? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The writer bought a lot of .... from London's shops.
   a) castles b) eyes c) souvenirs d) shops
5. The opposite of the underlined word "fantastic" is ....
   a) wonderful b) amazing c) exciting d) terrible
6. The underlined word "there" refers to ....
   a) London b) English c) the Castle d) holiday

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Students .... many activities at their schools.
   a) do b) make c) write d) ride
2. I had a summer course and .... English well.
   a) had b) made c) learnt d) taught
3. Tourists buy .... before they go back to their countries. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) views b) dolphins c) souvenirs d) castles
4. I like English very much and I .... speaking it.
   a) hate b) enjoy c) leave d) stay
5. My children like to go .... a holiday to Hurghada.
   a) on b) in c) at d) about

6. I went to the desert and .... a horse there.

a) did b) made c) rode d) climbed

7. A .... is an old building from the past.

a) flag b) view c) souvenir d) castle

8. What did Nader .... in his office yesterday? كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢

a) found b) find c) finds d) finding

9. .... Sally at home last Friday?

a) Was b) Did c) Were d) Does

10. .... Ahmed and Sami play tennis yesterday? البحيرة ٢٠٢٢

a) Were b) Are c) Did d) Was

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. What did Younis see and <u>did</u> there? (....................) الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣
2. Where <u>did</u> she last summer? (....................) القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
3. Where did Magdy <u>spent</u> the weekend? (....................) الغربية ٢٠٢٢
4. <u>Do</u> you go on holiday last week? (....................)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"An English course in London"

....

....

....

....

....

....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

1. How did you .... the castle?

a) walk b) arrive c) get to d) go

2. I have two friends from England. I talk to them .... English.

a) in b) at c) by d) with

3. Who .... with you yesterday?

a) goes b) didn't go c) go d) going

STUDY

Watch a video

Lessons 5 & 6



SB pages 51 - 53 | WB pages 106 - 108

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
busy (adj)	مزدحم	postcard (n)	بطاقة بريدية
continue (d) (v)	يستمر	sign (n)	لافتة
light (n)	ضوء/مصباح	snails (n)	قواقع
pass (ed) (v)	يمر/ يجتاز	tourist (n)	سائح

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
bath time (n)	وقت الاستحمام	response (n)	رد فعل/استجابة
emotion (n)	شعور/عاطفة	theatre (n)	مسرح
happen (ed) (v)	يحدث	ticket (n)	تذكرة
play (n)	مسرحية	tired (adj)	متعب/مرهق

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
be > back	يعود/يرجع	go to > sleep	يذهب للنوم
do > a journey	يقوم برحلة	have > a view of	يلقى نظرة على
follow > rules	يتبع القواعد	have > time	لديه وقت

Prepositions — حروف الجر

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
for a holiday	لقضاء إجازة	go on a boat trip	يذهب فى رحلة بالقارب
for example	على سبيل المثال	in bed	فى السرير
get on	يركب على	on the train	فى القطار
go in water	ينزل فى الماء	on TV	فى التلفزيون

Check Point

Choose and complete: for – theatre – light – tickets

1. We can see plays and shows at the ....
2. We can't enter the cinema without ....
3. My family went to Hurghada .... a holiday.

يهدف هذا التدريب لاختبار فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية وحروف الجر.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
draw	يرسم	drew	drawn
fall	يقع/يسقط	fell	fallen
leave	يترك/يغادر	left	left

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
closed	مغلق	open	مفتوح
lose	يخسر	win	يفوز/يكسب

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائي للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ

Famous Places أماكن مشهورة

Australia	أستراليا	the Louvre	متحف اللوفر
Canada	كندا	the Nile	النيل
Luxembourg Gardens	حدائق لكسمبورج	the River Seine	نهر السين
Ramses Station	محطة رمسيس	the Science Museum	متحف العلوم
the Eiffel Tower	برج إيفل	the Valley of the Kings	وادي الملوك

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
closed	مغلق	locked	مغلق
pass	يمر/يجتاز	succeed	ينجح

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
tour (n)	جولة	-ist			تحول الاسم لاسم فاعل	tourist (n)	سائح
wind (n)	الرياح	-y			تحول الاسم لصفة	windy (adj)	كثير الرياح

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 5

Pre-listening question:

- How was your last holiday?

Listen. What ate Mazin's ice cream? *SB page 51*

Man What did you do yesterday, Mazin?

Mazin I went to the zoo.

Man Oh, that's interesting[1]! Did you enjoy the day?

Mazin No, I didn't.

Man Oh, dear[2]. Why not?

Mazin Well, first we went to see the monkeys. But they were all very tired. I think they were in bed.

Man What a pity[3]! So you didn't see them?

Mazin No, we didn't. Then, we went into a cave to see the bats. But it was dark, and I didn't see anything.

Man What did you do next?

Mazin Then, we bought an ice cream and went to see the elephants. It was bath time for them.

Man Wow! How exciting[4]!

Mazin Yes, I enjoyed that. But then something bad happened.

Man Oh, no[5]! What happened?

Mazin An elephant ate my ice cream!

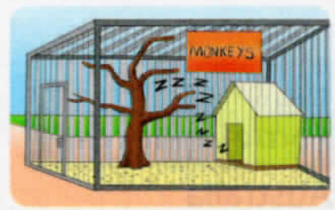
(1) ذلك شيق!

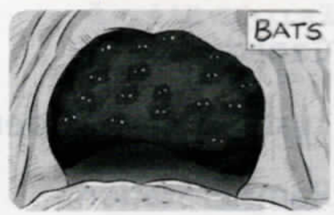
(2) يا للهول!/ يا إلهي!

(3) يا للأسف!

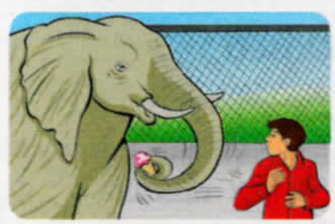
(4) كم هو مثير!

(5) أوه لا!/ يا إلهي!









Post-listening questions:

1. Why do you think Mazin didn't see the bats?
2. If you were Mazin, how would you feel when the elephant ate your ice cream?

Pre-reading question:

- Do you think Paris is a great city for a holiday? Why/ Why not?

Lesson 6

Read Fatma's email. *SB page 52*

From : Fatma
To : Azza
Subject : My holiday

Hi, Azza!

I am back from my holiday in Paris. I had a wonderful time! Paris is a great city for a holiday because there is so much to see and do. The food is delicious. I ate a lot of new things, for example, snails (1)!

One day we climbed the Eiffel Tower, and from the top we had a view of the city. We visited museums and had a picnic in the Luxembourg Gardens. We also went on a boat on the River Seine. What a pity! We did not have time to go to the Science Museum. I also wanted to see the art (2) at the Louvre, but it was closed.

Near our hotel, there was a busy market. I bought a T-shirt and some postcards (3). I also bought you a souvenir. It is a very small Eiffel Tower! You can put it next to your bed. It has got a light (4) on the top.

See you soon!

Fatma



(1) قواقع

(2) الفن/الرسم

(3) بطاقات بريدية

(4) ضوء/مصباح

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

snail /sneɪl/
Eiffel /ˈaɪfəl/
Luxembourg/ /ˈlʌksəmˌbɜ:g/
Seine /seɪn/

Post-reading question:

- If you were Fatma, would you enjoy your holiday? Give reasons.

Pre-reading question: - Do you like travelling by train?

Put the email into the correct order. *WB page 107*

Hi Fady,

Last week, I travelled from Cairo to Aswan. My father bought our tickets at Ramses Station, then we got on the train. There were people from many countries on the train, for example, England and Australia.

The train left Cairo at 8 o'clock, and soon we passed Giza. I enjoyed the view from the window and I saw the Nile. There were lots of boats. It was beautiful.

We arrived at Luxor at a quarter past six. Many tourists left the train here. They wanted to see the Valley of the Kings!

The train continued to Aswan. We arrived there at ten o'clock. My uncle was there to meet us! It was a wonderful journey.

See you soon!

Mazin



Post-reading question:

- How did Mazin travel to Aswan?

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

Australia /ɒ'streɪlɪə/ station /steɪʃən/

Values

Look at these **signs**. What do they mean? انظر إلى الإشارات. ماذا تعنى؟



1. Why do places have these rules for tourists? لماذا تضع الأماكن هذه القواعد للسائحين؟
2. Can you think of any more rules for tourists? هل يمكنك التفكير فى قواعد أكثر للسائحين؟

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

▶ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. This .... says, "Don't walk on the grass". القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

a) signal **b)** list **c)** sign **d)** song

2. What school .... should we follow? البحيرة ٢٠٢٣

a) games **b)** rules **c)** gates **d)** classes

3. Ahmed doesn't have any time to lose. He is always .... الشرقية ٢٠٢٣

a) busy **b)** free **c)** easy **d)** lazy

4. .... come to Egypt to enjoy the good weather and great mountains. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٠

a) Thieves **b)** Tourists **c)** Bats **d)** Lorries

5. We didn't have time to go to the Science Museum, what a ....! القاهرة ٢٠٢٠

a) dear **b)** really **c)** no **d)** pity

6. The children are sleeping now. They are .... bed.

a) with **b)** for **c)** in **d)** to

7. I went to the shop to buy tea, but the shop was ....

a) opened **b)** open **c)** close **d)** closed

8. It rained a lot, but the match ....

a) passed **b)** continued **c)** rode **d)** slept

9. I sent my friend a .... on his birthday.

a) ticket **b)** snail **c)** postcard **d)** sign

10. Some children like to play with .... on the beach.

a) snails **b)** tickets **c)** signs **d)** rules

11. He went to the .... to watch the new play.

a) park **b)** zoo **c)** library **d)** theatre

12. Please, tell me what ....

a) happened **b)** showed **c)** followed **d)** slept

13. The bathroom is ready. It's .... time.

a) sign **b)** light **c)** bath **d)** ticket

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

Speaking

Responding to good/bad news

الرد على الأخبار الجيدة/السيئة

A) Good news: الأخبار الجيدة		B) Bad news: الأخبار السيئة	
How exciting!	كم هو مثير!	Oh, dear!	يا للهول!/ يا إلهى!
Really?	حقاً!	Oh, no!	أوه لا!/ يا إلهى!
Wow!	رائع!	What a pity!	يا للأسف!/ يا للحسرة!
That's interesting!	ذلك شيق!		

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue: القليوبية ٢٠٢٢

Nahla is very tired because she had a lot of work at home.

Nahla : Hello, Noha. Come in, please.

Noha : Hi, Nahla. (1) ....?

Nahla : I didn't come to school today because I was very tired.

Noha : (2) ....! Why?

Nahla : I had a lot of work at home.

Noha : Did you finish it?

Nahla : (3) ....

Noha : Did your daughter help you?

Nahla : (4) ....

Noha : (5) ....?

Nahla : She didn't help me because she had a test.

هذا التدريب عبارة عن أسئلة تراكمية
تهدف لقياس مدى استيعابك للدرسين.

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Nour is telling Sarah about her trip to Paris.

Sarah : What are you doing?
Nour : (1) ....
Sarah : Photos of your trip! (2) ....?
Nour : I went to Paris.
Sarah: (3) ....?
Nour : I visited the Eiffel Tower and the museum.
Sarah: What did you buy there?
Nour : (4) ....
Sarah: Can I see them?
Nour : (5) ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **A:** We didn't want to swim in the sea. **B:** What a ....!
   a) pity **b)** dear **c)** really **d)** no
2. Tourists usually stay in .... when they visit other countries.
   a) mountains **b)** hotels **c)** tents **d)** caves
3. I will take holiday .... to be good at English.
   a) tours **b)** towers **c)** courses **d)** schools
4. I .... a wonderful time last week.
   a) had **b)** made **c)** did **d)** took
5. How exciting! Youssef .... his driving test.
   a) failed **b)** passed **c)** planned **d)** found
6. We .... our weekend. It was wonderful.
   a) enjoyed **b)** joined **c)** made **d)** did

7. I can't see anything. There's no ....

a) lit   b) height   c) light   d) dark

8. A: .... you go to Alexandria? B: Yes, I did.   القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

a) Do   b) Did   c) Does   d) Is

9. Did you .... basketball yesterday?

a) play   b) played   c) playing   d) are playing

10. Why .... he sad last night?

a) is   b) does   c) was   d) did

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. They travelled by car. They walked. (........................)   القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
2. Where do you go last week? (........................)   القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
3. How did your last weekend? (........................)
4. Samy didn't came to school yesterday. (........................)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on: الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣

"Your last holiday"

....

....

....

....

....

....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

1. Ugh! You're eating ....!

a) nails   b) lights   c) snails   d) rules

2. There were many people from many countries on the train, ... England and France.

a) for example   b) so   c) because   d) when

3. Where .... yesterday evening?

a) you did   b) did you   c) you were   d) were you

Review on Unit 5

Vocabulary

beach	شاطئ
light	ضوء / مصباح
camp (ed)	يعسكر / يخيم
London Eye	(عجلة لندن) معلم سياحى
make a sandcastle	يصنع قلعة رملية
cave	كهف
climb a mountain	يتسلق جبلًا
dolphin	دولفين
ride a bike	يركب دراجة
eat delicious food	يأكل طعامًا لذيذًا
fantastic	رائع
rules	قواعد
frightened of	خائف من
sign	لافتة
sleep in a tent	ينام فى خيمة
have a picnic	يقوم بنزهة
souvenir	هدية تذكارية
holiday courses	دورات فى فترة الإجازة
swim in the lake	يسبح فى البحيرة
holiday flat	شقة العطلة
waterfall	شلال

Language

The Past Simple الماضى البسيط

1 Form:

Subject + التصريف الثانى للفعل

- I arrived late for school.

2 Key words:

(yesterday أمس - last ... الماضى - ... ago منذ - in the past فى الماضى - in + سنة فى الماضى (in 2010)

3 Negative:

Subject + did not (didn't) + inf. + ...

- You didn't **buy** a new notebook.

4 Yes/No questions:

- Did + subject + **inf. ...?**

- Did you **watch** TV last night?

5 Wh- questions:

Q. word (أداة استفهام) + did + subject + inf. ...?

A: What time did you **go** to bed?

B: I went to bed at 10 o'clock.

Skills

1. Asking and answering questions about your last holiday:

A: Where did you go on holiday?

B: I went to Alexandria.

A: Did you swim in the sea?

B: Yes, I did. I saw a dolphin too, and I swam with it.

A: What food did you eat?

B: I ate a lot of fish.

2. Responding to good/bad news:

A) Responding to good news:

How exciting!

Really?

Wow!

That's interesting!

B) Responding to bad news:

Oh, dear!

Oh, no!

What a pity!

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 5

Question Bank

24

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1. When did you go to Jordan?

a) Last year. **b)** Last holiday.

c) Last month. **d)** Yesterday.

2. Where did you stay?

a) On a farm. **b)** On the beach.

c) In a hotel. **d)** In a holiday flat.

3. How were the places you visited?

a) Famous. **b)** Boring.

c) Cool. **d)** Busy.

4. How was your holiday?

a) Late. **b)** Busy.

c) Great. **d)** Ugly.

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue: القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

Salma is telling Fatima about her visit to Alexandria.

Fatima : Where did you go on holiday last year?

Salma : (1).. .

Fatima : (2)..?

Salma : I stayed in my uncle's flat.

Fatima : (3)..?

Salma : I travelled by train.

Fatima : Did you swim in the sea?

Salma : (4).. .

Fatima : What did you eat there?

Salma : (5)..

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions: القليوبية ٢٠٢٣

Dear Azza,

I am back from my holiday in Paris. I had a wonderful time! Paris is a great city for a holiday because there is so much to see and do. The food is delicious. I ate a lot of new things, for example, snails! One day we climbed the Eiffel Tower, and from the top we had a view of the city. We visited museums and had a picnic in the gardens. We also went on a boat on the river. But, we did not have time to go to the Science Museum. I also wanted to see the art at the Louvre, but it was closed. Near our hotel, there was a busy market. I bought some postcards; I also bought you a souvenir. It is a very small Eiffel Tower! You can put it next to your bed. It has got a light on the top.

See you soon!

Fatma

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What's the main idea of the passage?

....

2. What did Fatma buy from the busy market?

....

3. Do you think Fatma enjoyed her holiday in Paris? Why? Why not?

....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "it" refers to ....

a) picnic **b)** The Louvre **c)** Paris **d)** Eiffel Tower

5. Fatma bought a .... for Azza.

a) souvenir **b)** postcard **c)** food **d)** museum

6. The busy market was .... Fatma's hotel.

a) far from **b)** behind **c)** in front of **d)** next to

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. In Egypt, we have the longest .... in the world.

a) sea **b)** waterfall **c)** river **d)** forest

2. They stay in a holiday .... by the beach. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

a) flat **b)** fly **c)** float **d)** fat

3. Sohaila didn't want to go into the .... because there were many bats.
   a) cave b) cafe c) shop d) club
4. These shops are fantastic. I bought a lot of .... القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) waterfalls b) castles c) souvenirs d) caves
5. She bought a flat with a nice .... on the Nile.
   a) course b) queen c) review d) view
6. We went .... a boat trip last week.
   a) on b) of c) in d) at
7. You can see a lot of .... for holiday courses in newspapers.
   a) achievements b) advertisements c) signs d) experiments
8. I .... lunch with Yasmeen last Friday.
   a) have b) had c) having d) am having
9. They .... football yesterday. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
   a) played b) play c) playing d) plays
10. **A:** Where did he .... in the desert? **B:** In a tent. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) sleep b) slept c) sleeping d) sleeps

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. It rain hard last night. (.................................) القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
2. She didn't at school yesterday. (.................................) الفيوم ٢٠٢٢
3. Where did you stayed? (.................................) القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
4. Does your mother cook last night? (.................................)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on: القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

"A nice trip you had"

....
....
....
....
....
....

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!



Unit 6

Let's eat!

Objectives of the unit

Tapescripts

Reading	A recipe; reviews of a dish; a text about healthy snacks; a text about food in Africa
Writing	A paragraph describing a picture; an online review of a café
Listening	A conversation about what food there is; an interview about healthy drinks; a conversation in a café
Speaking	Asking and answering about food in a picture; giving advice; ordering food in a café
Language	Countable and uncountable nouns; should and shouldn't for advice
Life Skills	Decision making; problem solving
Issues	Preventative health

WB تشير لأسئلة كتاب التدريبات SB تشير لأسئلة كتاب الطالب

STUDY Lessons 1 & 2

Watch a video



SB pages 54 - 57 | WBpages 109 & 110

A Vocabulary

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

bring/brought (v)	يحضر	perfect (adj)	ممتاز
delicious (adj)	لذيذ	prefer (red) (v)	يفضل
equipment (n)	معدات	recipe (n)	وصفة طعام
fridge (n)	ثلاجة	review (n)	نقد/مقالة نقدية
ingredients (n)	مقادير /مكونات	sweet (adj)	حلو
Cooking verbs	**أفعال الطهو**	**Kitchenware**	**أدوات المطبخ**
add (ed) (v)	يضيف	bowl (n)	سلطانية
boil (ed) (v)	يغلى	cup (n)	فنجان
cook (ed) (v)	يطهى/يطبخ	saucepan (n)	قدر صغير
stir (red) (v)	يقلب	teaspoon (n)	ملعقة شاى

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

instructions (n)	تعليمات/إرشادات	share (d) (v)	يشارك

Kinds of food أنواع الأطعمة

Countable nouns	أسماء معدودة			Uncountable nouns	أسماء غير معدودة		
crisps	رقائق البطاطس	olives	زيتون	chocolate	شوكولاتة	hummus	حمص
figs	تين	peppers	فلفل	cinnamon	قرفة	rice pudding	أرز بودنج
nuts	جوز/بندق	raisins	زبيب	coconut	جوزة الهند	salad	سلطة

Check Point

Choose and complete: add – perfect – rice – peppers

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

1. My mother is a .... cook.
2. My sister bought green .... for salad.
3. I always prefer .... pudding for dessert.

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

(n) = noun	(adj) = adjective	(prep) = preposition
(v) = verb	(adv) = adverb	(conj) = conjunction

Prepositions — حروف الجر

cook for	يطبخ لـ	recipe for	وصفة طعام لـ
decide to + inf.	يقرر أن	put .... into	يضع .... في

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
boil	يغلي	freeze	يجمد
delicious	لذيذ	horrible	فظيع/كريه
healthy	صحي	unhealthy	غير صحي
perfect	ممتاز/مثالي	imperfect	غير مثالي

Check Point

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك لحروف الجر والكلمات وعكسها.

Choose and complete: horrible – for – to

1. I read a good recipe .... steak.
2. This cake is .... I can't taste it.

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 decide to + inf. — يقرر أن

- My father decided to buy a new car.

2 Giving instructions — إعطاء تعليمات

عند اعطاء تعليمات نبدأ الجملة بمصدر الفعل.

- Add the sugar to the rice and stir again.

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائي للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Words and Synonyms — الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
delicious	لذيذ	tasty	لذيذ
healthy	صحي	well	بصحة جيدة

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
equip (v)	يجهز	-ment	تحويل الفعل لاسم	equipment (n)	معدات
health (n)	صحة	-y	تحويل الاسم لصفة	healthy (adj)	صحى

Prefix البادئة

Prefix البادئة	Function الوظيفة	Word	الكلمة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
im-	تعطى عكس المعنى	perfect (adj)	ممتاز	imperfect (adj)	غير مثالى
un-	تعطى عكس المعنى	healthy (adj)	صحى	unhealthy (adj)	غير صحى

Countable & Uncountable nouns أسماء تعد/لا تعد

Countable nouns أسماء معدودة				Uncountable nouns أسماء غير معدودة			
beans	فول	tomatoes	طماطم	cheese	جبن	sugar	سكر
biscuits	بسكويت	vegetables	خضراوات	chocolate	شوكولاتة	juice	عصير
cakes	كعك			fish	سمك	meat	لحم

Similar spelling - Different meaning

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهة
fridge	ثلاجة	bridge	كوبرى
tasty	لذيذ	nasty	سيئ
prefer	يفضل	refer	يشير

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Wow! Did you make that cake? It looks delicious! The synonym of "delicious" is "..................".
   a) well b) nasty c) tasteless d) tasty
2. To get the noun from the verb "equip", we add the suffix "..................".
   a) -ive b) -ment c) -ness d) -ion
3. To get the opposite of "perfect", we add the prefix "..................".
   a) ir- b) in c) im- d) dis-

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 1

Pre-listening question:

- Can you make lunch by yourself?

Listen to Nadia and her brother Omar.

Which two things do they not have?

SB page 55

Nadia Let's make lunch. I think we've got all the food.

Omar There is some salad. Is there any hummus [1]?

Nadia No, there isn't. But there are some olives [2].

Omar There are some peppers [3], too.

Nadia Good. Is there any cheese?

Omar Yes, there is. I've got it.

Nadia What about figs [4]? Are there any figs?

Omar No! There aren't any figs.

Nadia There are some raisins [5].

Omar That's good.

(1) حمص

(2) زيتون

(3) فلفل

(4) تين

(5) زبيب







Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

hummus /hu:məs/ pepper /pepəʳ/ raisin /reɪzən/

Post-listening question:

- What are Nadia and Omar going to make?

Pre-reading question:

- Do you like Roz Bel Laban?

Read the recipe and put these pictures in the correct order. *SB page 56*

Roz Bel Laban: Egyptian Rice Pudding

F ☐


A ☐


C ☐


E ☐


D ☐


G ☐


B ☐


Ingredients

1 cup[1] of rice
2 cups of water
3 cups of milk
1 cup of sugar
¼ a cup of raisins
¼ a cup of nuts
¼ a teaspoon[2] of cinnamon

Instructions

1. Put the rice and water in a saucepan[3].
2. Boil[4] the rice and water for 20 minutes.
3. Add[5] the milk slowly as you stir[6].
4. Add the sugar and stir again.
5. Put the rice pudding into bowls.
6. Put the raisins, cinnamon and nuts on top.
7. Put the rice pudding in the fridge[7].

فنجان (1)   ملعقة شاى (2)   قدر صغير (3)   يغلى (4)   يضيف (5)   يقلب (6)   ثلاجة (7)

Note :

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

pudding /pʊdɪŋ/
cinnamon /sɪnəmən/
bowl /bəʊl/
ingredient /ɪngri:diənt/
saucepan /sɔ:spən/

Note:
عند إعطاء تعليمات تبدأ الجملة بمصدر الفعل.

Post-reading question:

- Are you going to try making rice pudding?

Read the reviews of the recipe. Who did not like it?

SB page 57

Really easy! ★★★★★

- This is a great recipe.
- It's really easy to make.
- There aren't a lot of ingredients and it's very quick to cook.

Fawzi

OK, but a bit boring ★★★

- I liked this rice pudding, but it isn't my favourite. I think there are too many raisins.
- I don't like them. I prefer rice pudding with coconut.

Hana

Perfect! ★★★★★

- There are a lot of rice pudding recipes online, but this is my favourite. It's easy to make and there's enough rice pudding for the whole family.
- There's a lot of sugar in the recipe, but I like sweet food.

Nabila

Not like my mum's rice pudding! ★★

- My mum's rice pudding is delicious, but this rice pudding isn't very good.
- There's too much sugar and there aren't enough other ingredients.

Salem

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

recipe /resɪpi/ coconut /koʊkənʌt/

Complete the text with *a lot of, enough, too much or too many.*

WB page 110

Mrs Amal has **a lot of** friends. Today, she is cooking for ten people. She has **enough** plates for people to eat on, but she does not have **enough** chairs, so her friend brings some. Now all the food is ready, but there is fish and rice for fifteen people, not ten! She has **too much** fish and rice. She decides to ask five more people, but they can't all sit down. There are **too many** people and not **enough** chairs!



PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

▶ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. "..................... "is not a cooking verb. المنوفية ٢٠٢٢

   a) Pudding. b) Boil. c) Stir. d) Add.

2. Put rice and water in a .... before cooking rice pudding. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣

   a) bag b) teaspoon c) saucepan d) cup

3. Sami thinks that the .... of rice pudding is easy. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣

   a) recipe b) recycling c) road d) equipment

4. Who cooked this? It's .... I like it.

   a) salty b) delicious c) ugly d) unhealthy

5. .... the rice and water for 20 minutes.

   a) Freeze b) Eat c) Boil d) Bring

6. My mother uses healthy .... to cook our food.

   a) bowls b) ingredients c) instructions d) fridges

7. Put the rice pudding .... bowls.

   a) from b) into c) for d) with

8. We keep our food in the .... to be cold and good.

   a) cooker b) fridge c) desk d) bowl

9. Put the .... , cinnamon and nuts on top of the rice pudding.

   a) water b) salt c) raisins d) peppers

10. Hazem forgot to .... the sugar in his tea.

    a) eat b) cook c) boil d) stir

11. There are easy .... to make rice pudding.

    a) meals b) teams c) groups d) instructions

12. We use sugar to make our food or drinks ....

    a) ugly b) bad c) sweet d) salty

13. I like eating .... They are full of Vitamin E.

    a) nuts b) bowls c) cups d) pots

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Don't .... much sugar to tea. It is unhealthy. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣

   a) work b) buy c) add d) bring

2. Your idea is .... They will like it.

   a) ugly b) boring c) perfect d) bad

3. .... is a natural drink and very healthy. كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٠

   a) Raisin b) Pepper c) Cinnamon d) Nuts

4. It's .... to eat lots of crisps. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

   a) healthy b) unhealthy c) nice d) good

5. My mother always .... lunch at three o'clock.

   a) makes b) does c) plays d) wears

6. You can put a .... of cinnamon now.

   a) pan b) pot c) saucepan d) teaspoon

7. Most people in Egypt eat .... for breakfast.

   a) beans b) fish c) meat d) recipes

8. Put the rice into a big ....

   a) field b) cup c) cupboard d) bowl

9. Making rice pudding is .... Everyone can make it very quickly.

   a) bad b) difficult c) easy d) hard

10. There's a lot of sugar in the recipe, but I like .... food.

    a) ugly b) hot c) salty d) sweet

11. I don't like raisins. I .... rice pudding with coconut.

    a) stir b) share c) prefer d) bring

12. Mrs Amal has a lot of friends. Today, she is cooking .... ten people.

    a) for b) in c) at d) on

13. Now come to eat, all the food is ....

    a) full b) ready c) unhealthy d) empty

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Language

Countable and uncountable nouns

الأسماء المعدودة والأسماء غير المعدودة

1 Uncountable nouns الأسماء غير المعدودة

meat – sugar – salt – cheese – salad – juice – hummus

- **Uncountable nouns do not have a plural form. We cannot count them and we cannot use a/an before them.**
- الأسماء التى لا تعد ليس لها جمع، لا يمكن عدها ولا يتم استخدام (a/an) قبلها.

- There is some bread on the table.
- There isn't any meat in the dish.

2 Countable nouns الأسماء المعدودة

(cake – cakes) / (fig – figs) / (olive – olives) / (tomato – tomatoes)

- **Countable nouns are nouns we can count. They can be singular or plural. We can use a/an before a singular countable noun. The plural usually ends in -s.**
- الأسـماء المعدودة: هى الأسـماء التى يمكن عدها وتكون مفردًا أو جمعًا. يمكن اسـتخدام (a/an) قبل الاسـم المفرد فقط. ينتهى الاسم الجمع غالبًا بحرف (s).

Countable nouns

1. **Singular** مفرد
   - نستخدم الفعل فى حالة المفرد إذا كان الاسم مفرداً
   - There is a **restaurant** in this street.
   - This is not an **olive**. It's a **peach**.

2. **Plural** جمع
   - نستخدم الفعل فى حالة الجمع إذا كان الاسم جمعًا.
   - There are some **shops** in this street.
   - There aren't any **peppers**.

لاحظ

يتم استخدام (a/an) قبل الاسم المفرد الذى يعد:

- نستخدم (an) قبل الاسم المفرد المعدود الذى يبدأ بصوت متحرك (a – e – i – o – u):

- There's an **apple** on the table.
- Ola ate an **orange**.

- نستخدم (a) قبل الاسم المفرد المعدود الذى يبدأ بصوت ساكن:

- There's a **car** in front of my house.
- There's a **book** in my bag.

Remember

3 There is يوجد (للمفرد/ للكمية) — There are يوجد (للجمع فقط)

Form:

- There is / isn't ▶ (اسم مفرد يعد/اسم لا يعد)
- There is **an apple** on the table.
- There is **some rice** in the dish.
- There isn't **any sugar** in the tea.

Question:

- Is there + اسم مفرد يعد/اسم لا يعد ....?
- Is there **an apple** on the table?

- There are/ aren't ▶ (اسم جمع)
- There are **some apples** on the table.
- There are **some raisins.**
- There aren't **any potatoes** in the market.

Question:

- Are there + اسم جمع ....?
- Are there **any apples** on the table?

Remember

4 Some & Any بعض / أى

Some

- We use "some" for **affirmative** sentences.

- نستخدم (some) بمعنى (بعض) مع الجمل المثبتة. نستخدم بعدها اسمًا (يعد) فى حالة الجمع أو اسمًا لا يُعد (كمية).

- There are some **figs** in this dish. (countable)
- There is some **rice** in this dish. (uncountable)

لاحظ

- **We use some in Yes/ No questions that are offers or requests.**

◀ يمكننا استخدام (some) فى السؤال فى حالتى (العرض والطلب).

- Would you like some tea? ▶ offer عرض
- Can I have some books? ▶ request طلب

Any

- We use "any" for **negative sentences** and **questions.**

- نستخدم (any) بمعنى (أى) مع الجمل المنفية وفى السؤال. نستخدم بعدها اسمًا (يعد) فى حالة الجمع أو اسمًا لا يعد (كمية).

- There **aren't** any olives. (جملة منفية)
- **Has** koshari got any meat in it? (سؤال)

a lot of, enough, too much, too many

- **We can use these words with countable and uncountable nouns.**

- يمكن استخدام هذه الكلمات مع الأسماء التى تُعد والأسماء التى لا تُعد.

a lot of

- تأتى بمعنى (كثير من) ويتبعها اسم يُعد (جمع) / اسم لا يُعد.
(تستخدم للتعبير عن تواجد شىء بكثرة)

- There is a lot of **sugar**.
- There are a lot of rice pudding **recipes.**

enough

- تأتى بمعنى (كافٍ) ويتبعها اسم يُعد (جمع) / اسم لا يُعد.
(تستخدم للتعبير عن تواجد شىء بالكمية أو العدد المناسب)

- There are not enough **chairs.**
- There is enough **rice** pudding for all the family.

too many

- تأتى بمعنى (كثير من) ويتبعها اسم يُعد (جمع).
(تستخدم للتعبير عن وجود شىء زائد عن العدد اللازم)

- There are too many **people** in the party.

too much

- تأتى بمعنى (كثير من) ويتبعها اسم لا يُعد.
(تستخدم للتعبير عن وجود شىء زائد عن الكم اللازم)

- There's too much **rice and fish.**

Got it ?

Read and correct the underlined words:

1 I saw a <u>lot</u> animals in the zoo. (..............................)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (lot of).

2 He put too <u>many</u> salt in the food. (..............................)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (much) لأن salt اسم لا يُعد.

3 We have <u>a</u> bread for all. There isn't too much. (..............................)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (enough) لأن كلمة bread اسم لا يعد، والمعنى يحتاج لكلمة كاف.

4 I don't want <u>some</u> sugar. (..............................)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (any) لأن الجملة منفية.

5 <u>There is</u> a boy in the classroom? (..............................)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (Is there) لوجود علامة استفهام فهى صيغة سؤال.

Practise more

PRACTICE Language Exercises

▲Remembering ▲Understanding ▲Applying ▲Analysing ▲Evaluating ▲Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There .... a lot of snow in the mountains. الغربية ٢٠٢٢

   a) does b) is c) has d) were

2. There are .... boys in the family, but there aren't many girls. الفيوم ٢٠٢٣

   a) too much b) much c) too many d) a lot

3. Don't put .... butter in the pan. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢

   a) enough b) many c) too much d) some

4. There aren't .... potatoes in the fridge. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

   a) any b) some c) an d) a

5. There is .... cheese in the fridge. الفيوم ٢٠٢٣

   a) an b) as c) a d) some

6. There .... figs in the cupboard. البحيرة ٢٠٢٢

   a) isn't any b) is any c) are any d) aren't any

7. There is .... rice for you.

   a) enough b) any c) many d) lot

8. This cake is very sweet. There's too .... sugar in it. بني سويف ٢٠٢٢

   a) enough b) much c) many d) lot of

9. There are .... people on the beach today. Let's go to another one. WB

   a) too much b) too many c) enough d) a lot of

10. I don't have .... friends.

   a) a b) some c) any d) much

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. <u>Is</u> there any computers in the classroom? (..............................) القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
2. There <u>are</u> any printers in my classroom. (..............................) البحيرة ٢٠٢٢
3. There <u>are</u> a lot of sand in the desert. (..............................) القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
4. We shouldn't eat <u>some</u> crisps. (..............................) دمياط ٢٠٢٣
5. There <u>is</u> too many kids in the club. (..............................)
6. <u>There are</u> any carrots in the fridge? (..............................) الشرقية ٢٠٢٢

Time to Practise

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There .... any notebooks in my bag. المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
   a) is b) isn't c) are d) aren't
2. There's .... hummus in the jar. الشرقية ٢٠٢٠
   a) any b) some c) many d) a lot
3. There are .... people in the market today. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) too much b) much c) a lot d) too many
4. She wants to buy another book, but there .... enough money with her.
   a) is b) are c) aren't d) isn't
5. Are there .... apples in the fridge? القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) a b) any c) much d) an
6. There is not .... rain for orange trees to grow in the desert. WB
   a) too much b) too many c) enough d) a lot of
7. I don't have .... money to buy this dress.
   a) any b) some c) many d) lot
8. Let's go to the shops. There is .... time before the train leaves.
   a) little b) too many c) enough d) many
9. There .... figs in the cupboard. WB
   a) is any b) are any c) aren't any d) aren't some
10. .... any subjects you don't like?
    a) There is b) There are c) Is there d) Are there

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Are there <u>some</u> tomatoes in the fridge? (....................) المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
2. I don't like this tea. There is too <u>many</u> sugar in it. (....................) الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
3. She put too <u>many</u> salt in the food. (....................) القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
4. There isn't <u>some</u> cheese in the fridge. (....................) القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
5. There <u>isn't</u> any canals near our village. (....................)
6. There <u>aren't</u> a charger in my room. (....................)

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

D Skills

1. Speaking

Ask and answer questions about food

السؤال والإجابة عن الطعام

Situation	ما يقال فى هذا الموقف	Response	جملة الرد
What food do you like?	ما الطعام الذى تحبه؟	I like salad and meat.	أحب السلطة واللحم.
What food don't you like?	ما الطعام الذى لا تحبه؟	I don't like olives.	لا أحب الزيتون.
Is there any cheese?	هل يوجد أى جبن؟	Yes, there is.	نعم، يوجد.
Are there any biscuits?	هل يوجد أى بسكويت؟	No, there aren't.	لا، لا يوجد.

Speaking Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

Mona and Hend are making lunch.

Mona: I'm hungry. Let's make lunch.
Hend : OK. There is some salad. Is there any hummus?
Mona: (1).., but there are some olives.
Hend : (2).. .
Mona: Good. I like peppers. (3)..?
Hend : Yes, there is some cheese.
Mona: What about figs? (4)..?
Hend : No, there aren't any figs.
Mona: Are there any raisins?
Hend : (5).. . They are in the fridge.

2. Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء الى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

How to write about a dish recipe.

كيفية الكتابة عن وصفة أكلة.

- I'd like to tell you about (اسم الأكلة) recipe.
- It's (easy/not easy) to make.
- There are a lot of (المكونات) in it.
- First, (الخطوة الأولى)
- Then, (الخطوة الثانية)
- After that, (الخطوة التالية)
- Finally, (الخطوة الأخيرة)

Writing tips

Use varied sentence patterns in your writing. There should be both long and short sentences.

استخدم نماذج متنوعة فى الجمل. يجب أن تكون هناك جمل طويلة وأخرى قصيرة فى الفقرة.

Example

A good recipe

There are a lot of recipes, but I like Roz Bel Laban, Egyptian rice pudding. There are a lot of rice pudding recipes online, but this is my favourite. It's easy to make and there's enough rice pudding for the whole family. There's a lot of sugar in the recipe, but I like sweet food. This is the recipe. First, put rice and water in a saucepan and boil them for 20 minutes. Then, add milk slowly and sugar as you stir. After that, put the rice pudding into bowls and put raisins, cinnamon and nuts on top. Finally, put the rice pudding in the fridge.

Check Point

Write a paragraph about:

"A recipe of a dish I like"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

1 **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:** نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1. What did father and mother eat? القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) Fish. b) Rice with fish.
   c) Chicken with rice. d) Rice.
2. Where did they have their meal?
   a) At home. b) At school.
   c) At club. d) At cafe.
3. How many people went for lunch?
   a) Four. b) Three.
   c) Five. d) Two.
4. Why did they choose this place? Because it was ....
   a) bad b) happy
   c) nice d) far

2 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. You can find teaspoons, saucepans and cups in the ....
   a) kitchen b) hall c) playground d) library
2. This recipe is .... It's my favourite. الجيزة ٢٠٢٠
   a) boring b) bad c) perfect d) terrible
3. There are a lot of rice pudding .... online. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
   a) recipes b) instructions c) daughters d) ingredients
4. I don't like raisins. I prefer rice pudding with ....
   a) peppers b) coconut c) olive d) salt
5. I like sweet ....
   a) peppers b) cinnamon c) raisins d) fish
6. What kind of books do you ....?
   a) add b) boil c) bring d) prefer
7. Rice, milk, coconut and raisins are the .... of rice pudding. دمياط ٢٠٢٣
   a) instructions b) ingredients c) recipes d) flavours

8. My mum prepared some .... for me and my friends on our school trip. الجيزة ٢٠٢٠

a) sandwich b) sandwiches'
c) sandwiches d) a sandwich

9. There .... some water on the table.

a) are b) is c) were d) has

10. I don't like these cakes because they have .... sugar in them. WB

a) too much b) too many c) enough d) a lot of

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. There are any vegetables on the table. (..............................) القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
2. There aren't too much tomatoes. (..............................) كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٠
3. There aren't enough milk to make hot chocolate. (..............................) WB
4. Can I have a apple? (..............................) بنى سويف ٢٠٢٢

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on: الشرقية ٢٠٢٢

"Your favourite food"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

1. Pots, bowls and saucepans are all .... that mothers use in the kitchen.

a) food b) ingredient c) recipe d) equipment

2. We can't count ....

a) cinnamon b) children c) men d) sheep

3. My brother joined .... university in England.

a) any b) an c) a d) some

STUDY

Watch a video

Lessons 3 & 4



SB pages 58 - 60 | WB pages 111 & 112

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

amazing (adj)	مذهل	potatoes (n)	بطاطس
fat (n)	دهون	shepherd's pie (n)	فطيرة الراعى
fizzy drinks (n)	مشروبات غازية	spices (n)	توابل
fruit juice (n)	عصير فواكه	stew (n)	حساء/يخنة
onions (n)	بصل	taste (n)	مذاق
African dishes أكلات إفريقية			
kapenta (n)	كابينتا (نوع سمك)	nyama na irio (n)	نياما نا إريو (اسم أكلة)
koshari (n)	كشرى	tagine (n)	طاجن

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

article (n)	مقالة	dry (y ied) (v)	يجفف
body (n)	جسم/جسد	introduce (d) (v)	يقدم
chocolate ice cream (n)	آيس كريم شيكولاتة	introduction (n)	مقدمة
cooking pot (n)	إناء للطهى	pasta (n)	مكرونة
discuss (ed) (v)	يناقش	traditional (adj)	تقليدى
Adjectives to describe the food صفات تصف الطعام			
amazing	مذهل	great	عظيم
delicious	لذيذ	healthy	صحى
fantastic	رائع	wonderful	رائع

Check Point

Choose and complete: spices – fizzy – pot – dry

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

1. We shouldn't have a lot of .... drinks. It's unhealthy.
2. My mum added some .... to the recipe.
3. It was raining outside. I should .... my clothes.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

add > to your weight	يضيف إلى وزنك	give > advice on	يعطى نصيحة لـ
catch (caught) > fish	يصطاد سمكًا	make > snacks	يعد وجبات خفيفة
cause > illness	تسبب المرض	order > food	يطلب طعامًا
clean > teeth	نظف أسنانك	see > a doctor	يزور طبيبًا

Prepositions — حروف الجر

a glass of	كوب من	careful with	حريص على
a meal with	وجبة بها	good for	مفيد لـ
a piece of	قطعة من	look after	يعتنى بـ
at dinner time	فى وقت العشاء	type of	نوع من

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
careful	حريص	careless	مهمل
forget	ينسى	remember	يتذكر
good for	مفيد لـ	bad for	ضار لـ
hungry	جائع	full	ممتلئ

Check Point

Choose and complete: clean – hungry – of – at

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

1. Please, mum. I need a piece .... cake.
2. I can't wait. I'm very ....
3. We should .... our teeth in the morning.

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 It is a good idea to + inf. إنها فكرة جيدة أن (وتستخدم لتقديم النصيحة)

- It is a good idea to **eat** between two and four pieces of fruit a day.

2 try + (v + ing) / noun / try to + inf. يجرب بـ / يحاول أن

- I'd like to try koshari/eating koshari.
- We should try to drink a glass of milk every day.

3 enjoy + (v + ing) / noun يستمتع بـ ....

- I enjoy watching TV.
- I enjoy music.

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
careful	حريص	cautious	حريص
right	صحيح	correct	صحيح

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
ill (adj)	مريض	-ness		تحول الصفة لإسم		illness (n)	مرض
introduce (v)	يقدم	-tion		تحول الفعل لإسم		introduction (n)	مقدمة
tradition (n)	تقليد	-al		تحول الإسم لصفة		traditional (adj)	تقليدى

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 3

Pre-reading question: - What are your favourite snacks?

Look at the photos and read the introduction. What does the article give advice on? *SB page 58*

(1) وجبات خفيفة
(2) دهون
(3) ملح
(4) مذاق حلو
(5) عصير فواكه

Healthy Snacks

Everyone loves snacks[1]! But some snacks are bad for us. What is the best way to enjoy healthy snacks?



Crisps and cakes

It is OK to eat crisps and cakes sometimes, but you should not eat too many of them. Crisps have a lot of fat[2] and salt[3]. Cakes, chocolate and biscuits have a lot of fat and sugar. Too much of this type of food is bad for our bodies.



Fantastic fruit

Fruit is a great snack! It is very good for us and most people like the sweet taste[4]. You should eat between two and four pieces of fruit a day.



Beans and vegetables

Beans and vegetables do not have much sugar or fat. They are very good for us, so we should eat a lot of them. Snacks like hummus with carrot and pepper are delicious.



Be careful!

We should be careful, even with healthy foods. Fruit juice[5] has got a lot of sugar, so we should not drink too much of it. Olives, meat and fish sometimes have a lot of salt.



Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

biscuit /bɪskɪt/ taste /teɪst/

Post-reading question:

- What types of snacks should we eat a lot?

Pre-listening question:

- Should we drink a lot of water? Why/ Why not?

Listen to the interview and check your answers to Ex 6. *SB page 59*

Presenter It's important to eat the right things, but we shouldn't forget about what we drink. Dr. Randa Zaki is here to tell us more. Dr. Randa, what should we drink?

(1) دهون

(2) مشروبات

(3) مشروبات غازية

Dr. Randa Well, we should drink a lot of water. Water is great because it hasn't got any fat[1] or sugar.



Presenter OK, so we should drink more water. And which drinks are bad for us?

Dr. Randa Some drinks[2] have a lot of sugar. We shouldn't drink these because they are bad for our bodies and they are bad for our teeth.



Presenter So we shouldn't have drinks with a lot of sugar. Some fizzy drinks[3] don't have any sugar. Are they okay?

Dr. Randa No, fizzy drinks are always bad for our teeth, even when they don't have sugar.

Presenter So, we shouldn't have fizzy drinks. Are any drinks good for our teeth?

Dr. Randa Yes, milk is good for our teeth. We should try to drink a glass of milk every day.

Post-listening question:

- What do you think of fizzy drinks?

Lesson 4

Pre-reading question:

- What's your favourite food?

Read the descriptions and check your answers to Exercise 1. *SB page 60*

Food in Africa



Egypt has a lot of interesting food, but my favourite meal is koshari. It is a delicious meal with rice, pasta and tomatoes. It is very popular. Many people like it.

Marwa



I live in Morocco. Tagine(1) is a traditional meal from my country. It is a stew(2) with meat, vegetables, fruit and spices(3).

The taste is amazing(4)! The name tagine comes from the cooking pot for this food.

Hamza

(1) طاجن
(2) حساء/يخنة
(3) توابل
(4) مذهل



In Kenya, people often make nyama na irio(5) for dinner. It is a stew with meat and potatoes. It is wonderful(6)! I love eating it after school when I am very hungry!

Makena



Kapenta(7) is a popular type of fish in Zimbabwe. We catch the fish from the lake and dry it in the sun. Kapenta is very good for you, so you can eat it every day. We often cook it with tomatoes and onions(8). It is great!

Bradley

(5) نياما نا ايرو (اسم أكلة)
(6) رائع
(7) كابينتا (اسم أكلة)
(8) بصل

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

tagine /tæ'ʒi:n/ stew /stju:/ spice /spaɪs/
Zimbabwe /zɪm'bɑ:bwɪ/

Post-reading question:

- Which meal would you like to try? Why?

Listen and tick (✓) the ingredients for shepherd's pie. WB page 112



In England, people often have a traditional meal called shepherd's pie (1). You make it with meat, carrots and other vegetables with potatoes on top. It is wonderful (2). My favourite meal is shepherd's pie, and then chocolate ice cream.

(1) فطيرة الراعى

(2) رائع

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

shepherd /ʃepəʳd/ pie /paɪ/

Issues

Work in pairs. Discuss these situations. What should we do? What shouldn't we do?

اعمل مع زميلك. ناقش تلك المواقف. ماذا يجب أن نفعل؟ وماذا يجب ألا نفعل؟

1. I like sweet food, but I don't want to eat too many cakes or biscuits.
   - You shouldn't eat too many cakes or biscuits.
2. I want to look after my teeth.

   ....
3. I'm not hungry at dinner time.

   ....
4. I eat a lot of olives because they are good for me.

   ....

- You need to have healthy foods that help your body to grow.
- Unhealthy foods cause illness and add to your weight.

PRACTICE Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Don't drink lots of .... as they are not good for your body. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣

   a) fizzy drinks b) milk c) apple juice d) water

2. Koshari is a famous Egyptian .... قنا ٢٠٢٢

   a) dish b) fish c) fig d) fan

3. Cakes and chocolate have a lot of .... and sugar. المنوفية ٢٠٢٢

   a) meat b) fat c) spices d) vegetables

4. Tagine is a traditional .... الشرقية ٢٠٢٢

   a) sport b) hobby c) drink d) meal

5. Please, do not take any .... between breakfast and lunch.

   a) pots b) articles c) snacks d) snakes

6. .... give food a good taste. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣

   a) Cultures b) Spaces c) Spices d) Flavours

7. I always eat .... of fruit at lunchtime. دمياط ٢٠٢٣

   a) prices b) prizes c) spices d) pieces

8. Fruit .... has got a lot of sugar, so we should not drink too much of it.

   a) fan b) fizzy c) fat d) juice

9. She is still weak after her ....

   a) advice b) pie c) illness d) situation

10. Beans and koshari are .... meals in Egypt.

    a) bad b) unknown c) unusual d) traditional

11. People of Kenya often have meat .... for lunch.

    a) glass b) article c) pot d) stew

12. We eat when we are ....

    a) hungry b) full c) careful d) wrong

13. We went to the lake to .... fish.

    a) clean b) give c) catch d) cause

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Kapenta is a type of .... الشرقية ٢٠٢٢

   a) meat b) fruit c) vegetable d) fish

2. Koshari is a delicious meal with .... القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

   a) rice b) fruit c) fish d) potatoes

3. Can I have a .... of cake, please? بني سويف ٢٠٢٢

   a) cup b) piece c) bottle d) saucepan

4. When he drank the juice, he liked the .... very much.

   a) paste b) test c) taste d) shoes

5. Water hasn't got any .... or sugar.

   a) glass b) pan c) pot d) fat

6. Drinks with a lot of sugar are bad for our ....

   a) pieces b) pies c) bodies d) houses

7. We should try to drink a .... of milk every day.

   a) glass b) pot c) bowl d) piece

8. We love chicken and rice. They are ....!

   a) salty b) bad c) scary d) delicious

9. After washing the clothes, we should put them in the sun to ....

   a) boil b) dry c) cool d) heat

10. We can .... with our tongues. القاهرة ٢٠٢٠

    a) smell b) taste c) touch d) see

11. Everyone loves snacks, but some snacks are bad .... us.

    a) with b) at c) to d) for

12. The doctor gave me .... on the food I should eat.

    a) advise b) advice c) device d) devise

13. Tagine is the name of a meal and a cooking .... in Morocco. القليوبية ٢٠٢٣

    a) piece b) pot c) body d) glass

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Language

1 Giving advice إعطاء النصيحة

- **We use should/shouldn't to say that something is or is not a good idea.**

- عند إعطاء النصح نستخدم (should) (ينبغى أن) أو (shouldn't) (لا ينبغى أن) ثم الفعل فى المصدر.

Affirmative	Negative
Subject + **should** + **inf.**	Subject + **shouldn't** + **inf.**
- We should **drink** a lot of water. - We should **eat** healthy food.	• You shouldn't **eat** too many crisps. • You should not **drink** too much fruit juice.

Got it ?

Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Ali is ill, he shouldn't see a doctor. (..........................)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (should) لأن الجملة تعبر عن نصيحة بفعل شىء مفيد.

2. We should ate healthy food. (..........................)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (eat) لوجود should التى يأتى بعدها مصدر.

Yes/No questions:

Should + subject + inf. ....?

- **A:** Should we eat healthy snacks? **B:** Yes, you should.
- **A:** Should he play video games tonight? **B:** No, he shouldn't.

لاحظ

تستخدم should لتقديم الاقتراحات أو تقديم الرأى:

- We should visit our grandparents tonight.

Got it ?

Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Should we drank lots of fizzy drinks? (..........................)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (drink) لوجود should التى يتبعها فعل فى المصدر.

2. No, we should make noise in the library. (..........................)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (shouldn't) لوجود No الدالة على النفى.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The saucepan is very hot. You shouldn't .... it. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
   a) touched b) touches c) touch d) touching
2. You .... never leave without having breakfast.
   a) shouldn't b) should c) will d) won't
3. People should .... between two and four pieces of fruit a day.
   a) eat b) eating c) eats d) ate
4. .... eat a lot of vegetables.
   a) We have b) Have we c) Should we d) We should
5. You should .... careful with the food you eat.
   a) am b) is c) are d) be
6. We .... drink too much fruit juice. It is unhealthy.
   a) should not b) should c) must d) aren't
7. What types of snacks .... eat a lot?
   a) we should b) should we c) should d) we
8. You should always .... your mother.
   a) helping b) to help c) help d) helped
9. You .... ask the teacher to help you if you don't understand the lesson.
   a) should b) shouldn't c) have d) haven't
10. We .... eat too much cake. It has too much sugar in it. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
    a) should b) shouldn't c) must d) can

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. You should <u>cleaning</u> your teeth in the morning. (....................) القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
2. We <u>should</u> study hard for our exams? (....................) الفيوم ٢٠٢٠
3. They should <u>drinks</u> healthy water. (....................) كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢
4. Hany <u>should</u> eat snacks in the classroom. (....................) الشرقية ٢٠٢٠
5. That's a fantastic book. You should <u>reading</u> it. (....................)
6. You <u>should</u> eat too much chocolate. (....................) القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

D Skills

Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

1. How to write about healthy snacks.
كيفية الكتابة عن الوجبات الصحية الخفيفة.

- Everyone loves snacks.
- Some snacks are bad for us.
- Fruit is very good for us.
- Vegetables don't have much sugar.

Writing tips

Use linking words to connect the sentences and make the paragraph a well-knit whole.

استخدم الروابط للربط بين الجمل ولعمل فقرة محكمة كليًا.

Example

Healthy snacks/food

Everyone loves snacks! But some snacks are bad for us. It is OK to eat crisps and cakes sometimes, but you should not eat too many of them. Crisps have a lot of fat and salt. Fruit is a great snack! It is very good for us. You should eat between two and four pieces of fruit a day. Beans and vegetables do not have much sugar or fat. They are very good for us, so we should eat a lot of them. We should be careful, even with healthy foods. Fruit juice has got a lot of sugar, so we should not drink too much of it.

2. How to write a review of a café. كيفية كتابة نقد عن مقهى

- I went to a café in Cairo (الوقت).
- We had (الطعام).
- We had (الحلو) for dessert.
- I went with (الأشخاص).
- The food was (صفاته).
- I enjoyed (الحلو) most.

Example

A review of a café

I would like to write about an amazing meal I remember. I visited my cousins in Alexandria last Friday with my dad, mother and brother. They took us to a café for lunch. It was near the beach and it had big windows. It was wonderful watching the clean water of the sea. I had my favourite meal, chicken. I love chicken, but this was different. It was delicious. All my family had fish from the sea. We all liked our food. We then all had Egyptian rice pudding. There was not a lot of sugar in its recipe and it was not too sweet or unhealthy. It was a wonderful meal and I would like to visit this café again one day.

17.5

1 Read the following, then answer the questions: الجيزة ٢٠٢٣

To be healthy, our bodies need food, exercise and enough sleep. Food gives us energy, but we should choose the healthy kind of food. The good food should contain meat, rice, beans, fruit and vegetables. They build our bodies and make us strong. Fruit and vegetables give us vitamins to stop illness. They also give us fibre which helps us digest our food. Exercises help us to be fit. Enough sleep helps us to rest and renew our energy.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Give a title to this text. ....
2. What should good food contain? ....
3. Why do you think we should eat healthy food? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "us" refers to ....
   a) animals b) birds c) people d) things
5. "......................" means to do something again after a pause, usually with more energy.
   a) Renew b) Digest c) Contain d) Fit
6. Exercises help us to be ....
   a) fat b) fit c) fake d) fool

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I don't like this type .... fish. It's salty.
   a) at b) on c) of d) from
2. Eating lots of fats and sugar .... much to your weight.
   a) adds b) makes c) catches d) orders
7. Chop the vegetables into .... and eat them with your breakfast.
   a) spears b) species c) spices d) pieces
3. .... is a delicious meal with rice, pasta and tomatoes.
   a) Cheese b) Koshari c) Kapenta d) Milk
4. Eating unhealthy food .... illness.
   a) causes b) catches c) adds d) cleans
5. When we are ill, we should .... a doctor.
   a) give b) cause c) see d) give

6. I look .... my little sister when my mother is out.

a) for b) after c) at d) up

7. Crisps every day! That's very bad for you. You .... stop eating them!

a) should b) shouldn't
c) mustn't d) should never

8. You .... study hard to get high marks. القاهرة ٢٠٢٠

a) should b) shouldn't c) mustn't d) doesn't

9. You should .... that new film. It's great!

a) seeing b) to see c) sees d) see

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. It's a beautiful day. We <u>shouldn't</u> walk to the park. (..............................)
2. Children shouldn't <u>running</u> in the street. (..............................)
3. We <u>shouldn't</u> be very careful when we cook in the kitchen. (..............................)
4. <u>We should</u> go to school on time? (..............................)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on: المنوفية ٢٠٢٢

"Food you should or shouldn't eat"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

1. People should eat between two and four pieces of fruit .... day.

a) an b) in c) a d) at

2. We should try to drink a glass of milk ....

a) every day b) everyday c) every d) day

3. We .... never eat too many sweets. They are bad for our teeth.

a) should b) should to c) shouldn't d) shouldn't to

STUDY Lessons 5 & 6

Watch a video



SB pages 61 - 63 | WB pages 113 - 115

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

assistant (n)	مساعد/بائع	dessert (n)	حلوى
café (n)	مقهى	menu (n)	قائمة طعام
chef (n)	شيف/ كبير الطهاة	waiter (n)	نادل/جرسون
customer (n)	زبون		

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

basbousa (n)	بسبوسة	look (ed) like	يشبه
cheese pizza (n)	بيتزا بالجبنة	real (adj)	حقيقي
go back (v)	يعود/يرجع	restaurant (n)	مطعم
hope (d) (v)	يأمل	review (n)	نقد
kunafa (n)	كنافة	tomato pizza (n)	بيتزا بالطماطم

Check Point

Choose and complete: chef – menu – review – kunafa

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

1. My uncle is a famous ....
2. I read a .... about that restaurant.
3. My favourite dessert is ....

Language Expressions التعبيرات اللغوية

look > nice/delicious	يبدو لطيفا/ لذيذا	make >	a list	يقوم بعمل قائمة
write > a list	يكتب قائمة		sure	يتأكد

Prepositions

حروف الجر

for lunch	على الغداء	on the sea	فى البحر
look out of	ينظر من	on the water	فى الماء

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
choose	يختار	chose	chosen
write	يكتب	wrote	written

Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
usual	معتاد	unusual	غير معتاد
small	صغير	large	كبير

Check Point

Choose and complete: looks – for – on – make

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

1. I bought some bread .... lunch.
2. Students should .... sure from their answers.
3. This tagine .... delicious.

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 5

Pre-listening question:

- What kind of pizza do you like?

Listen to the people in a café. Tick (✓) the food that the customer buys.

SB page 60



Assistant Hello. What would you like today?

Customer I'd like a cheese and tomato pizza, please.

Assistant OK. Anything else?

Customer Yes, a salad, please.

Assistant Small or large?

Customer Small, please.

Assistant And would you like any drinks?

Customer Have you got any fruit juice?

Assistant Yes, we've got apple juice and orange juice.

Customer I'd like an orange juice, please.

Assistant Is that everything?

Customer Yes, it is.

Assistant That's 105 pounds, please.

Customer Thank you, here you are.



Post-listening question:

- What kind of pizza would the customer like to have?

Pre-reading question:

Lesson 6

- Did you try eating in a café? What did you like about it?

Read the review. What did Sara like most about her visit? *SB page 62*

City Café



Great visit! ★★★★★

Review by: Sara

I visited this café last weekend with my mum, my dad and my brother, Ashraf. We chose this café for lunch because it looked very nice. The walls were green and white and there were big windows. (I love looking out of the window and watching the city.)

Ashraf and I both had rice for lunch. I had fish with rice and he had chicken. My dad had fish with rice, too, and mum had a salad. It's very healthy! We all liked our food.

After lunch, Ashraf and I had desserts. This was the part we enjoyed most! There were a lot of different desserts and they all looked delicious! I chose basbousa and Ashraf had kunafa. They were amazing!!!

I'd like to visit this café again (very soon)!

Post-reading questions:

1 Why did Sara's mum have a salad?

2 Who is Ashraf?

Pre-reading question:

- What is your favourite meal?

Put the article in the correct order. *WB page 114*



1. I want to write about an amazing meal I remember. I visited my cousins in Damietta last summer with my dad, mother and sister. They took us to a café for lunch. It was near the beach and it had big windows. (It was wonderful watching the boats on the water.)

2. I had my favourite meal, Koshari. I love Koshari but this was different than usual. It was delicious. My family and cousins all had fish from the sea! We all liked our food.

3. We then all had Egyptian Rice Pudding. There was not a lot of sugar in this recipe and it was not too sweet or unhealthy.

4. It was a wonderful meal and I would like to visit this café again (one day)!

Post-reading question:

- Why did they like the café?

Pre-reading question:

- What kind of food do you like?

Read this review. Circle the topic sentence. Underline the supporting sentences.



A meal which I always remember is fish and rice at a great restaurant in Alexandria. I went there with my family. The restaurant was very near the sea so the fish was very fresh. We chose the fish and the chef cooked it for us. My parents ate their favourite fish and my brother enjoyed watching the boats on the sea. I hope we can go back to the restaurant again soon.

Post-reading question:

- Why was the fish very fresh?

Project

Write a recipe for a meal or snack.

اكتب وصفة لوجبة (رئيسية) أو وجبة خفيفة.

1. Choose a meal or a snack. Write a list of ingredients.
2. Make a list of instructions. Make sure that you:
   - Say what to do for each part of the recipe.
   - Put the instructions in the correct order.
3. Write your recipe. You can add pictures if you like.

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

▶ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The waiter gave me the .... to choose food. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

   a) list b) book c) menu d) dish

2. I ate a small pizza, but my brother ordered a .... one.

   a) tiny b) little c) small d) large

3. A/An .... is the person who buys things from a shop.

   a) waiter b) customer c) assistant d) chef

4. He cooks food in a restaurant. He is a .... الغربية ٢٠٢٣

   a) teacher b) doctor c) farmer d) chef

5. The .... works in a restaurant. القليوبية ٢٠٢٣

   a) waiter b) water c) nurse d) customer

6. We went to a nice .... to have our lunch out.

   a) classroom b) playground c) library d) restaurant

7. My father took us to a .... for lunch.

   a) café b) farm c) field d) hall

8. We chose this café for lunch because it .... very nice.

   a) saw b) looked c) made d) did

9. The tomato pizza has a good ....

   a) taste b) test c) toast d) tasty

10. I love looking .... the window and watching the cars in the streets.

    a) out of b) out c) of d) with

11. Ashraf and I both had rice .... lunch.

    a) at b) for c) on d) with

12. We .... the food we want to eat in the restaurant from the menu.

    a) boil b) cook c) add d) choose

13. I'd like to eat a cheese and tomato ....

    a) pizza b) juice c) soup d) bread

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب
من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

Speaking

Ordering food in a café

طلب طعام بالمقهى

Situation	ما يقال في هذا الموقف
Response	**جملة الرد**

online

English	Arabic
What would you like?	ماذا تريد؟
I'd like pizza.	أريد بيتزا.
Have you got any salad?	هل لديكم سلطة؟
Yes, we have. Small or large?	نعم لدينا. أتريد طبقاً كبيراً أم صغيراً؟
Large, please.	طبقًا كبيراً من فضلك.
Is that everything?	هل هذا كل ما تريد؟
Yes, thank you.	نعم، شكراً لك.
Anything else?	هل تريد شيئًا آخر؟
No, thanks.	لا، شكراً.
That's 100 pounds.	الحساب مائة جنيه.
Thank you, here you are.	شكراً، تفضل.

PRACTICE

Speaking Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

Complete the following dialogue:

Amgad is ordering food in a restaurant.

Waiter : Hello, how can I help you?

Amgad : Hello, (1).. .

Waiter : Here's the menu.

Amgad : (2).. .

Waiter : With or without rice?

Amgad : (3).. .

Waiter : Anything else?

Amgad : No ,thank you, . (4)..?

Waiter : That's 80 pounds ,please.

Amgad : (5).. .

Time to Practise

Complete the following dialogue:

A customer is at a restaurant to have his lunch.

Assistant : What would you like?

Customer : (1).. .

Assistant : And would you like any drinks?

Customer : (2)..?

Assistant : Yes, we've got tea and coffee.

Customer : (3).. .

Assistant : Coffee! OK.

Customer : (4)..?

Assistant : That's 110 pounds, please.

Customer : (5).. .

1 Complete the following dialogue:

A customer wants to eat a chicken pizza.

Waiter : How can I help you?
Customer : (1) ....?
Waiter : Yes, we've got a chicken pizza. Would you like a small or large one?
Customer : (2) ....
Waiter : Would you like a drink?
Customer : Yes, please. (3) ....
Waiter : OK.
Customer : (4) ....?
Waiter : That's 150 pounds.
Customer : (5) ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The waiter asked me what food I'd like to ....
   a) say b) tell c) bring d) order
2. Mum likes eating salad. It is ....
   a) healthy b) unhealthy c) bad d) weak
3. We catch fish from the ....
   a) lake b) mountain c) forest d) cave
4. When we sat on the table, a waiter offered us the ....
   a) diagram b) poster c) list d) menu
5. I like pizza. It's a delicious ....
   a) mail b) male c) meal d) mile
6. Tagine is a .... with meat, vegetables fruit and spices.
   a) straw b) stew c) rice d) sugar
7. We went to the .... yesterday to have our dinner. It was great.
   a) café b) coffee c) cinema d) park
8. We should .... lots of fish. It doesn't have a lot of fat in it.
   a) had b) having c) has d) have

9. Lama feels tired. She .... have a rest.

a) needs b) should
c) has d) does

10. What kinds of food should we ....?

a) eating b) eat
c) ate d) eaten

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Students shouldn't making noise in the library. (....................)
2. The doctor told him that he shouldn't eat less. He's too fat. (....................)
3. You shouldn't help your little brother. (....................)
4. **A:** I'm very ill. **B:** You should go to school today. (....................)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"A review of a restaurant you visited"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Read this review if you want to .... sure that this café is amazing.

a) have b) take
c) do d) make

2 My father is very ill. He .... have unhealthy food.

a) shouldn't b) should
c) can d) must

Review on Unit 6

Vocabulary

amazing	مذهل
peppers	فلفل
bowl	سلطانية
raisins	زبيب
recipe	وصفة طعام
cinnamon	قرفة
rice pudding	أرز بودنج (حلو)
coconut	جوز الهند
salt	ملح
saucepan	قدر صغير
snack	وجبة خفيفة
fat	دهون
spices	توابل
stew	حساء/يخنة
fizzy drinks	مشروبات غازية
sweet taste	مذاق حلو
healthy	صحى
tagine	طاجن
hummus	حمص
teaspoon	ملعقة شاى
ingredients	مقادير/مكونات
olives	زيتون

Language

1 Some/ any: بعض/ أى

(some)

- There are some nuts.
- There is some cheese.

(any)

- Are there any chips?
- There isn't any cheese.

2 a lot of / enough / too many / too much: كثير من / كافٍ / كثير جدًا

a lot of / enough + اسم لا يُعد / اسم جمع

- My little brother eats a lot of sugar every day and that is too bad.
- There aren't enough chairs for everyone to sit on.

too many + اسم يُعد، جمع /

too much + اسم لا يُعد

- There are too many raisins.
- There's too much sugar.

3 Giving advice : إعطاء النصح

- We should drink a lot of water.
- You shouldn't eat too many crisps.

Skills

1 Ask and answer questions about food:

- What food do you like?
  - I like salad and meat.
- What food don't you like?
  - I don't like olives.
- Is there any cheese?
  - Yes, there is.
- Are there any biscuits?
  - No, there aren't.

2 Ordering food in a café:

- What would you like?
  - I'd like pizza.
- Have you got any salad?
  - Yes, we have. Small or large?
- Is that everything?
  - Yes, thank you.
- Anything else?
  - No, thanks.
- That's 100 pounds.
  - Thank you, here you are.

Question Bank

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 6

24

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1. What did you have in the café?
   a) Fish. b) Basbousa. c) Koshari. d) Kunafa.
2. What did your cousins have?
   a) Fish. b) Basbousa. c) Koshari. d) Kunafa.
3. How was the food?
   a) Hot. b) Spicy. c) Salty. d) Delicious.
4. Who liked the food?
   a) You. b) Your family. c) Your cousins. d) All of us.

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Sama is asking Nada about her favourite dish.

Sama : Hi, Nada!

Nada : Hi, Sama!

Sama : (1) ....?

Nada : Molokhia. What about you?

Sama : I love Koshari.

Nada : (3) ....?

Sama : Yes, of course. Rice, pasta, hummus and lentils.

Nada : Good. (4) ....

Sama : Will you try it?

Nada : (5) ....

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Africa has a lot of interesting kinds of food. Egypt, for example is famous for "koshari". It is a delicious meal with rice, pasta, tomato sauce and fried onions. It's very popular; many people like it. In Morocco, there is a traditional meal called

"tagine", it's a stew with meat, vegetables, fruit and spices. The taste is amazing, the name of tagine comes from the cooking pot for this food. In Zimbabwe, people often eat "kapenta". It's a type of fish which people dry in the sun. They often cook it with tomatoes and onions. It's great. In Kenya, people like "nyama na irio"; it's a stew with meat and potatoes. People there often make it for dinner. Tell me, which food you would like to try. For me, I like most traditional Egyptian food: koshari, falafel and kebab. All have special flavours.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?

....

2. What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?

....

3. Why do you think people in Egypt like koshari?

....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "type" means ....

a) piece b) snack c) kind d) slice

5. People of Kenya often have meat stew for ....

a) breakfast b) dinner c) lunch d) break

6. The writer likes koshari which has got rice, pasta and .... sauce.

a) potato b) meat c) vegetable d) tomato

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Roz Bel laban is the name for the Egyptian rice .... الجيزة ٢٠٢٠

a) falafel b) pudding c) ful medames d) koshari

2. Which of these can you boil water in? قنا ٢٠٢٢

a) Ball. b) Cup. c) Glass. d) Saucepan.

3. Most children love food that has sweet ....

a) kind b) type c) taste d) test

4. Waiter: That's 150 pounds. ....: Here you are.

a) Helper b) Customer c) Seller d) Worker

5. We should .... our teeth before we sleep.

a) give b) catch c) add d) clean

6. We bought a lot of vegetables and made a nice ....

a) chips b) salad c) kunafa d) rice pudding

7. I'd like to have fish and rice .... lunch today.

a) in b) of c) for d) on

8. There .... some water in the bottle. كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢

a) isn't b) is c) aren't d) are

9. Yara likes to eat .... meat for dinner.

a) any b) some c) a d) an

10. She's always tired. She .... not go to bed late every night.

a) hasn't b) shouldn't c) should d) must

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. She has <u>any</u> apple. (.....................................) الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
2. <u>Is</u> there any mobile phones? (.....................................) الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢
3. He can't sleep as he has too <u>many</u> coffee. (.....................................) القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
4. We should <u>has</u> a lot of water a day. (.....................................)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"A healthy meal you had" WB

....

....

....

....

....

....

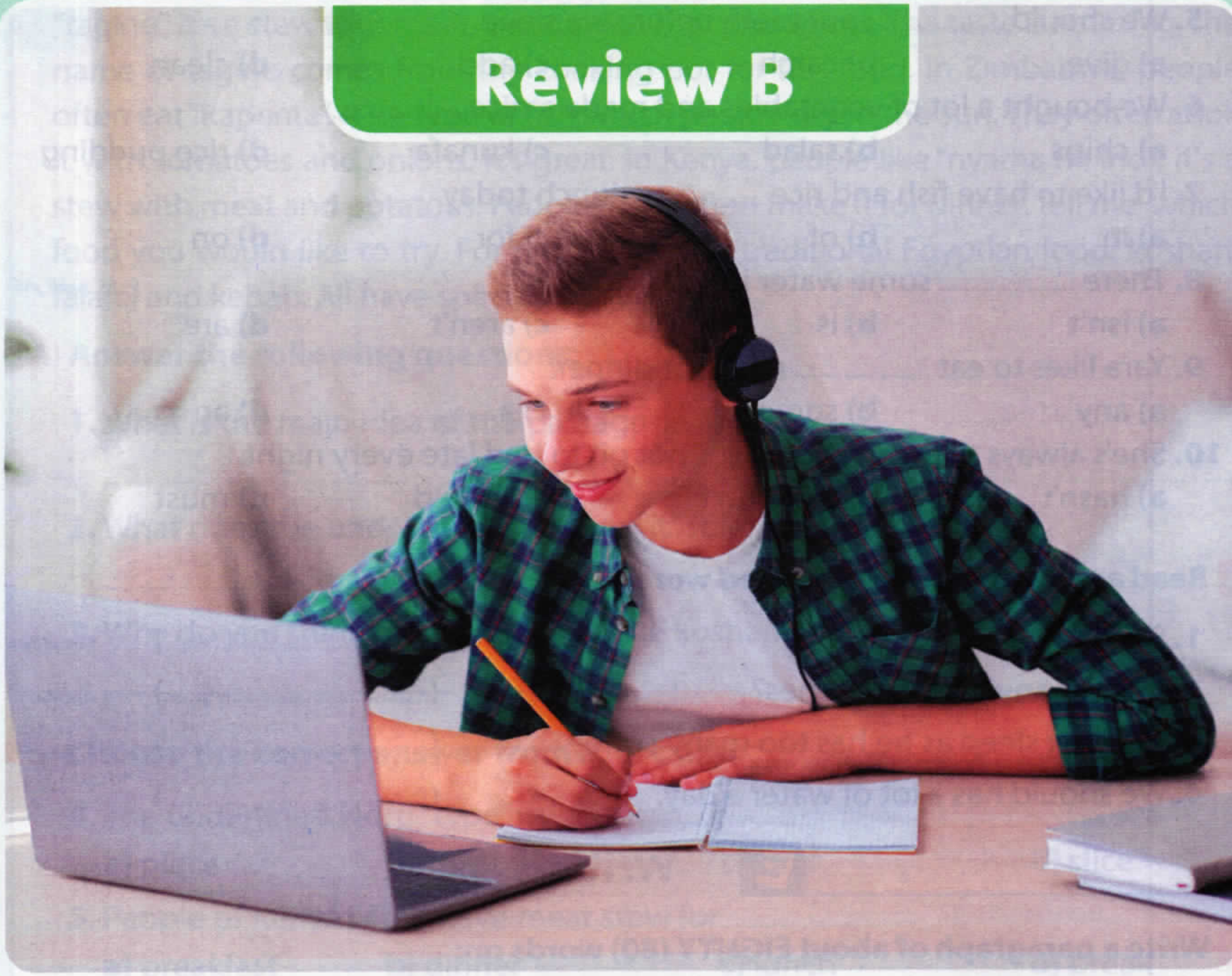
....

....

....

....

Review B







Units 4, 5 & 6

SB pages 64 & 65 | WB pages 116 & 117

Lesson 1

Pre-reading question:

- What do you do at Sham El-Nessim?

Match paragraphs 1–4 with the headings a–d.

Sham El-Nessim

1. What and when is it?

Sham El-Nessim is my favourite time of the year. We enjoy it at the start of spring. Sham El-Nessim started in 2700 BCE!

(1) فسيخ



2. What people do

Today, most Egyptians have a picnic in a park or next to the river with their families. Many people also go to the beach, where they make sandcastles and swim in the sea.



3. A recipe

On this day, we eat a lot of special food. Do you want to know how to enjoy feseekh[1]?

Add lemon juice to the fish and have it with salad. It's delicious, but you should buy it from a good shop and you shouldn't eat too much!

4. What I did

Last year at Sham El-Nessim, we went to Alexandria. We visited our family and went to the beach. We rode our bikes and played games. Do you know what we are doing in this photo? We are painting eggs! We always do this. We didn't see our cousins last year, but we made a video call. It was fun to talk to them on the laptop.

Do you know any other special food? Click on the icon at the top of this website. Take a photo and write an email about it. Send us a recipe for it.

Post-reading questions:

1. How do you eat feseekh?
2. What did you do at Sham El-Nessim last year?

Lesson 2

Pre-listening question:

- How do you make pancakes?

Listen and number the pictures in the correct order. *SB page 65*



Speaker: In the UK[1], many people eat pancakes[2] at the start of spring. How do you make pancakes?

Put all your ingredients in a bowl and add two eggs. Stir everything together. Put some butter in pan. When the butter is hot, you should start cooking your pancakes!

Cook each pancake for 2 to 3 minutes on one side. Then cook the other side of the pancake.

Eat your pancakes with honey[3] and nuts or with sugar and lemon juice.

Hmm, they are delicious.

(1) المملكة المتحدة

(2) الكعك المحلى

(3) عسل النحل

Post-listening question:

- What do you think of pancakes?

Read the email and complete Judy's shopping list. *WB page 116*

Hi Judy,

The family party is on Saturday. There are ten people.

Can you help me and buy the shopping?

Five people like fish. Five people like chicken. The children like fizzy drinks, but they aren't healthy. So, we can have orange juice. Four bottles are enough for the children. We can all drink water, so we need eight bottles. Buy some tea, too, please.

Please go to the shops and then check we have enough chairs.

Many thanks

Mona

End of Term Practice

WB pages 118 & 119

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1. Shorouk goes to school ....
   a) alone b) with Lubna only
   c) with her mother d) with Lubna and Alaa
2. Shorouk is in the .... stage.
   a) nursery b) preparatory
   c) secondary d) university
3. Shorouk's parents work in ....
   a) the same place b) different places
   c) the same school d) a factory
4. .... work in a hospital.
   a) Alaa's parents b) Lubna's parents
   c) Shorouk's parents d) No parents

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Nesma and Reem go to the school library.

Reem : Good morning, Nesma, when will we start doing our research?
Nesma : During the break.
Reem : Great. Where (1)..?
Nesma : In the school library.
Reem : Are (2)..?
Nesma : Of course, I'm ready.
Reem : Is it easy to find the books we need?
Nesma : (3).. .
Reem : Who will help us there?
Nesma : (4).. .
Reem : I hope (5).. .

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name is Mona. I want to be a doctor here in Cairo so I always work hard at school. My favourite subjects are science and computer studies. I also want to speak good English to other children in different places. My teacher is very good, but I also like to use technology. I use a tablet to practise my English. Sometimes I use my phone, too! Last year, I learnt English in London with my family. It was fantastic! I cycled to summer school every day, and I met students from different countries. I now have a friend from Uganda! My favourite place was a river in Cambridge. It was very beautiful, but I didn't swim in it!

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What are Mona's favourite subjects?

   ....

2. Why does she want to speak English?

   ....

3. Is Mona right to use technology? Why?

   ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "it" refers to ....
   - a) Cairo
   - b) technology
   - c) a river
   - d) summer school
5. Where is Mona now?
   - a) In Egypt.
   - b) In England.
   - c) In Uganda.
   - d) In Cambridge.
6. What does Mona use to practise her English?
   - a) Her tablet.
   - b) Her phone.
   - c) Her laptop.
   - d) a and b.
7. Mona is talking about her ....
   - a) pets and hobbies
   - b) life and friends
   - c) boss at work
   - d) travels to Uganda

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. There are too .... people on this beach. Let's go to a different one.

a) many **b)** much
c) enough **d)** few

2. My uncle is very .... He chooses things wisely.

a) strong **b)** tall
c) fast **d)** sensible

3. I love sports. .... is my favourite school subject.

a) PE **b)** Maths
c) Computer studies **d)** Art

4. The Egyptian football team arrived .... Uganda two days ago.

a) in **b)** at
c) for **d)** from

5. On a .... weekend, Omar reads books at the club library.

a) tropical **b)** physical
c) spicy **d)** typical

6. Ahmed likes history because he loves .... about the past.

a) learns **b)** to learning
c) learning **d)** learnt

7. My father and mother are my ....

a) grandchildren **b)** parents
c) cousins **d)** daughters

8. The tourists are .... a selfie next to the River Nile.

a) touching **b)** drawing
c) relaxing **d)** taking

9. Tom is writing about his weekend in his online ....

a) 3D printer
b) diary
c) mouse
d) laptop

10. Why don't we .... swimming next week?

a) go
b) do
c) make
d) see

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. What do you have for breakfast yesterday? (..................................)
2. There are too much salt in this recipe. (..................................)
3. Amr shouldn't drink too many fruit juice. (..................................)
4. Gymnastics are my favourite sport. (..................................)

E Writing

6 Write an email of 80 words about a typical day in your life.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Listening Texts

Unit 1 Test yourself 1 & 2

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My family lives in Cairo, but my dad works in Paris. He works very hard. My mother is a teacher. My two brothers and I go to the same school.

Unit 1 Al-Adwaa Test

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Heidi is an orphan girl. She goes to live with her grandfather in a small house. Heidi sleeps in the attic of the house. She drinks goat's milk.

Unit 2 Test yourself 1 & 2

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My father works with computers. My mother is a teacher. My dad never works at the weekend, but sometimes my mum looks at students' homework! We often go shopping.

Unit 2 Al-Adwaa Test

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

In the USA, there is a lot of snow in winter. The children travel to school on a snowmobile. It's cold, but it's fast- and fun!

Unit 3 Test yourself 1 & 2

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My best friend is Basel. He has got straight hair and brown eyes. He is kind. He likes reading and playing video games. His favourite subject is English.

Unit 3 Al-Adwaa Test

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My favourite book is called *"Gulliver's Travels"*, by Jonathan Swift. It is about a clever doctor. He works on a boat but there is a big storm.

Unit 4 Test yourself 1 & 2

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

I love technology! My favourite hobby is playing video games. I usually play them on my laptop, but sometimes I play them on my mobile phone.

Unit 4 Al-Adwaa Test

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Rana is my best friend. Her favourite subject is computer studies. She likes technology. She spends a lot of time on her laptop playing video games.

Unit 5 Test yourself 1 & 2

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Last winter, Ragab travelled to Aswan. He travelled with his family. They took a train. It was a fantastic journey. He bought many souvenirs from the shops there.

Unit 5 Al-Adwaa Test

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

I went to Jordan by plane last holiday. It was great. We stayed in a holiday flat by the beach. We swam every day. We visited a lot of famous places.

Unit 6 Test yourself 1 & 2

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Last week, I went with my mum, dad and my little sister to a cafe near the river. I had chicken with rice, but my parents had rice with fish. My dad chose this place because it looked nice.

Unit 6 Al-Adwaa Test

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

I had my favourite meal, koshari in a café for lunch. My family and cousins all had fish from the sea! We all liked our food. It was delicious.

End of Term Practice

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Shorouk is 12 years old. She is in preparatory one. She goes to school with her friends Lubna and Alaa. Shooruk's parents are doctors at a hospital.

Challenging Questions Answers

Unit 1

Lessons 1 & 2

1. a) same 2. d) have
3. c) We

Lessons 3 & 4

1. Are 2. good at
3. doesn't have 4. is

Lessons 5 & 6

1. d) have 2. c) find
3. b) on

Unit 2

Lessons 1 & 2

1. d) after 2. a) never does
3. c) Sometimes

Lessons 3 & 4

1. today's 2. chemist's
3. They

Lessons 5 & 6

1. a) when 2. a) quite
3. d) have

Unit 3

Lessons 1 & 2

1. c) description 2. d) is able
3. a) have

Lessons 3 & 4

1. c) interesting 2. c) adjectives
3. a) shout

Lessons 5 & 6

1. d) by 2. b) called
3. c) fun

Unit 4

Lessons 1 & 2

1. a) design 2. d) laptop computers
3. c) a

Lessons 3 & 4

1. b) have 2. d) is using
3. c) are always

Lessons 5 & 6

1. c) answer 2. a) when
3. b) don't

Unit 5

Lessons 1 & 2

1. b) echo 2. a) call out
3. c) called

Lessons 3 & 4

1. c) get to 2. a) in
3. b) didn't go

Lessons 5 & 6

1. c) snails 2. a) for example
3. d) were you

Unit 6

Lessons 1 & 2

1. d) equipment 2. a) cinnamon
3. c) a

Lessons 3 & 4

1. c) a 2. a) every day
3. a) should

Lessons 5 & 6

1. d) make
2. a) shouldn't

رقم الإيداع: ٩٦٢٤ / ٢٠٢٣

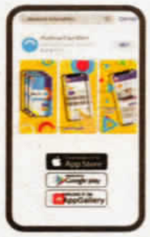
ترخيص وزارة التربية والتعليم
رقم ١٠٣/٩/٢/١١٣

NAHDET MISR
PUBLISHING HOUSE

(اللغة الإنجليزية / الصف الأول الإعدادى)

معاك الكتاب معاك الAPP

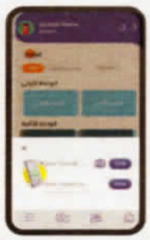
نزّل تطبيق الأضواء



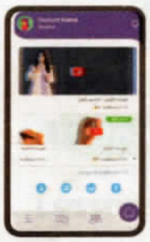
1 نــزّل



2 سجّــل



3 أدخل كودك الشخصى



4 احصل على منهجك التفاعلى مجانًا

اسـم الطـالـب: ....

الـعـنـــوان: ....

البريد الإلكترونـى: ....

الهاتف/ المحمـول: ....

المحـافـظـــة: ....

المـــدرســـة: ....

الإدارة التعليـميـة: ....

اسم مدرس المادة: ....

الـــكـــــود:

/aladwaa

ALADWAA Gem

NAHDET MISR

6 221133 000895

لغة إنجليزية/ ع1 /ف1/ 2024

ENGLISH

حسام عبد العظيم

أستاذ اللغة الإنجليزية

٠١٠٠٧٢٢٧٥٥٧ / ٠١٢٢٢٩٩٤٢٥٣

Hossam Abdelazim

Master of English language

USA - UK

st **PREP**

FIRST TERM

AL ADWAA
Gem

2024

NEW HELLO!

Ongoing Assessment & Exams Booklet



AL ADWAA

Gem

New Hello!

الصف الأول الإعدادى

الفصل الدراسى الأول

2024

Ongoing Assessment & Exams Booklet

7

راجع إجاباتك

نزل إجابات الكتاب بصيغة PDF

ذاكر صح

هنا تجد كودك الشخصى

Contents

Check Your English

1 This is a fact file of some students. Look and make sentences:

1
Name: Basel
Age: 12
Likes: football
Favourite food: fish with rice



2
Name: Fatma
Age: 13
Likes: books
Favourite food: chicken



3
Name: Maher and Hany
Age: 12
Likes: tennis
Favourite food: ice cream





أكمل المربع التالى بمعلومات خاصة بك.

4
Name: ....
Age: ....
Likes: ....
Favourite food: ....

His name is Basel. He is twelve. He likes football. His favourite food is fish with rice.
(Answered Example)

....

....

2 Complete fact file 4 for you and write sentences like those in Exercise 1:

....

....

3 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع نهاية الكتاب

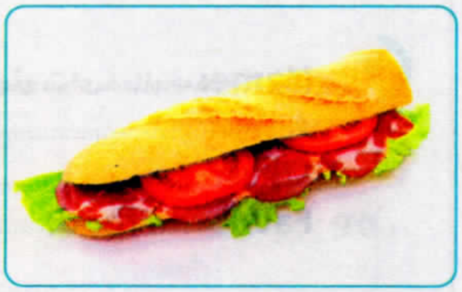
Listen

1. The bag is .... (Answered Example)
   a) new b) Injy's c) Lama's d) *Lama's sister's*
2. The pencil case is ....
   a) red b) blue c) yellow d) green
3. Lama has got ....
   a) a book about sport b) a toy animal
   c) an English book d) a book about animals
4. She has also got ....
   a) some oranges b) an orange c) an apple d) a ball
5. The girls are in ....
   a) a school b) a house c) a park d) a shop

4 Read and correct the mistakes in these sentences:

1. Hatem don't like sports.
   Hatem doesn't like sports. (Answered Example)
2. I want play tennis this afternoon.
   ....
3. Look! Those children jumping very high.
   ....
4. I visit my cousins yesterday.
   ....
5. You speak English very good.
   ....

5 Read the text, then answer the questions:



Mr. Taha is a teacher in Port Said. He teaches English. On Monday, Tuesday and Wednesday, he makes himself a sandwich for lunch. He eats it in the school. On Thursday and Friday, he usually walks home. His wife makes him his favourite lunch; chicken and potatoes. Yesterday, it rained a lot. The weather is sometimes rainy in Port Said. Mr. Taha did not want to walk home, so he went to a restaurant near the school. He loves the food there. The cook makes it all himself.

1. Where does Mr. Taha work?
   He works in a school in Port Said. (Answered Example)
2. What does he usually eat for lunch?
   ....
3. What does he usually do twice a week?
   ....

4. Why didn't Mr. Taha want to walk home yesterday?

....

5. Is the weather always rainy in Port Said?

....

6. Who makes the food in the restaurant?

....

7. What does the underlined word "there" refer to?

....

6 Do these words have the same sound? Listen and put (✓) or (✗):

1. washed/talked	☐	2. called/waited	☐
3. blue/duck	☐	4. cake/home	☐
5. shop/chick	☐	6. father/brother	☐
7. candy/July	☐	8. tail/gate	☐

7 What did they do at the weekend? Look at the table and answer the questions:

	Friday	Saturday
Ashraf	play football	visit cousins
Yunis	bake a cake	work in his father's shop
Riham	visit friends	play tennis



1. Did Yunis play football on Friday?
No, he didn't. He baked a cake. (Answered Example)
2. Did Ashraf work in his father's shop on Saturday?
....
3. What did Ashraf do on Friday?
....
4. Did Riham visit her cousins on Friday?
....
5. Where did Yunis go on Saturday?
....
6. What did Riham do on Saturday?
....

8 Write about your weekend. What do you usually do? What did you do yesterday?

....
....
....
....

Part 1 Ongoing Assessment



1 **Check Your Vocabulary**
إملاء خاص بكل درسين

2 **Lessons Quiz**
نموذج اختبار قصير خاص بكل درسين

Check Your Vocabulary

25

Vocabulary

أحفاد	....	الجد الأكبر	....
عيد ميلاد	....	الوالدان	....
بالغ من العمر	....	عم/خال	....
مقابلة/حوار	....	ابن/ابنة (العم - الخال)	....
مفكرة/يوميات	....	ابن	....
آلة موسيقية	....	ابنة	....

Language Expressions & Prepositions

يمارس هوايات	....	ينتمي إلى/يخص	....
يقوم بعمل تطوعي	....	صورة لـ	....
يذهب للسباحة	....	فخور بـ	....

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

....	....	يقابل ....
....	....	يقود/يسوق ....

Words and Opposites

Word	Opposite (Antonym)
true	....
finish	....

Definitions

.... : a group of people who play music together

.... : brothers or sisters who are the same age

.... : musical instruments which you hit to make a noise

Unit 1 Lessons 1 & 2 Quiz

15

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

Vocabulary

1. My uncle has a daughter. She is my ....
   a) cousin b) son c) sister d) aunt
2. My sister wants to .... music. She takes music lessons.
   a) enjoy b) see c) play d) listen
3. Pupils shouldn't .... noise in the class.
   a) do b) make c) play d) take
4. My sister wants to learn a .... instrument. She prefers the violin.
   a) drum b) band c) music d) musical
5. We usually visit our grandmother .... Saturday.
   a) for b) at c) on d) in
6. .... is a game for two people.
   a) Basketball b) Handball c) Chess d) Football
7. ".................... work" is work you do for no money.
   a) Easy b) Worthless c) Voluntary d) Hard

Language

8. .... father will take us to the zoo tomorrow.
   a) Our b) Ours c) Us d) We
9. These are Nader's shoes. They are ....
   a) your b) yours c) his d) hers
10. My uncle is ill. I'll visit .... tomorrow.
   a) he b) his c) him d) hers

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

5

1. <u>Her</u> name is Waleed. He's a teacher. (....................)
2. That woman likes <u>his</u> children. (....................)
3. Mai and Dina are my friends. I like <u>her</u>. (....................)
4. Your car is old, but <u>my</u> is new. (....................)
5. I play chess on Mondays. My brother plays chess on Mondays, <u>also</u>. (....................)

Check Your Vocabulary

25

Vocabulary

مغامرة	....	مطار	....
خروف/أغنام	....	كم المدة	....
مصر	....	خبز	....
عنزة	....	شاطئ	....

Language Expressions & Prepositions

يمشى فى الجبال	....	يُجرى مكالمة فيديو	....
يرى الطيور	....	يعمل بجد	....
يفكر فى	....	يتكلم إلى/مع	....
بعيدًا عن	....	جيد فى	....
يتواصل مع	....	فى قمة	....

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

....	....	يلحق بـ ....
....	....	يعرف ....

Words and Opposites

Word	Opposite (Antonym)
beautiful	....
big	....

Definitions

....: a child with no mother or father

....: a room at the top of a house

....: a place with lots of houses and shops

Unit 1 Lessons 3 & 4 — Quiz

15

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

Vocabulary

1. He wrote a book about his .... in the forest.
   a) mountains b) orphans c) adventures d) attic
2. I love my dad, and I'm happy when he's .... home.
   a) in b) at c) of d) on
3. I usually .... to my friends on the phone.
   a) fly b) catch c) take d) talk
4. He goes to the airport to catch a ....
   a) plane b) boat c) car d) train
5. We go to the .... to swim.
   a) park b) mountain c) beach d) airport
6. My cousin is very good .... drawing.
   a) in b) of c) at d) about
7. A/An .... is a place with lots of houses and shops.
   a) city b) attic c) mountain d) beach

Language

8. Basmala .... happy when she meets her friends.
   a) feel b) feels c) feeling d) to feel
9. These children .... play football on Mondays. They play on Fridays.
   a) not b) doesn't c) don't d) aren't
10. What .... you listen to on the radio?
    a) are b) does c) do d) were

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

5

1. What sports <u>do</u> he play? (..............................)
2. My brother <u>have</u> many friends. (..............................)
3. A: <u>Does</u> you play chess? B: Yes, I do. (..............................)
4. He gives money to help people <u>building</u> schools. (..............................)
5. He'd like <u>drinking</u> orange juice. (..............................)

Check Your Vocabulary

20

Vocabulary

وصف	الريف ....
لاعب رياضي	أفضل صديق ....
الألعاب الأولمبية	الفيزياء ....
يوازن	حوض السباحة ....
حياة مشغولة/مزدحمة	ألعاب الجمباز ....
مجاور	لاعبة جمباز ....
يتدرب لمدة	أفضل/أول ....

Language Expressions & Prepositions

يبقى قويًا	يجد صعوبة ....
ينتقل إلى	يحقق أحلامًا ....

Words and Opposites

Word	Opposite (Antonym)
strong	....
healthy	....

Quiz

15

1 Complete the following dialogue:

5

Speaking

Sama is asking Sarah about her best friend Ghada.

Sama : This is a photo of my cousin.
Sarah : (1) ....?
Sama : Her name is Ghada.
Sarah : How old is she?
Sama : (2) ....
Sarah : Where does she live?
Sama : (3) ....
Sarah : (4) ....?
Sama : Her favourite food is fish with rice. Do you like them?
Sarah : (5) ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

Vocabulary

1. I can't pick up that box. My arms are ....
   a) strong b) week c) weak d) long
2. My sister wants to be a .... She likes gymnastics.
   a) swimmer b) gymnast c) singer d) footballer
3. Players must .... before the match.
   a) find b) move c) study d) train
4. Habiba Marzouk tries to .... between her studies and her sport.
   a) bring b) spell c) train d) balance
5. .... is a difficult subject, but interesting.
   a) Olympics b) Physics c) Gymnastics d) Athletics
6. .... the evenings, my sister watches TV.
   a) Of b) On c) In d) At
7. Many players' lives are .... They train for many hours.
   a) old b) new c) free d) busy

Language

8. I .... think you are right.
   a) am not b) aren't c) don't d) doesn't
9. Omar loves his dogs. .... plays with them every day.
   a) They b) He c) It d) Him
10. .... you speak English?
    a) Do b) Does c) Are d) Have

Check Your Vocabulary

25

Vocabulary

الاقتصاد المنزلى	....	اللغة العربية	....
الحياة اليومية	....	دراسات الحاسب	....
مكتبة (للقراءة)	....	العلوم	....
مدير المدرسة	....	الدراسات الاجتماعية	....
مختلف	....	الدين	....
جدول الحصص	....	طريق	....

Language Expressions & Prepositions

يصل إلى البيت	....	لديه حصة	....
فى الفسحة	....	حان الوقت لـ	....
يستغرق وقتًا طويلًا	....	يؤدى الواجب المنزلى	....

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

....	....	يسمع	....
....	....	يختار	....

Words and Opposites

Word	Opposite (Antonym)
typical	....
start	....

Definitions

............................: It rings when a lesson starts and finishes.

............................: a big room for a lot of students and teachers

............................: It is in a school. You play games here.

Unit 2
Lessons 1 & 2

Quiz

15

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

Vocabulary

1. In .... lessons, we learn about countries.
   a) religion b) drama c) science d) social studies
2. We have lunch .... half past three.
   a) on b) at c) in d) to
3. My brother always works hard to .... his tasks on time.
   a) finish b) start c) get d) receive
4. The school .... has a lot of books. We always read in it.
   a) bedroom b) flag c) library d) playground
5. We learn how to draw in .... lessons.
   a) drama b) music c) maths d) art
6. On a .... weekend, Omar reads books at the club library.
   a) hard b) musical c) bad d) typical
7. The bell .... when a lesson starts and finishes.
   a) dreams b) rings c) does d) moves

Language

8. Maths .... my favourite subject.
   a) am b) is c) are d) does
9. They .... very tired after the match.
   a) never are b) are always c) never d) always are
10. We .... stay at home on weekends. We always go out.
   a) usually b) never c) often d) sometimes

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

5

1. These girls <u>never</u> help their mothers do the housework. They are very active. (....................)
2. My mother usually <u>do</u> the washing up after having dinner. (....................)
3. Our teacher <u>gives sometimes</u> us homework. (....................)
4. My uncle <u>never is</u> angry. He is very kind. (....................)
5. I always <u>walks</u> to school. (....................)

Check Your Vocabulary

25

Vocabulary

حجرة المكتب	....	كراسة/دفتر	....
قميص كرة قدم	....	دراجة بخارية	....
الشتاء	....	عربة الثلج	....
قرية	....	زى موحد	....
زورق طويل خفيف/الكنو	....	مقلمة	....
طائرة عمودية	....	قواعد	....

Language Expressions & Prepositions

يقوم برحلة سفر	....	يقول أشياء غير طيبة	....
فى الوقت المحدد	....	يتبع القواعد المدرسية	....
يركب الدراجة إلى	....	يؤدى الواجب المنزلى	....
فى عربة الثلج	....	على اليمين	....

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

ينسى	....	....	....
يرتدى	....	....	....

Words and Opposites

Word	Opposite (Antonym)
cheap	....
kind	....
dangerous	....

Quiz

15

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

Vocabulary

1. If someone is ……………, they behave in an unfriendly way.
   a) busy b) free c) kind d) unkind
2. My teachers always ask me not to …………… my books.
   a) remember b) do c) forget d) sleep
3. We take a small …………… to catch fish in the lake.
   a) train b) boat c) bus d) camel
4. I have a good bike, so I …………… to school every day.
   a) cycle b) wear c) move d) take
5. I usually wear my …………… when it's sunny.
   a) cup b) cap c) road d) office
6. My school is …………… the other side of the lake.
   a) of b) on c) at d) in
7. A …………… is an animal that can carry heavy things.
   a) goat b) sheep c) bird d) camel

Language

8. **A:** Is that your mother's car? **B:** No. It's my …………… .
   a) sister's b) sister' c) sister d) sisters
9. He is using his …………… computer.
   a) fathers b) father's c) father' d) father
10. Where are the …………… parents?
    a) children b) childrens' c) children's d) children'

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

5

1. The girl in the photo is Sara sister. (……………)
2. Do you know the new students names? (……………)
3. This is my teachers' new laptop. It's his. (……………)
4. Tamer mother has lots of hobbies. (……………)
5. Next week' test will be easy. (……………)

Check Your Vocabulary

Vocabulary

المرحلة الإعدادية	....	إلى حد ما	....
مفضل	....	اللغة الفرنسية	....
وجبة العشاء	....	لغة	....

Language Expressions & Prepositions

فى العطلة الأسبوعية	....	يستحم	....
يذهب للتسوق	....	يؤدى أنشطة	....
فى الأتوبيس	....	يأتى إلى البيت من	....

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

....	....	يأتى	....
....	....	يستيقظ	....
....	....	يرتدى	....

Words and Opposites

Word	Opposite (Antonym)
friendly	....

Definitions

....: a simple message sent through the internet

....: we paint and draw in this lesson

....: we learn about numbers in this lesson

....: the language of England

Unit 2 Lessons 5 & 6 — Quiz

15

1 Complete the following dialogue:

5

Speaking

Salwa is asking Manal about her school.

Salwa : Hello, Manal. How are you?
Manal : Hello, Salwa. (1).. .
Salwa : How is your school?
Manal : (2).. .
Salwa : Is it far from your house?
Manal : (3).. .
Salwa : (4)..?
Manal : I go to school by bus.
Salwa : (5)..?
Manal : It takes about 30 minutes.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

Vocabulary

1. We usually .... home from school at two o'clock.
   a) put on   b) read   c) have   d) come
2. We have lots of activities to .... at school.
   a) look   b) go   c) do   d) make
3. My uncle travels .... the world. He travels to many countries.
   a) around   b) at   c) by   d) on
4. He likes to .... a shower when he gets up in the morning.
   a) do   b) have   c) go   d) make
5. He speaks Arabic, English and French. He likes ....
   a) breaks   b) subjects   c) languages   d) lessons
6. He was very .... when he offered to help us.
   a) friendly   b) unfriendly   c) unkind   d) weak
7. Chess is my .... sport. I always play it with my friends.
   a) cheap   b) real   c) false   d) favourite

Language

8. Hagar and Nader .... in the same city.
   a) live   b) lives   c) living   d) is living
9. We .... speak Arabic in the English lesson.
   a) always   b) never   c) often   d) sometimes
10. I sometimes ride my .... bike on holidays.
   a) brother   b) brothers   c) brother'   d) brother's

Check Your Vocabulary

25

Vocabulary

شارب	....	يشبه	....
نجم رياضى	....	مشهور	....
عداء/متسابق جرى	....	شعر داكن (أسود)	....
فريق	....	شعر مستقيم (ناعم)	....
عادى/طبيعى	....	شعر مجعد	....
هدية	....	شعر أشقر	....
ابتسامة كبيرة	....	لحية	....

Language Expressions & Prepositions

يسافر حول	....	يحرز/يسجل هدفًا	....
يلعب لصالح	....	يقفز عاليًا	....
يلتقط	....	يتكلم مع/إلى	....

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

....	....	يفوز/يكسب ....
....	....	يبنى ....
....	....	يطير ....

Words and Opposites

Word	Opposite (Antonym)
fast	....
poor	....

Unit 3
Lessons 1 & 2

Quiz

15

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

Vocabulary

1. He is a great .... of Al Ahly team. He watches all matches.
   a) fan b) fun c) runner d) beard
2. Doaa Elghobashy plays volleyball .... Egypt.
   a) by b) of c) at d) for
3. Lionel Messi .... 7 goals at the 2022 World Cup in Qatar.
   a) played b) scored c) watched d) picked up
4. Famous people can't have a .... life.
   a) dark b) straight c) normal d) curly
5. My sister can't .... many holidays this month because she has a lot of exams.
   a) take b) make c) give d) do
6. My grandfather has got a white .... on his face.
   a) tortoise b) insect c) team d) beard
7. We should .... money to poor people.
   a) take b) give c) make d) do

Language

8. I am very tired. I .... walk.
   a) haven't b) have c) can d) can't
9. .... Lamees got many friends in her new school?
   a) Has b) Have c) Is d) Does
10. I have .... a new computer.
   a) to getting b) getting c) got d) get

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

5

1. Kady have got a big kite. She flies it every Friday. (........................)
2. This cake is very good. You can't cook very well! (........................)
3. Mum, I can go out tonight? (........................)
4. How many daughters is your uncle got? (........................)
5. Our cats has got blue eyes. (........................)

Check Your Vocabulary

25

Vocabulary

مفكرة على الإنترنت	....	منشور فى مدونة	....
غريب	....	التاريخ	....
ملكة	....	معلومة/معلومات	....
مخيف	....	قلب	....
مغامرة	....	قصة أطفال	....
عاقل/حكيم	....	بلاد العجائب	....

Language Expressions & Prepositions

يغضب	....	يدرس الرسم/الرياضيات	....
يصيح فى	....	مرتين فى الأسبوع	....
يكتب فى موقع إنترنت	....	يتخذ قرارات	....

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

....	....	يرسم	....
....	....	يبدأ	....
....	....	يعتقد	....

Words and Opposites

Word	Opposite (Antonym)
brave	....
clever	....
hungry	....
interesting	....

Unit 3 Lessons 3 & 4

Quiz

15

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

Vocabulary

1. Things which are .... make you feel frightened.
   a) scary b) cute c) good d) nice
2. A/An .... is a website on which someone writes regularly.
   a) dairy b) blog c) information d) adventure
3. My uncle is very .... He chooses things wisely.
   a) strong b) tall c) sensible d) fast
4. Alice's .... begins when she goes to Wonderland.
   a) post b) character c) diary d) adventure
5. All the .... help Alice to go home.
   a) adventures b) posts c) diaries d) characters
6. I play tennis .... a week. I play on Sundays and Fridays.
   a) never b) once c) twice d) none
7. Mohammed Salah is quite short .... a footballer.
   a) on b) to c) at d) for

Language

8. Adel .... go to the party because he has an exam.
   a) has to b) don't c) must d) can't
9. Have you .... anything to ask?
   a) got b) gets c) getting d) get
10. I .... got short, curly hair.
    a) has b) have c) can d) am

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

5

1. Do your sisters got short, dark hair? (...........................)
2. English people has got yellow hair. (...........................)
3. I cannot picked up that box. (...........................)
4. We has got an apple tree in the garden. (...........................)
5. You can help me with my homework? (...........................)

Check Your Vocabulary

20

Vocabulary

مظهر	....	جزيرة	....
شخصية	....	سر	....
كرسى متحرك	....	عاصفة	....
رائع	....	كنز	....
الريف	....	نقد	....
حوض السباحة	....	حديقة (منزل)	....
مثير	....	يسمى/يدعى	....

Language Expressions & Prepositions

يصمم ملصقًا إعلانيًا	....	يعتقد فى	....
صعب لـ	....	يدون ملاحظات	....
ينتقل حول	....	يعمل على قارب	....

Unit 3 Lessons 5 & 6 Quiz

15

1 Complete the following dialogue:

5

Speaking

Tamer is asking Ahmed about his best friend.

Tamer : What is your best friend's name?
Ahmed : (1).. .
Tamer : Basel! (2)..?
Ahmed : He likes reading and playing basketball.
Tamer : (3)..?
Ahmed : Yes, he does. He loves swimming!
Tamer : How is he?
Ahmed : (4).. . He helps all of us.
Tamer : Does he like watching TV?
Ahmed : (5).. .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

Vocabulary

1. I won't go to school .... I'm ill.
   a) so b) because c) and d) but
2. A lot of people watched my .... post yesterday on Facebook.
   a) break b) block c) blog d) bike
3. This is a good book. I read a good .... about it.
   a) treasure b) country c) review d) poster
4. He doesn't want to eat. He is ....
   a) hungry b) angry c) full d) free
5. He is my best friend. He has a good ....
   a) treasure b) storm c) secret d) personality
6. The lion is a .... animal.
   a) scared b) friendly c) sensible d) scary
7. I always .... notes of what the trainer says.
   a) do b) have c) make d) watch

Language

8. Sorry, we .... come to the dinner tomorrow night.
   a) can b) can't c) have d) haven't
9. One of my friends .... got a car.
   a) have b) has c) do d) does
10. We .... use our phones in class.
   a) can b) can't c) have d) haven't

Check Your Vocabulary

25

Vocabulary

يخمن	....	يلقى نظرة على موقع إلكترونى	....
طابعة ثلاثية الأبعاد	....	الجهاز اللوحى (تابلت)	....
يلتقط صورة شخصية	....	شاحن الهاتف	....
مشغل إم بى ثرى	....	يرسل رسالة نصية	....
فأرة الكمبيوتر	....	يضغط على أيقونة بالهاتف	....

Language Expressions & Prepositions

يبحث عن	....	يدرس الكمبيوتر	....
يصمم أيقونة	....	على اللاب توب	....
ينام على كرسى	....	يصنع نموذجًا	....
يرتب قطع الشطرنج	....	فى هذه اللحظة	....

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

يرسل	....	....	....
يعنى/يقصد	....	....	....

Words and Opposites

Word	Opposite (Antonym)
online	....
new	....
sleep	....

Definitions

.... : is an online diary

.... : a machine which is connected to a computer and can make copies of information

Unit 4 Lessons 1 & 2 — Quiz

15

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

Vocabulary

1. The ball is .... the chair.
   a) under b) next c) behind d) in front
2. I'm taking .... I will send you one of my photos now.
   a) posts b) models c) selfies d) emails
3. I prefer .... text messages to making phone calls.
   a) taking b) sending c) clicking d) mending
4. I asked my dad to buy me a new MP3 .... on my birthday.
   a) player b) mouse c) printer d) listener
5. We often use our .... in the classroom.
   a) balls b) toys c) games d) tablets
6. There is a car .... of our house.
   a) under b) on c) next d) in front
7. Can you help me look .... my keys? I can't find them.
   a) with b) for c) at d) on

Language

8. Are there .... flowers in your garden?
   a) some b) any c) a d) an
9. Would you like .... tea?
   a) some b) any c) an d) a
10. Mum .... a cake at the moment.
   a) make b) makes c) is making d) making

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

5

1. There <u>are</u> an apple in the fridge. (..............................)
2. <u>There is</u> any milk in the bottle? (..............................)
3. My friend <u>printing</u> his homework now. (..............................)
4. A: Are there any printers? B: Yes, there <u>is</u>. (..............................)
5. Huda <u>reads</u> a book in the library at the moment. (..............................)

Check Your Vocabulary

25

Vocabulary

الطبيعة	....	راقصة	....
يسقط	....	زى مدرسى	....
يلوح بيده	....	قاموس	....
برنامج	....	لغز	....

Language Expressions & Prepositions

يتحدث مع صديق	....	يمثل حدثًا	....
يعطى نصيحة	....	يسجل ملاحظات	....
أرفع يدى لأعلى	....	يحضر مشروبًا	....
يؤدى هواية	....	يبتسم لـ	....
فى الفسحة ...	....	يكتب باستخدام	....
البرنامج يُعرض	....	على مشغل الموسيقى	....

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

....	....	يرتدى	....
....	....	يُحضر	....

Words and Opposites

Word	Opposite (Antonym)
different	....
stay	....
hot	....

Quiz

15

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

Vocabulary

1. I like doing .... They make me think.
   a) toys b) bikes c) kites d) puzzles
2. I like to .... my kite at the weekend.
   a) fly b) drive c) give d) follow
3. We usually have our sandwiches .... break.
   a) by b) at c) in d) with
4. He is funny. He .... at everyone he sees.
   a) writes b) puts c) smiles d) shouts
5. Students should learn how to use their .... in English classes.
   a) hobbies b) posters c) puzzles d) dictionaries
6. My father always .... us good advice.
   a) gives b) brings c) takes d) flies
7. Students should wear their school ....
   a) puzzle b) uniform c) model d) poster

Language

8. What's mum ....?
   a) does b) doing c) did d) do
9. .... using the tablet?
   a) She has b) Has she c) Is she d) She is
10. Yasser's using his mobile. He .... sending a text message.
   a) isn't b) is c) can d) can't

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

5

1. What you are doing, Randa? (..............................)
2. A: Is Nadeen playing with her toys? B: No, she is. (..............................)
3. Is your uncle fly to Canada next Friday? (..............................)
4. What is Ola and Samira doing? (..............................)
5. Reem aren't taking a selfie; she is listening to music. (..............................)

Check Your Vocabulary

20

Vocabulary

معلومات شخصية	....	غلاية	....
يغلى	....	كيس شاى	....
زاهى اللون/ملون	....	تعليمات/إرشادات	....

Language Expressions & Prepositions

يطلب المساعدة	....	يكوّن صداقة مع	....
يتفق مع	....	مثال لـ	....
يشغل (جهازًا)	....	يُخرج	....
يبدو شيقًا	....	يبقى آمنًا	....

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

....	....	يشرب	....
....	....	يحافظ على	....

Words and Opposites

Word	Opposite (Antonym)
worried	....
safe	....

Definitions

....................: something you do not want to tell people about

....................: a word or numbers you use to go onto a website

Unit 4 Lessons 5 & 6 Quiz

15

1 Complete the following dialogue:

5

Speaking

Laila is in her bedroom playing games on her mobile.

Mum : Where are you, Laila?
Laila : (1).. .
Mum : (2)...?
Laila : I'm playing on my mobile.
Mum : I want you in the kitchen with me.
Laila : (3)...?
Mum : Can you wash the dishes with me?
Laila : (4).. .
Mum : Thank you, dear.
Laila : (5).. .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

Vocabulary

1. It's important to stay .... online.
   a) safe b) worried c) angry d) save
2. .... on this icon when you want to print.
   a) Stay b) Put c) Click d) Add
3. Your telephone number is .... information.
   a) clever b) useless c) personal d) general
4. If you have a problem, ask .... help from a parent or teacher.
   a) on b) at c) to d) for
5. Sometimes you need a password to .... onto a website.
   a) go b) come c) look d) answer
6. He started boiling water in a .... to make tea for the guests.
   a) call b) poster c) kettle d) model
7. The story .... very interesting to me. I like it very much.
   a) gives b) looks c) takes d) makes

Language

8. .... careful! You almost dropped your coffee.
   a) Don't be b) You be c) Being d) Be
9. **A:** .... a piece of cake. **B:** Thanks.
   a) Has b) Don't have c) Have d) Haven't
10. .... too much TV! It's not good for your eyes.
   a) Watch b) Don't watch c) Watching d) Didn't watch

Check Your Vocabulary

25

Vocabulary

....	ينام فى خيمة	....	متحف
....	شلال	....	يصنع قلعة رملية
....	غابة	....	اختبار مصغر
....	نهر	....	طقس
....	صحراء	....	خريطة
....	كهف	....	لذيذ
....	يقوم بنزهة	....	يزور أسرة

Language Expressions & Prepositions

....	خائف من	....	يركب جملًا
....	على الشاطئ/البلاج	....	يفكر فى
....	ينادى	....	فى الصخور

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

....	يتحدث	....	....
....	يركب	....	....
....	يملك	....	....

Words and Opposites

Word	Opposite (Antonym)
quiet	....
get into/in	....

Quiz

15

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

Vocabulary

1. We went to Siwa and entered a ....
   a) view   b) river   c) cave   d) sea
2. My brother likes building sandcastles when we go the ....
   a) mountain   b) desert   c) cave   d) beach
3. The .... Nile is the longest one in the world.
   a) Lake   b) River   c) Beach   d) Sea
4. Last summer, the .... was very hot.
   a) post   b) weather   c) picnic   d) game
5. We ate .... food. It was wonderful.
   a) bad   b) ugly   c) dark   d) delicious
6. There are a lot of trees in the ....
   a) forest   b) waterfall   c) desert   d) river
7. The students will do a/an .... on last week's work next Monday.
   a) map   b) turn   c) quiz   d) echo

Language

8. My mother .... to the market yesterday.
   a) go   b) went   c) gone   d) going
9. They didn't .... the film last week.
   a) watches   b) watched   c) watching   d) watch
10. The girls .... happy at the party.
   a) didn't   b) wasn't   c) weren't   d) don't

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

5

1. Tamer don't afraid when he was in the forest. (..............................)
2. She studies English yesterday. (..............................)
3. He didn't worn his school uniform on the trip. (..............................)
4. She eats pizza yesterday. (..............................)
5. They leave their home late yesterday. (..............................)

Unit 5
Lessons 3 & 4

Check Your Vocabulary

25

Vocabulary

طالب	....	يصعد	....
مثير	....	قلعة	....
مدرسة لغات	....	دورات فى فترة الإجازة	....
دولفين	....	رائع	....
هدية تذكارية	....	علم	....

Language Expressions & Prepositions

يقضى إجازة/وقت	....	يركب حصاناً	....
يقوم بعمل قائمة	....	إعلان لـ	....
يكتشف	....	بجوار البحيرة/الشاطئ	....
يقوم بعمل مشروع	....	رحلة على	....
يصل إلى	....	يقوم بعمل إعلان	....

Words and Opposites

Word	Opposite (Antonym)
friendly	....
stay	....

Definitions

.... : sleep for a time in a tent

.... : what you can see from a place

.... : a place to stay for a holiday

Unit 5
Lessons 3 & 4

Quiz

15

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

Vocabulary

1. I bought a lot of .... to remember that place.
   a) engineers b) souvenirs c) castles d) queens
2. I can have a wonderful .... from my bedroom window. It's cool.
   a) view b) picture c) message d) flat
3. For homework, we .... interesting projects.
   a) leave b) stay c) do d) make
4. We went on a trip and .... in the desert.
   a) had b) made c) climbed d) camped
5. .... are sea animals that like to play with people.
   a) Camels b) Dolphins c) Monkeys d) Goats
6. I had a/an .... holiday in Jordan. I liked it.
   a) ugly b) bad c) exciting d) boring
7. In Egypt, every school has a .... for our country.
   a) flag b) course c) castle d) lake

Language

8. How did you .... to school today?
   a) travel b) travelling c) travelled d) travels
9. How .... your flight to Dubai?
   a) had b) were c) did d) was
10. Where .... you go on holiday last year?
    a) did b) do c) does d) done

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

5

1. Do you visit Aswan last weekend? (..............................)
2. How did your day yesterday? (..............................)
3. Did you saw a dolphin when you were on holiday? (..............................)
4. Where do you spend your last holiday? (..............................)
5. Did you wore your jacket last night? (..............................)

Check Your Vocabulary

20

Vocabulary

سائح	....	لافتة	....
ضوء/مصباح	....	شعور/عاطفة	....
يمر/يجتاز	....	رد فعل/استجابة	....
قواقع	....	مسرح	....
بطاقة بريدية	....	وقت الاستحمام	....

Language Expressions & Prepositions

يقوم برحلة	....	يذهب للنوم	....
لقضاء إجازة	....	يعود/يرجع	....
فى القطار	....	يتبع القواعد	....

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

....	....	يقع/يسقط	....
....	....	يترك/يغادر	....

Words and Opposites

Word	Opposite (Antonym)
lose	....
closed	....

Unit 5 Lessons 5 & 6 Quiz

15

1 Complete the following dialogue:

5

Speaking

Samar is telling Rasha about her visit to the beach.

Rasha : What did you do yesterday, Samar?
Samar: (1).. .
Rasha : The beach! (2).. ?
Samar: No, I didn't enjoy my time there.
Rasha : (3)..! Why not?
Samar: It was windy.
Rasha : Did you swim?
Samar: (4).. . The water was cold.
Rasha : (5)..?
Samar: I went with my family.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

Vocabulary

1. The .... says, "Don't park here."
   a) signal b) list c) song d) sign
2. You should follow the school ....
   a) roles b) rules c) rulers d) rollers
3. .... come to Egypt to enjoy the good weather and great mountains.
   a) Thieves b) Tourists c) Bats d) Lorries
4. We didn't have time to go to the Science Museum, what a ....!
   a) dear b) really c) no d) pity
5. We went .... a boat trip last week.
   a) on b) of c) in d) at
6. He went to the shop to buy a shirt, but it was ...., so he couldn't buy it.
   a) closed b) open c) new d) back
7. I ate many things in Paris like ....
   a) skins b) tails c) snails d) snakes

Language

8. Did the girls in your class .... chess two weeks ago?
   a) playing b) plays c) played d) play
9. How .... she come to work this morning?
   a) did b) was c) is d) does
10. What did he .... last summer?
    a) did b) do c) was d) is

Check Your Vocabulary

25

Vocabulary

أرز بودنج	....	وصفة طعام	....
ملعقة شاى	....	حلو	....
مقادير/مكونات	....	معدات	....
قرفة	....	يقلب	....
فنجان	....	قدر صغير	....
ثلاجة	....	يضيف	....
جوزة الهند	....	يشارك	....
سلطانية	....	تعليمات/إرشادات	....
زبيب	....	حمص	....

Language Expressions & Prepositions

يقرر أن	....	يضع ... فى	....
وصفة طعام لـ	....	يطبخ لـ	....

Words and Opposites

Word	Opposite (Antonym)
delicious	(..........)
perfect	(..........)
boil	(..........)

Unit 6 Lessons 1 & 2 Quiz

15

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

Vocabulary

1. Put the rice into a big ....
   a) field b) cup c) cupboard d) bowl
2. My sister usually has .... with tea.
   a) tomatoes b) vegetables c) peppers d) biscuits
3. It is very .... Thank you.
   a) cruel b) delicious c) frightening d) brave
4. There aren't many .... in rice pudding.
   a) beans b) peppers c) tomatoes d) ingredients
5. .... is a healthy drink. You should try it.
   a) Cinnamon b) Cheese
   c) Salad d) Hot chocolate
6. Do you .... sweet or salty food?
   a) draw b) do c) prefer d) stay
7. He spent the .... day writing.
   a) howl b) wall c) hole d) whole

Language

8. There are .... tourists in the museum today. Let's come another day.
   a) too much b) enough c) too many d) a lot
9. There .... apple juice in the fridge.
   a) is any b) are any c) are some d) is some
10. I haven't got .... ruler in my pencil case.
   a) any b) an c) a d) some

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

5

1. There <u>aren't</u> enough milk to make hot chocolate. (....................)
2. Are there <u>some</u> mobile phones? (....................)
3. <u>Is</u> there any books here? I want one, please. (....................)
4. There <u>is</u> any cheese. (....................)
5. I haven't got <u>some</u> friends. (....................)

Check Your Vocabulary

25

Vocabulary

طاجن	....	مكرونة	....
توابل	....	مذاق	....
مقالة	....	مشروبات غازية	....
حساء/يخنة	....	دهون	....
تقليدى	....	عصير فواكه	....
بطاطس	....	فطيرة الراعى	....
بصل	....	يقدم	....
إناء الطهى	....	يناقش	....

Language Expressions & Prepositions

يعد وجبات خفيفة	....	يصطاد سمكًا	....
يعتنى بـ	....	قطعة من	....
يعطى نصيحة لـ	....	يطلب طعامًا	....

Words and Opposites

Word	Opposite (Antonym)
careful	....
good for	....
forget	....

Unit 6
Lessons 3 & 4

Quiz

15

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

Vocabulary

1. Tagine is a .... meal in Morocco.
   a) traditional b) careful c) hungry d) full
2. People like .... because they are hot.
   a) potatoes b) spices c) raisins d) articles
3. We went to a new café and .... a meal.
   a) caused b) caught c) gave d) ordered
4. We should be careful .... the food and drinks we have.
   a) on b) at c) with d) to
5. All family usually meet .... dinner time.
   a) at b) with c) for d) about
6. My favourite hobby is .... fish.
   a) catching b) making c) carrying d) cleaning
7. I like tagine. Its taste is ....
   a) terrible b) bad c) ugly d) amazing

Language

8. It's a very dangerous place. Children .... go there.
   a) should to b) shouldn't to c) should d) shouldn't
9. It's raining outside. You .... take your umbrella.
   a) should b) don't c) do d) shouldn't
10. They have a test tomorrow. They .... not go to the cinema.
    a) mustn't b) shouldn't c) should d) haven't

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

5

1. We shouldn't having lots of fizzy drinks. (................)
2. We shouldn't eat healthy food. (................)
3. You should studied hard. (................)
4. That's a fantastic book. You should not read it. (................)
5. The doctor said, "You shouldn't eat less." I'm too fat. (................)

Check Your Vocabulary

20

Vocabulary

....	بيتزا بالجبنة	....	نقد
....	حقيقى	....	شيف/كبير الطهاة
....	قائمة طعام	....	يشبه
....	مقهى	....	مساعد/بائع
....	نادل/جرسون	....	بيتزا بالطماطم
....	زبون	....	حلوى

Language Expressions & Prepositions

....	ينظر من	....	على الغداء
....	يقوم بعمل قائمة	....	يتأكد

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

....	يختار	....	....
....	يكتب	....	....

Words and Opposites

Word	Opposite (Antonym)
small	
usual	

Unit 6 Lessons 5 & 6 Quiz

15

1 Complete the following dialogue:

5

Speaking

Mona is asking Nada about her favourite food.

Mona: What is your favourite food?

Nada: (1).. .

Mona: Koshari! Fantastic! (2)..?

Nada: Rice, tomatoes, onions and pasta.

Mona: (3)..?

Nada: Yes, it is very delicious.

Mona: What else do you like?

Nada: (4).. . What about you?

Mona: I like kofta very much.

Nada: (5)..!

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

Vocabulary

1. It's a/an .... place, really beautiful!
   a) delicious b) ugly c) bad d) fantastic
2. We went to a good .... to drink coffee.
   a) school b) café c) hospital d) office
3. When we sat on the table, a waiter offered us the ....
   a) diagram b) poster c) list d) menu
4. I love the .... of salad.
   a) test b) toast c) taste d) rule
5. You should .... after your teeth and don't eat much chocolate.
   a) make b) take c) look d) give
6. We must .... sure this doesn't happen again.
   a) have b) give c) do d) make
7. The .... is the person who serves people in a restaurant or a café.
   a) waiter b) customer c) seller d) worker

Language

8. You .... eat a lot of cakes and chocolate: it's bad for you.
   a) should b) shouldn't c) shouldn't to d) should to
9. You should .... that new film. It's great!
   a) seeing b) to see c) sees d) see
10. The doctor advised him not to smoke. He .... stop that.
    a) hasn't b) has c) shouldn't d) should

Part 2 Final Revision



1 **Vocabulary Revision on Each 2 Units** مراجعة عامة على أهم الكلمات الخاصة بكل وحدتين

2 **Language Revision on Each 2 Units** مراجعة عامة على أهم القواعد الخاصة بكل وحدتين

3 **Speaking Revision on Each 2 Units** مراجعة عامة على أهم المحادثات الخاصة بكل وحدتين

4 **Writing Revision on Each 2 Units** مراجعة عامة على أهم المواضيع الكتابية الخاصة بكل وحدتين

5 **Al-Adwaa Monthly Test** اختبار الأضواء الشهري

Units 1 & 2 **October Revision**

A Vocabulary

Unit 1

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

adventure	مغامرة	busy life	حياة مشغولة/مزدحمة	How long ...?	كم المدة؟
aged	بالغ من العمر	physics	الفيزياء	interview	مقابلة/حوار
airport	مطار	cousin	ابن/ابنة (العم/العمة/الخال/الخالة)	mountain	جبل
arrive (d)	يصل	daughter	ابنة	Olympics	الألعاب الأولمبية
athlete	لاعب رياضى	description	وصف	orphan	يتيم
athletics	ألعاب القوى	diary	مفكرة/يوميات	parents	الوالدان
attic	علية المنزل/السندرة	goat	عنزة	the country	الريف
aunt	عمة/خالة – زوجة العم/الخال	grandchild	حفيد	top	أفضل/أول
balance (d)	يوازن	great-grandfather	الجد الأكبر (جد الأب/الأم)	train (ed)	يتدرب
band	فرقة موسيقية	gymnast	لاعبة جمباز	twin	توءمان
best friend	أفضل صديق	gymnastics	ألعاب الجمباز	family tree	شجرة العائلة

Language Expressions and Prepositions — التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

a picture of	صورة لـ	make a video call	يجرى مكالمة فيديو
achieve dreams	يحقق الأحلام	make noise	يصنع ضوضاء
at the top of	فى قمة	move (d) to	ينتقل إلى
belong to	ينتمى إلى/يخص	play chess	يلعب شطرنج
communicate with	يتواصل مع	proud of	فخور بـ
do voluntary work	يقوم بعمل تطوعى	stay strong	يبقى قويًا
find difficult	يجد صعوبة	see birds	يرى الطيور
good at	جيد فى	think of	يفكر فى
have food/a drink	يتناول طعامًا/شرابًا	walk in the mountains	يمشى فى الجبال

Unit 2

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

art	التربية الفنية/الرسم	language	لغة	science	العلوم
bell	جرس	maths	الرياضيات	snowmobile	عربة الثلج
canoe	زورق طويل خفيف/الكنو	motorbike	دراجة بخارية	social studies	الدراسات الاجتماعية
computer studies	دراسات الحاسب	notebook	كراسة/دفتر	subject	مادة دراسية
daily life	الحياة اليومية	pencil case	مقلمة	timetable	جدول الحصص
different	مختلف	playground	ملعب	train	قطار
drama	الدراما (أدب المسرحيات)	preparatory	المرحلة الإعدادية	trip	رحلة
favourite	مفضل	quite	إلى حد ما	typical	نموذجى/مثالى
hall	صالة/قاعة	religion	الدين	uniform	زى موحد
home economics	الاقتصاد المنزلى	rules	قواعد	village	قرية

Language Expressions and Prepositions — التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

around the world	حول العالم	have a lesson	لديه حصة
at the end of	فى نهاية	have a shower	يستحم
at the weekend	فى العطلة الأسبوعية	in a canoe	فى الزورق
do homework	يؤدى الواجب المنزلى	learn about	يتعلم عن
do a project on	يقوم بعمل مشروع عن	on a snowmobile	فى عربة الثلج
cycle to	يركب الدراجة إلى	on time	فى الوقت المحدد
do activities	يؤدى أنشطة	read in bed	يقرأ فى الفراش
follow the school rules	يتبع القواعد المدرسية	say unkind things	يقول أشياء غير طيبة
for breakfast	على وجبة الإفطار	take a long time	يأخذ وقتًا طويلًا
get home	يصل إلى البيت	take a journey to	يقوم برحلة سفر إلى
go shopping	يذهب للتسوق	on the other side of	على الجانب الآخر من

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Your father's father is your ....
   a) grandmother b) cousin c) grandfather d) brother
2. They use a .... to go to school because there is a lake.
   a) car b) bike c) canoe d) bus
3. Khaled and Ali are .... They are brothers and aged 12.
   a) twins b) double c) couple d) pairs
4. My sister is good at .... She likes English and French.
   a) sports b) maths c) home economics d) languages
5. .... are animals that are like sheep.
   a) Goats b) Monkeys c) Cows d) Buffaloes
6. Athletes .... for many hours to be good.
   a) stay b) train c) keep d) go
7. I usually .... home through the park.
   a) recycle b) cycle c) tricycle d) circle
8. We arrived in Luxor at a quarter .... six.
   a) past b) pasta c) post d) paste
9. The children in the USA travel to school on a .... when there is snow.
   a) snowmobile b) car c) taxi d) canoe
10. Your sister is your parent's ....
    a) aunt b) daughter c) cousin d) mother
11. She won an Olympic gold medal in ....
    a) gymnast b) jam c) gymnastics d) physics
12. I usually .... my homework after school.
    a) do b) make c) take d) give
13. The train left Cairo at 8 o'clock and soon we .... in Giza.
    a) walked b) arrived c) got d) went
14. I like reading at break, so I go to the ....
    a) lab b) hall c) bookshop d) library
15. An .... has no mother or father.
    a) old b) Egyptian c) uncle d) orphan

B Language

Unit 1

1 Pronouns and Possessive Adjectives

Subject pronouns	Object Pronouns	Possessive adjectives	Possessive pronouns
I	me	my	mine
You	you	your	yours
He	him	his	his
She	her	her	hers
It	it	its	--------
We	us	our	ours
They	them	their	theirs

Ex: - This is not my dog. Mine is brown. - My uncle is ill. I'll visit him tomorrow.

2 The Present Simple Tense

Usage

1. Things that are always true: (Facts) حقائق

- The sun rises in the morning.
- The earth goes around the sun.

2. Habits and routines: العادات والروتين اليومى

- I always get up at seven o'clock.
- My brother goes to the club every Friday.

Form

Affirmative:
I, We, They, You, plural noun + inf.
He, She, It, singular noun + inf. + s/es/ies

Ex: - We always go to school on time.
- Ola always helps her mother in the kitchen.

Negative:
I, We, They, You, plural noun + don't + inf.
He, She, It, singular noun + doesn't + inf.

Ex: - I don't usually walk to school.
- Hala doesn't play computer games in the evenings.

Yes/ No questions:
Do + I, we, they, you, plural noun + inf.?
Does + he, she, it, singular noun + inf.?

Ex: - Do Sally and Laila spend a lot of time in the library?
- Does Eman have lunch with her family?

Unit 2

1 Adverbs of Frequency

always دائمًا	usually عادة	often غالبًا	sometimes أحيانًا	never أبدًا

Usage & Form

- نستخدم ظروف التكرار للتعبير عن مدى تكرار فعل ما. وتستخدم مع زمن المضارع البسيط
- نضع ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل الأساسى وبعد verb to be كالتالى:

Subject + adv. (ظرف التكرار) + **inf. / verb + s, es, ies**
Subject + **am/is/ are** + adv. + adj.

Ex: - Nancy sometimes **reads** a book in bed.
- The kids **are** always happy when they play in the garden.

How often ...?

عند السؤال عن ظروف التكرار نستخدم أداة الاستفهام (كم مرة ...؟ ?... How often) كالتالى:

How often + do/does + noun/ pronoun + inf.?

Ex: - How often **do** you **make** your bed?
- How often **does** Soliman **go** to work early?

2 Possessive ('s)

1 's: - تستخدم ('s) الملكية بعد الاسم المفرد غير المنتهى بـ (s).

Ex: - This is Laila's bag. - Those are the teacher's markers.

- تستخدم ('s) الملكية بعد الاسم الجمع الذى ليس آخره حرف (s) (جمع غير منتظم)

Ex: - This is the women's room. - Those aren't the children's notebooks.

2 ('): - نستخدم (') مع الاسم الجمع المنتظم المنتهى بحرف (s).

Ex: - The boys' fitting room is over there. - Those are the pupils' uniforms.

Note

١- تستخدم (') فقط مع الاسم المفرد المنتهى بحرف (s).

Ex: - It's Andros' coat.

٢- لا تستخدم ('s) مع الجماد.

Ex: - I broke the table leg.

٣- عند امتلاك شخصين أو أكثر لشىء ما، نضع ('s) على الاسم الأخير فقط.

Ex: - I know whose ruler this is. It has Dalia and Azza's names on it.

٤- عند إضافة ('s) لبعض الوظائف تتحول إلى أماكن.

Ex: - baker's المخبز / chemist's الصيدلية

3 Whose: Whose + (object) + is /are ...?

Ex: - Whose notebook is this? - Whose shoes are these?

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Those are Nayera's keys. They're ………………… .
   a) his b) hers c) ours d) her
2. Aseel is my baby sister. She ………………… at night.
   a) usually cries b) cries usually
   c) cries always d) always cry
3. The teacher always ………………… the parents on the first day of each month.
   a) is meeting b) meets c) meeting d) meet
4. Tony ………………… go to guitar lessons on Fridays.
   a) don't b) doesn't c) isn't d) aren't
5. **A:** How ………………… do you get up at 6:30 am? **B:** I always get up early.
   a) long b) often c) much d) many
6. Mr Badr doesn't like flying at all. He ………………… travels by plane.
   a) often b) usually c) always d) never
7. Where ………………… your father work?
   a) does b) are c) do d) is
8. Hani always ………………… nice stories in the library.
   a) reads b) read c) reading d) has read
9. The children are hungry. The pizza is for ………………… .
   a) them b) they c) their d) theirs
10. We ………………… go to the beach in winter.
    a) often b) usually c) never d) always

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. That's <u>me</u> father's car. (…………………)
2. The students <u>doesn't</u> study English on Thursday. (…………………)
3. That is my <u>friend</u> bike. (…………………)
4. <u>Nabila'</u> eyes are green. (…………………)
5. My father always <u>work</u> very hard. (…………………)

C Skills

1. Speaking

Unit 1

How to talk about your best friend

كيف تتحدث عن صديقك المفضل

How old is he/she? كم عمره/عمرها؟

He's/She's (العدد) years old. عمره/عمرها .... عامًا.

Where does he/she live? أين يعيش/تعيش؟

He/She lives in (المكان). هو/هى تعيش فى ....

What's his/her favourite food? ما هو طعامه/طعامها المفضل؟

His/Her favourite food is (الطعام).. طعامه/طعامها المفضل هو ......

What are his/her hobbies? ما هواياته/هواياتها؟

His/Her hobbies are (الهوايات). هواياته/هواياتها هى ....

Unit 2

Asking and answering about school and timetables

السؤال والإجابة عن المدرسة وجداول الحصص

What's your favourite subject? ما هى مادتك المفضلة؟

I like maths. / My favourite subject is social studies.
أحب الرياضيات/ مادتى المفضلة هى الدراسات الاجتماعية.

How many lessons do you have every day?
كم عدد الحصص التى لديك يوميًا؟

I have seven lessons every day. لدى سبع حصص يوميًا.

What subjects do you study? ما المواد التى تدرسها؟

I study Arabic, English, maths, science and social studies.
أدرس اللغة العربية، الإنجليزية، الرياضيات، العلوم والدراسات الاجتماعية.

What time is the break? متى تكون الفسحة؟

It's at eleven o'clock. فى الحادية عشرة تمامًا.

2. Write it right

Unit 1

The hobby I like

It's really important to do a hobby when you are free. There are many hobbies. Everyone has a different hobby. Some people like sports and others like reading, but I like playing chess. It's a game for all ages. This game is for two people. I like to play it on Fridays. I play it at home. I play it with my friends. I can play it online with people all over the world. My grandfather taught me how to play chess. Sometimes I play it on the computer. I like it very much. It's my favourite.

My family tree

My name's Waleed. I'm twelve years old. I love sports. I go to a preparatory school for boys. My dad's name is Ali. He's a teacher of English. He is a good teacher. All the students like him. He is very helpful. My mum's name's Aya. She's a nurse. I have one brother and one sister. My grandfather is called Sabry and my grandmother is called Safia. I have two cousins, Bahaa and Omar. We live in a big city. We live in a flat by the Nile. So, we enjoy the view of the river in the morning and in the evening. Although we live in a big city, we live in a quiet place. I love my family very much.

Unit 2

My daily life

My name's Basem. I always have a busy day. I go to a preparatory school in Giza. I usually get up at 7 o'clock. I wash my hands and face. Then, I have my breakfast. I often walk to school in the morning. I go with my friends. I have seven lessons a day. I can do many activities during the break. When I finish school, I come back home at 2:30 p.m. I always do my homework after school. I usually meet my friends. We sometimes go out in the evening. I never sleep late on school days.

Tapescript

Al-Adwaa October Test on Units 1 & 2

24

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1. What is Habiba Marzouk?
   a) A doctor. b) A teacher. c) A gymnast. d) A nurse.
2. How long does she train?
   a) Ten hours. b) Nine hours. c) Eight hours. d) Five hours.
3. Where does she live?
   a) In Cairo. b) In Giza. c) In Tanta. d) In Aswan.
4. Does she go to school?
   a) No. b) Yes. c) Maybe. d) I don't know.

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Rania is talking to Safaa at break.

Rania : Hello, Safaa. How are you today?
Safaa : (1).. .
Rania : (2).. ?
Safaa : I always walk to school.
Rania : What subject have we got after the break?
Safaa : (3).. .
Rania : (4) English! .... ?
Safaa : Yes, I'm quite good at it.
Rania : When have we got science?
Safaa : (5).. .

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Mrs Hala was a teacher of English in a preparatory school. She was very kind and helpful, so all students liked her. She used to come to school at 7 o'clock in the morning to give her students more lessons and help them with their homework. She has got a small family. Her husband, Mr Samir, is a doctor. She has got also two

daughters, Sama and Nada, and only one son, Salah. Salah is going to be a dentist. But her elder daughter Sama who likes English and science wants to be a doctor like her father. Nada, the youngest daughter, wants to be a computer programmer. They are a happy family.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is this passage about?

....

2. What does the underlined pronoun "her" refer to?

....

3. Why do you think all students like Mrs Hala?

....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "dentist" means a person who looks after people's ....
   a) brains b) hearts c) teeth d) lungs
5. The teacher's only son is going to be a ....
   a) teacher b) doctor c) dentist d) farmer
6. Mrs Hala's husband works in a
   a) bank b) school c) farm d) hospital

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Tarek is an orphan. He lost his .... in a car accident.
   a) uncles b) brothers c) sisters d) parents
2. Every .... trains hard to go to the Olympics.
   a) list b) partner c) athlete d) dream
3. Every night, she goes up to the .... to sleep.
   a) library b) garden c) playground d) attic
4. It is .... of her to arrive at school on time.
   a) typical b) daily c) busy d) final
5. Can you .... me the time you get up at?
   a) stay b) tell c) go d) have
6. Every player should .... the rules of the game.
   a) do b) forget c) follow d) stay

7. She never eats much .... breakfast.

a) with b) in c) to d) for

8. .... will get a new phone soon.

a) His b) He c) Him d) Her

9. We gave them .... telephone number, and they gave us theirs.

a) we b) our c) ours d) us

10. There .... lots of people in the city centre on Saturday nights.

a) usually are b) never are c) are always d) always are

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. The school bus never stop near my house. (....................)
2. Tarek always walk to school. His father drives him every day. (....................)
3. Did you see Sam and Emma garden? (....................)
4. How often do your mother help you? (....................)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your favourite school subject"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

November Revision

A Vocabulary

Unit 3

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

adventure	مغامرة	famous	مشهور	runner	عداء/متسابق جرى
appearance	مظهر	fan	معجب/مشجع	scary	مخيف
beard	لحية	features	ملامح/سمات	secret	سر
big smile	ابتسامة كبيرة	glasses	نظارة/نظارات	sensible	عاقل/حكيم
blog post	منشور في مدونة	history	التاريخ	sports star	نجم رياضى
blond hair	شعر أشقر	island	جزيرة	storm	عاصفة
brave	شجاع	main	رئيسى/أساسى	straight hair	شعر مستقيم
busy	مشغول	moustache	شارب	strange	غريب
character	شخصية	normal	عادى/طبيعى	website	موقع إنترنت
clever	ماهر/ذكى	online diary	مفكرة على الإنترنت	the country	الريف
curly hair	شعر مجعد	personality	شخصية	treasure	كنز
exciting	مثير	review	نقد	wheelchair	كرسى متحرك

Language Expressions and Prepositions — التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

difficult for	صعب لـ	make notes	يدون ملاحظات
different from	مختلف عن	pick (ed) up	يلتقط
do art/ maths	يدرس الرسم/الرياضيات	play for	يلعب لصالح
far from	بعيد عن	score a goal	يحرز/يسجل هدفًا
frightened of	خائف من	short for a footballer	قصير بالنسبة للاعب كرة القدم
get angry	يغضب	shout at	يصيح فى
give money	يعطى (يتبرع) بالمال	take a holiday	يأخذ إجازة
have time for	لدية وقت لـ	travel around	يتنقل حول
learn about	يتعلم عن	twice a week	مرتان فى الأسبوع
make decisions	يتخذ قرارات	work on a boat	يعمل على قارب
make a poster	يعمل ملصقًا إعلانيًا	write on a website	يكتب فى موقع إنترنت

Unit 4

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

3D printer	طابعة ثلاثية الأبعاد	kettle	غلاية	school uniform	زى مدرسى
boil (ed)	يغلى	look at a website	يلقى نظرة على موقع إلكترونى	send a photo	يرسل صورة
break time	زميل الفصل	mouse	فأرة الكمبيوتر	take a selfie	يلتقط صورة شخصية
click on the icon	ينقر على أيقونة (بالكمبيوتر)	MP3 player	مشغل إم بى ثرى	tablet	الجهاز اللوحى (تابلت)
colourful	ملون/زاهى اللون	nature	الطبيعة	tap on the icon	يضغط على أيقونة (بالهاتف)
dictionary	قاموس	password	كلمة المرور/السر	tea bag	كيس شاى
drop (ped)	يُسقِط	personal information	معلومات شخصية	technology	التكنولوجيا
guess (ed)	يخمن	phone charger	شاحن الهاتف	telephone number	رقم التليفون
insect	حشرة	programme	برنامج	wave (d)	يلوح بيده
instructions	تعليمات/إرشادات	puzzle	لغز	write an email	يكتب رسالة بريد إلكترونى

Language Expressions and Prepositions — التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

agree with	يتفق مع	make friends with	يكون صداقة مع
ask for help	يطلب المساعدة	programme on	البرنامج يُعرض
go onto a website	يدخل على موقع إلكترونى	put my hand up	أرفع يدى لأعلى
at the moment	فى هذه اللحظة	send a photo	يرسل صورة
charge ... with	يشحن ... بـ	sleep in a chair	ينام على كرسى
click on the icon	ينقر على أيقونة (بالكمبيوتر)	smile at	يبتسم لـ
example of	مثال لـ	stay safe	يبقى آمنًا
give advice	يعطى نصيحة	design an icon	يصمم أيقونة
have a hobby	لديه هواية	do a hobby	يؤدى هواية
keep your password secret	حافظ على سرية كلمة المرور	turn on	يشغل (جهازًا)
look for	يبحث عن	worried about	قلق على
make a model	يصنع نموذجًا	write with	يكتب باستخدام

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering | Understanding | Applying | Analysing | Evaluating | Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mona has got .... hair. It isn't straight.
   a) blond   b) big   c) short   d) curly
2. My mum uses the .... to make tea.
   a) glass   b) cup   c) kettle   d) tape
3. The town police wear dark blue .... and white caps.
   a) uniforms   b) glasses   c) hats   d) sunglasses
4. Going camping by themselves for the first time was a real .... for the boys.
   a) adventure   b) mountain   c) place   d) hotel
5. A busy person is always ....
   a) talking   b) walking
   c) doing something   d) laughing
6. We can give money to help .... people.
   a) weak   b) poor   c) slow   d) rich
7. I have a friend who is on a wheelchair, so I help him to .... doors.
   a) open   b) make   c) have   d) do
8. I love .... My favourite hobby is playing video games.
   a) photos   b) nature   c) selfies   d) technology
9. .... on the icon on your laptop.
   a) Write   b) Click   c) Type   d) Read
10. Can you .... me a text message when you arrive?
    a) take   b) send   c) do   d) make
11. My little daughter has got a big .... She's kind.
    a) smell   b) smile   c) small   d) smelt
12. It's polite to .... your hand up first when you want to ask a question.
    a) make   b) give   c) put   d) take
13. Mohamed Salah is a famous sports .... around the world.
    a) moon   b) sky   c) wind   d) star
14. You should keep your password ....
    a) famous   b) secret   c) known   d) public
15. The best team can .... the most goals.
    a) make   b) take   c) score   d) play

B Language

Unit 3

1 Have/ Has got

Form

I, We, They, You, plural noun + have got/ haven't got + ...
He, She, It, singular noun + has got/ hasn't got + ...

Ex: - **Anna and Emy** have got long, straight hair.
- **Nahla** has got a red dress.

Yes/ No questions

Has + he, she, it, singular noun + got + ...?
Have + I, we, they, you, plural noun + got + ...?

Ex: A: Have they got bikes?
B: Yes, they have. **B:** No, they haven't.
A: Has your sister got a skirt?
B: Yes, she has. **B:** No, she hasn't.

Wh-questions

Question word + has/ have + subj. + got?

Ex: - What has Salma got?
- What have your friends got?

2 Can/ Can't

Form

Subject + can/can't + inf.

Ex: - Salma can **play** chess. - My friends can **swim** well.
- Manal can't **run** fast. - My little sister can't **speak** well.

Yes/ No questions

Can + subject + inf.?

Ex: A: Can Salma **play** the guitar?
B: Yes, she can. **B:** No, she can't.
A: Can the kids **write** their names?
B: Yes, they can. **B:** No, they can't.

Note

Subject + can + **inf.** = Subject + am/is/are + able to + **inf.**

Ex: Sara can **ride** a bike. = Sara is able to **ride** a bike.

Unit 4

1 There is / There are

Form

There is / isn't + اسم مفرد (يعد) / اسم لا يعد.

Ex: - **There is** a red pen on my desk. - **There isn't** any sugar.

There are / aren't + اسم جمع.

Ex: - **There are** tablets in the classroom. - **There aren't** any laptops.

Yes/No questions

Is there + اسم مفرد (يعد) / اسم لا يعد?

Ex: A: Is there a white board in your class?

B: Yes, there is. **B:** No, there isn't.

Are there + اسم جمع?

Ex: A: Are there books in your bag?

B: Yes, there are. **B:** No, there aren't.

2 The Present Continuous Tense

Form

I + am/ am not + v.ing ...
He, She, It, singular noun + is/ isn't + v.ing ...
We, They, You, plural noun + are/ aren't + v.ing ...

Ex: - I am not doing my homework. I am listening to music.
- Shahenda is making a video game. She isn't taking a selfie.
- The boys are playing football. They aren't swimming.

Yes/No questions

Am/ Is/ Are + noun/ pronoun + v.ing ...?

Ex: A: Are you reading stories?

B: Yes, I am. **B:** No, I am not.

A: Is Omar sleeping?

B: Yes, he is. **B:** No, he isn't.

Wh-questions

Wh-word + am/is/are + noun/ pronoun + v.ing ...?

Ex: - What are the kids doing?
- What is Reda playing?

3 Imperative

تبدأ صيغة الأمر فى الإثبات بالفعل فى المصدر بدون الفاعل. ويمكن ذكر المخاطب - وفى حالة النفى نضع .Don't + inf

- Pass me that book, please. - Menna, study hard for your exams.
- **Don't** swim in the lake. - Aliaa, **don't** play in the street.

PRACTICE Language Exercises

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My grandma .... short, white hair.
   a) has got b) have got c) getting d) is
2. .... got juice in your lunch bag?
   a) Have you b) You have c) He has d) Has he
3. He can't swim, but he .... play football very well.
   a) can b) can't c) couldn't d) wouldn't
4. My uncle .... got an amazing house in the countryside.
   a) has b) is c) have d) haven't
5. My parents have .... a big bedroom.
   a) get b) getting c) gets d) got
6. He always wins .... he is good at sports.
   a) so b) when c) because d) but
7. At the moment, students .... how to write a paragraph.
   a) learnt b) are learning c) learns d) learn
8. **A:** .... there a cow in your grandfather's farm? **B:** Yes, there is.
   a) Has b) Is c) Does d) Was
9. Menna likes .... very much.
   a) paint b) painted c) painting d) paints
10. Look! She .... in the garden.
    a) is playing b) plays c) played d) playing

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Doesn't pick up the flowers from the garden. (....................)
2. Hend doesn't like eat crisps. (....................)
3. There aren't some computers in our school. (....................)
4. We has got an apple tree in the garden. (....................)
5. Do you wearing a school uniform? (....................)

C Skills

1. Speaking

Unit 3

Describing a character from a story

وصف شخصية من قصة

She's clever, brave and sensible. She goes to Wonderland.
هى شخصية ماهرة وشجاعة وعاقلة. هى تذهب إلى بلاد العجائب.

She's Alice. إنها «أليس».

She is not very nice. She is a scary person. She is always angry and she shouts at people.
هى ليست لطيفة. هى شخصية مخيفة. هى دائمًا غاضبة وتصيح فى الناس.

She's the Queen of Hearts. إنها ملكة القلوب.

Unit 4

Ask and answer questions about your friend

السؤال والإجابة عن صديقك

Are you sitting next to your best friend?
هل تجلسين بجوار صديقتك المفضلة؟

Yes, I am. نعم.

Is she wearing black shoes? هل هى ترتدى حذاء أسود؟

No, she isn't. لا.

What are they doing? ماذا يفعلون؟

They are watching TV. إنهم يشاهدون التلفاز.

2. Write it right

Unit 3

Your favourite sports star

I like sports. There are many sports stars all over the world. My favourite sports star is Mohamed Salah. I like him very much. He is a good footballer. He works hard to achieve his goals. He is 1.75 metres tall. He is quite short for a footballer. He has got dark, curly hair and a beard. He usually has a big smile. He is a fast runner and he scores a lot of goals. He is very kind. He helps many poor people. He gives money to build schools and hospitals. So, all of us should be proud of him.

My best friend

I have many friends. We go to school together. I like to spend good time with them. We usually play together. We help each other. I like them all, but my best friend is called Fatma. She's got long, straight hair. She's got brown eyes. She's very friendly. She likes reading and playing squash. I like her because she's a lot of fun. She helps me when I need help. She usually visits me at home. My parents like her, too. They say that she's a good girl. I hope we go to the same university.

Unit 4

How to stay safe online

The internet is very important. We all use the internet every day. It is easy to use the internet. But when we are online, we need to be more careful. We need to follow some rules to stay safe. Keep your password secret. Don't tell anyone about it. Don't make friends with people you don't know. Don't tell people your personal information like your telephone number. Don't send photos to people you don't know. Don't answer a phone call or video call from someone you don't know. If you are worried about something, tell a parent or a teacher.

Al-Adwaa November Test on Units 3 & 4

Tapescript

A Listening

24

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What kind of story is *Alice's Adventures in Wonderland*?
   a) Detective. b) Mystery. c) Children's story. d) Historical.
2. What does Alice think of Wonderland?
   a) Friendly. b) Ugly. c) Boring. d) Interesting.
3. What kind of people does Alice meet?
   a) Interesting. b) Funny. c) Kind. d) Bad.
4. What is Alice like?
   a) Bad. b) Sensible. c) Boring. d) Rich.

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Maya wants to know Sandy's hobbies.

Maya : Do you have a hobby?
Sandy : (1).. .
Maya : (2)..?
Sandy : Yes, I can. I learnt riding bikes when I was five.
Maya : Have you got a bike?
Sandy : (3).. .
Maya : Can you swim?
Sandy : (4).. . I usually swim in the sports centre.
Maya : (5)..?
Sandy : I usually go there on Thursdays and Mondays.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Tarek's parents always advise him to go to bed **early** so as not to be late for school. He is fond of playing computer games. Last Sunday, he spent a very long time playing computer games, so he went to bed very late. The next morning, he could not get up

early. He did not prepare his school bag well. He ran to school. In the classroom, he did not find his science or English books. He tried to borrow them, but he could not. His teachers were angry with him. He was sorry. He apologised to them saying, "I'm very sorry, I'll never forget my parent's advice".

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What's the main idea of the passage?

   ....

2. Which books didn't Tarek find in his bag?

   ....

3. What do you think of Tarek's hobby?

   ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Tarek went to school late on ....

   a) Friday b) Sunday c) Saturday d) Monday

5. The underlined word "them" refers to Tarek's ....

   a) parents b) books c) teachers d) games

6. The underlined word "early" is the opposite of ....

   a) late b) busy c) quiet d) proud

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mona has got .... hair. It isn't dark.

   a) blond b) big c) short d) curly

2. At eight o'clock, there is a .... called *Animal world* on TV.

   a) subject b) sport c) programme d) food

3. My grandfather has got a big .... on his mouth.

   a) beard b) hair c) ear d) moustache

4. Alice is the main .... of the story.

   a) crater b) character c) adventure d) book

5. Tagine is the name of a meal and a cooking .... in Morocco.

   a) piece b) pot c) body d) glass

6. Young people use the .... to listen to music.

a) charger b) MP3 player c) printer d) drum

7. The tomato pizza has a good ....

a) taste b) test c) toast d) tasty

8. .... a white board in the class?

a) Are there b) Is there c) There are d) There is

9. There .... some notebooks on the shelf.

a) are b) is c) were d) has

10. Hala is .... an email now.

a) wrote b) write c) written d) writing

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Should we <u>drank</u> lots of fizzy drinks? (..........................)
2. Hend doesn't like <u>eat</u> crisps. (..........................)
3. Mazin <u>have</u> got a bike. (..........................)
4. Don't <u>boiling</u> that water, Huda. (..........................)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

"How to stay safe online"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Units 5 & 6 **December Revision**

A Vocabulary

Unit 5

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

delicious	لذيذ	happen (ed)	يحدث	swim in the lake	يسبح فى البحيرة
bat	خفاش	holiday courses	دورات فى فترة الإجازة	sign	لافتة
camp (ed)	يعسكر/يخيم	holiday flat	شقة العطلة	snails	قواقع
cave	كهف	jungle	أدغال/غابة كثيفة الأشجار	souvenir	هدية تذكارية
climb (ed) up	يصعد	lake	بحيرة	theatre	مسرح
continue (d)	يستمر	light	ضوء/مصباح	ticket	تذكرة
desert	صحراء	pass (ed)	يمر/يجتاز	tourist	سائح
echo	صدى الصوت	play	مسرحية	turn	دور
flag	علم	postcard	بطاقة بريدية	view	منظر طبيعى
forest	غابة	response	رد فعل/استجابة	waterfall	شلال
friendly	ودود	river	نهر	weather	طقس

Language Expressions and Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

at the market	فى السوق	go on a boat trip	يذهب فى رحلة بالقارب
by the lake/beach	بجوار البحيرة/الشاطئ	go on holiday	يذهب فى إجازة
call out	ينادى	have a picnic	يقوم بنزهة
climb a mountain	يتسلق جبلًا	have a view of	يلقى نظرة على
do a journey	يقوم برحلة	make a list	يقوم بعمل قائمة
do a project	يقوم بعمل مشروع	make a sandcastle	يصنع قلعة رملية
find out	يكتشف	make an advertisement	يقوم بعمل إعلان
follow rules	يتبع القواعد	on the beach	على الشاطئ
for a holiday	لقضاء عطلة	on TV	فى التلفزيون
frightened of	خائف من	ride on a camel	يركب جملًا
get on	يركب على	search for	يبحث عن
get to	يصل إلى	sleep in a tent	ينام فى خيمة
go in/into a cave	يدخل كهفًا	with a lot of sand	ذو رمال كثيرة

Unit 6

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

basbousa	بسبوسة	fizzy drinks	مشروبات غازية	raisins	زبيب
bowl	سلطانية	healthy	صحى	restaurant	مطعم
chef	شيف/كبير الطهاة	hummus	حمص	review	نقد/مقالة نقدية
assistant	مساعد	ingredients	مقادير/مكونات	rice pudding	ارز بودنج (باللبن)
cinnamon	قرفة	introduction	مقدمة	saucepan	قدر صغير
coconut	جوزة الهند	kapenta	كابينتا (نوع سمك)	spices	توابل
crisps	رقائق البطاطس	look (ed) like	يشبه	stew	حساء/يخنة
customer	زبون	nyama na irio	نياما نا إريو (اسم أكلة)	stir (red)	يقلب
real	حقيقى	menu	قائمة طعام	sweet taste	مذاق حلو
discuss (ed)	يناقش	peppers	فلفل	teaspoon	ملعقة شاى
equipment	معدات	traditional	تقليدى	tomato pizza	بيتزا بالطماطم
fat	دهون	prefer (red)	يفضل	waiter	نادل/جرسون

Language Expressions and Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

a meal with	وجبة بها	for lunch	على الغداء
a piece of	قطعة من	give advice on	يعطى نصيحة لـ
add to your weight	يضيف إلى/يزود وزنك	look after	يعتنى بـ
careful with	حريص على	look out of	ينظر من
catch fish	يصطاد سمكًا	type of	نوع من
cause illness	تسبب المرض	make snacks	يعد وجبات خفيفة
cook for	يطبخ لـ	make sure	يتأكد
decide to + inf.	يقرر أن	order food	يطلب طعامًا
see a doctor	يزور طبيبًا	recipe for	وصفة طعام لـ

PRACTICE — Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My family and I went to the beach and I .... a sandcastle.
   a) made b) had c) climbed d) camped
2. We camped in the forest and .... in a tent.
   a) climbed b) swam c) rode d) slept
3. We decided to .... a picnic on the beach.
   a) make b) get c) have d) do
4. This .... has a good echo.
   a) lake b) cave c) river d) view
5. The book is full of useful ....
   a) design b) white board c) information d) printer
6. I will look for holiday .... to be good at English.
   a) tours b) courses c) towers d) schools
7. Paris is a good place .... a holiday.
   a) in b) at c) with d) for
8. .... are not healthy because they have a lot of fats.
   a) Crisps b) Vegetables c) Fruits d) Figs
9. Pasta, rice and lentils are the main .... of koshari.
   a) ingredients b) salad c) dish d) fish
10. The way by which we cook some foods and their ingredients is called ....
    a) rhyme b) review c) recipe d) advice
11. .... the sauce gently until it begins to boil.
    a) Chop b) Add c) Stir d) Cut
12. Koshari is a delicious meal .... rice, pasta and tomatoes.
    a) for b) with c) at d) to
13. I drink a .... of milk every morning.
    a) pot b) saucepan c) glass d) piece
14. Mum uses cooking .... to make our food.
    a) pots b) cups c) glasses d) pieces
15. Exercise is .... for health.
    a) terrible b) wrong c) good d) bad

B Language

Unit 5

The Past Simple Tense

Usage

- نستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط لنتحدث عن فعل حدث فى الماضى وانتهى أو حدثين متتابعين فى الماضى.

1 Verb to be

Form

I, He, She, It, singular noun + was/ wasn't + ...
We, They, You, plural noun + were/ weren't + ...

Ex: - **We** weren't frightened in the cave. **It** was nice.
- **Sandy** wasn't at the party yesterday. **She** was at the theatre.

Yes/ No questions:

Was/ Were + noun/ pronoun + ...?

Ex: - Were **the children** sad when they lost their ball?
- Was there **a camel** in the desert?

2 Regular & Irregular verbs

Form

Affirmative: Subject + التصريف الثانى للفعل...

Ex: - They travelled to Aswan **last** Friday.
- Ali met his friends two days **ago**.

Negative: Subject + didn't + inf.

Ex: - I didn't **have** a picnic **last** weekend.
- Hend didn't **visit** her aunt **yesterday**.

Yes/ No questions: Did + noun/ pronoun + **inf.** ?

Ex: - Did the children **feed** the animals in the zoo?
- Did Hadeer **enjoy** the game last Sunday?

Wh- questions: Wh- word + did + noun/ pronoun + **inf.** ?

Ex: **A:** Where did he **go** last weekend? **B:** He **went** to the park.
A: When did you **sleep** yesterday? **B:** I **slept** at 10 o'clock.

Unit 6

1 Countable and Uncountable nouns

Countable nouns	Uncountable nouns
- الأسماء المعدودة: هى الأسماء التى يمكن عدها وتكون مفردًا أو جمعًا. (cake – cakes) / (fig – figs) / (olive – olives) / (tomato – tomatoes)	- الأسماء التى لا تعد. لا يمكن جمعها ولا يتم استخدام (a/an) قبلها. meat – sugar – salt – cheese – salad – juice – hummus

2 Some & Any

A) some:

- We use "some" for **affirmative** sentences.

- تُستخدم فى الجمل المثبتة ونستخدم بعدها اسمًا (يعد) فى حالة الجمع أو اسمًا لا يُعد (كمية).

Ex: - There **are** some **books** on the table. - There **is** some **salad** in the dish.

B) any:

- We use "any" for **negative** sentences and **questions**.

- تُستخدم فى الجمل المنفية والأسئلة (بمعنى هل) ونستخدم بعدها اسمًا (يعد) فى حالة الجمع أو اسمًا لا يُعد (كمية).

Ex: - There **aren't** any **tomatoes**. - Has koshari got any **meat** in it?

Note

فى السؤال فى حالتى (العرض والطلب) يمكننا استخدام (some)

- Would you like some tea? - offer عرض
- Can I have some books? - request طلب

3 Quantifiers

a lot of	enough
- تأتى بمعنى (كثير من) ويتبعها اسم يعد (جمع) / اسم لا يعد. - تستخدم للتعبير عن تواجد شئ بكثرة. **Ex:** - There are a lot of **peppers** in the fridge. - There is a lot of **salt** in this soup.	- تأتى بمعنى (كاف) ويتبعها اسم يعد (جمع) / اسم لا يعد. - تستخدم للتعبير عن تواجد شئ بالكمية أو العدد المناسب. **Ex:** - There isn't enough **juice**. - There are enough **chairs** for all the people.
too many	**too much**
- تأتى بمعنى (كثير من) ويتبعها اسم يعد (جمع). - تستخدم للتعبير عن وجود شئ زائد عن العدد اللازم. **Ex:** - There are too many **students** in my class.	- تأتى بمعنى (كثير من) ويتبعها اسم لا يعد. - تستخدم للتعبير عن وجود شئ زائد عن الكم اللازم. **Ex:** - There is too much **sugar**.

PRACTICE | **Language Exercises**

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. How did you .... to school last week?
   a) go b) went c) going d) gone
2. My sister .... see yesterday's film.
   a) isn't b) didn't c) doesn't d) hasn't
3. Did the girls in your class .... chess two weeks ago?
   a) playing b) plays c) played d) play
4. How .... she come to work this morning?
   a) does b) was c) did d) is
5. What did he do .... summer?
   a) last b) ago c) next d) yesterday
6. You're always tired. You should .... more.
   a) slept b) sleep c) sleeps d) sleeping
7. We have .... eggs for the party. We don't need to buy any.
   a) a b) no c) any d) enough
8. You .... eat a lot of vegetables.
   a) should b) shouldn't c) should not d) can't
9. She wants to buy .... presents.
   a) any b) much c) a lot d) some
10. I've got too .... books in my bag. I can't carry it.
    a) some b) many c) much d) any

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. He didn't at school yesterday. (..............................)
2. Do they see the train yesterday? (..............................)
3. My brother should tidying his room every day. (..............................)
4. There are too much apples. (..............................)
5. You should buy that jacket. It's horrible! (..............................)

C Skills

1. Speaking

Unit 5

Ask and answer questions about your last holiday

السؤال والإجابة عن إجازتك الماضية

Where did you go on holiday? أين ذهبت فى الإجازة؟

I went to Alexandria. ذهبت إلى الإسكندرية.

What food did you eat? ما الطعام الذى أكلته؟

I ate a lot of fish. أكلت الكثير من السمك.

Unit 6

Ordering food in a café

طلب طعام بالمقهى

What would you like? ماذا تريد؟

I'd like pizza. أريد بيتزا.

Have you got any salad? هل لديكم سلطة؟

Yes, we have. Small or large? نعم لدينا. أتريد طبقًا كبيرًا أم صغيرًا؟

Large, please. طبقًا كبيرًا من فضلك.

Is that everything? هل هذا كل ما تريد؟

Yes, thank you. نعم، شكرًا لك.

Anything else? هل تريد شيئًا آخر؟

No, thanks. لا، شكرًا.

That's 100 pounds. الحساب مائة جنيه.

Thank you, here you are. شكرًا، تفضل.

2. Write it right

Unit 5

Your holiday

I like travelling very much. I visited many places around Egypt. Last weekend, I went to Hurghada. It's a beautiful city by the beach. There's a lot to do and see there. I went with my family. We went by bus. It is a beautiful place. We did many activities there. We swam in the sea and made sandcastles. We didn't see camels there. We ate delicious food, then we played games. My brother rode his bike. We left the place late at night. We enjoyed our time very much. It was a fantastic holiday.

Unit 6

Healthy snacks/food

Everyone loves snacks! But some snacks are bad for us. It is OK to eat crisps and cakes sometimes, but you should not eat too many of them. Crisps have a lot of fat and salt. Fruit is a great snack! It is very good for us. You should eat between two and four pieces of fruit a day. Beans and vegetables do not have much sugar or fat. They are very good for us, so we should eat a lot of them. We should be careful, even with healthy foods. Fruit juice has got a lot of sugar, so we should not drink too much of it.

A review of a café

I would like to write about an amazing meal I remember. I visited my cousins in Alexandria last Friday with my dad, mother and brother. They took us to a café for lunch. It was near the beach and it had big windows. It was wonderful watching the clean water of the sea. I had my favourite meal, chicken. I love chicken, but this was different. It was delicious. All my family had fish from the sea. We all liked our food. We then all had Egyptian rice pudding. There was not a lot of sugar in its recipe and it was not too sweet or unhealthy. It was a wonderful meal and I would like to visit this café again one day.

Tapescript

Al-Adwaa December Test on Units 5&6

24

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Where do you live?
   a) In Alexandria. b) In Aswan. c) In Hurghada. d) In Damietta.
2. What did your mother do?
   a) A tower. b) A sandcastle. c) A cave. d) A house.
3. Where is the beach?
   a) Far from a cave. b) Near a cave.
   c) Near my home. d) Far from my home.
4. How did you feel about the cave?
   a) Funny. b) Brave. c) Happy. d) Frightened.

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Hassan is asking Hend about her last holiday.

Hassan : Where did you go for a holiday last year?
Hend : (1).. .
Hassan : Why did you choose Paris?
Hend : (2).. .
Hassan : How long did you stay there?
Hend : (3).. .
Hassan : (4)..?
Hend : I went to Paris with my family.
Hassan : (5)..?
Hend : We went there by plane.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Snacks are an important part of your child's day. Besides getting three meals, school-age children usually eat one or two snacks a day. Most schools give children a ***mid-morning*** snack. When children get older, they may not need a morning snack if they don't have a very late lunch.

Most children want an after-school snack. A healthy after-school snack can help them do their homework well and give them the energy they need for other after-school activities. Give healthy snacks to children who aren't coming home right away. If you have an early dinner time, leave the snack and give the salad or vegetables.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?

....

2. What does the underlined pronoun "they" refer to?

....

3. What is your favourite healthy snack?

....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. We should eat .... meals.

a) one b) two c) three d) four

5. A healthy snack helps children to ....

a) meet friends b) go to school c) sleep d) study

6. The underlined word "***mid-morning***" means in the .... of the morning.

a) start b) beginning c) middle d) end

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My brother taught me how to .... a bike.

a) climb b) ride c) fly d) drive

2. A .... is a big hole in the mountain.

a) sand b) castle c) desert d) cave

3. We sat on the river and .... a picnic.

a) stayed b) did c) had d) made

4. There are lots of trees and animals in the ....

a) jungle b) desert c) hotel d) cave

5. Could you .... some water to make some tea?

a) stir b) boil c) cook d) chop

6. A bowl, a pot and a pan are .... for cooking.

a) equipment b) verbs c) information d) onions

7. She boiled some water in the ....

a) glass b) cup c) teaspoon d) saucepan

8. They .... to school by bus. They walked.

a) travel b) travelled c) don't travel d) didn't travel

9. There is .... accident in the street.

a) any b) some c) a d) an

10. There are too .... plates on this table. They are going to fall.

a) many b) much c) any d) some

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Did you visited your uncle last week? (....................)
2. There isn't any canals near our village. (....................)
3. You should told him what you think. (....................)
4. There aren't any sugar in my tea. (....................)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your last weekend"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

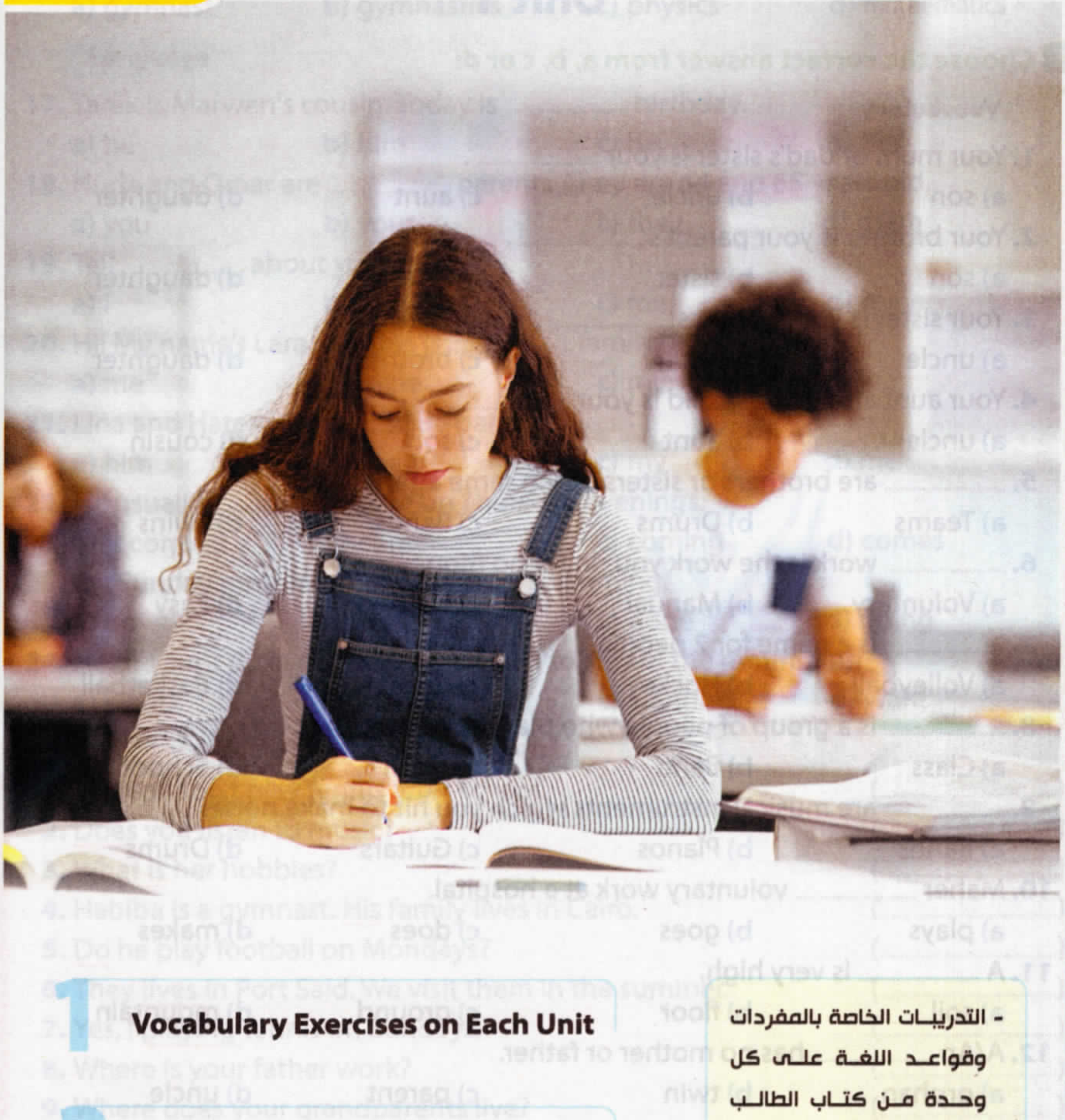
....

....

....

....

Part 3 SB & WB General Exercises



1 **Vocabulary Exercises on Each Unit**

2 **Language Exercises on Each Unit**

- التدريبات الخاصة بالمفردات وقواعد اللغة على كل وحدة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات.

Part 3

SB & WB General Exercises

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Unit 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. Your mum or dad's sister is your ....
   a) son b) uncle c) aunt d) daughter
2. Your brother is your parent's ....
   a) son b) sister c) brother d) daughter
3. Your sister is your parent's ....
   a) uncle b) sister c) brother d) daughter
4. Your aunt and uncle's child is your ....
   a) uncle b) aunt c) son d) cousin
5. .... are brothers or sisters of the same age.
   a) Teams b) Drums c) Bands d) Twins
6. .... work is the work you do for no money.
   a) Voluntary b) Manual c) Hard d) Easy
7. .... is a game for 2 people.
   a) Volleyball b) Hockey c) Chess d) Basketball
8. .... is a group of people who play music together.
   a) Class b) Band c) Team d) School
9. .... are musical instruments which you hit to make noise.
   a) Bands b) Pianos c) Guitars d) Drums
10. Maher .... voluntary work at a hospital.
    a) plays b) goes c) does d) makes
11. A .... is very high.
    a) soil b) floor c) ground d) mountain
12. A/An .... has no mother or father.
    a) orphan b) twin c) parent d) uncle
13. Cairo and Alexandria are big ....
    a) lakes b) countries c) cities d) seas
14. A/An .... is at the top of a house.
    a) orphan b) attic c) mountain d) hill

15. Habiba Marzouk is a top .... in Africa.
a) gymnast b) gymnastics c) athletics d) physics

16. Habiba eats well because .... is a difficult sport.
a) gymnast b) gymnastics c) physics d) mathematics

Language

17. Tarek is Marwan's cousin. Today is .... birthday.
a) he b) him c) his d) her

18. Huda and Omar are .... parents. They are 64 and 65 years old.
a) you b) your c) they d) them

19. Tell .... about your family.
a) I b) my c) me d) mine

20. Hi! My name's Lara and this is .... family.
a) me b) mine c) my d) I

21. Lina and Hatem are .... parents.
a) him b) she c) my d) me

22. He usually .... home on Thursday evenings.
a) is coming b) come c) coming d) comes

23. On Sunday mornings, we .... swimming.
a) go b) went c) gone d) going

24. Heidi's aunt does not .... Heidi to stay in the mountains.
a) wants b) wanted c) wanting d) want

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Seleem don't play tennis after school. (....................)
2. Does you listen to music? (....................)
3. What is her hobbies? (....................)
4. Habiba is a gymnast. His family lives in Cairo. (....................)
5. Do he play football on Mondays? (....................)
6. They lives in Port Said. We visit them in the summer. (....................)
7. Yes, I playing tennis on Sundays. (....................)
8. Where is your father work? (....................)
9. Where does your grandparents live? (....................)
10. How long does it takes you to come to school? (....................)
11. Can me have your pen, please? (....................)
12. Grandfather arrives at 5 o'clock. Let's go to meet her. (....................)
13. Clap for the football players. He played very well. (....................)

Unit 2

1 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

Vocabulary

1. All the children in our school go to the .... when the head teacher wants to talk to us.
   a) lab b) library c) bookshop d) hall
2. At break, I play games with my friends in the ....
   a) playground b) bell c) classroom d) library
3. For homework, we often read books from the ....
   a) laboratory b) library c) playground d) hall
4. On a .... weekend, I visit my grandmother.
   a) bored b) weak c) typical d) strong
5. We know it is time for the next lesson when we hear the ....
   a) pill b) bill c) bell d) ball
6. Some children in Egypt cycle .... school.
   a) to b) at c) in d) on
7. Trains are slow, but planes are ....
   a) free b) quick c) busy d) slow
8. Some children in Uganda go to school .... a canoe.
   a) with b) in c) by d) for
9. The canoe .... children to school and home again every day.
   a) drives b) rides c) takes d) cycles
10. Where the boys live in the USA, there is a lot of .... in winter, so they use a snowmobile.
    a) snow b) wind c) rain d) storm
11. The children in the USA .... to school on a snowmobile.
    a) cycle b) take c) ride d) travel
12. We arrived .... Luxor two days ago.
    a) in b) at c) on d) with
13. Ali usually arrives .... school at 7:15.
    a) on b) at c) in d) no preposition

14. I arrived .... Uganda last week.

a) in b) at c) on d) no word

15. When does the train arrive ....?

a) on b) at c) in d) no preposition

Language

16. Amir plays basketball after school on Monday, Tuesday and Wednesday. He .... plays it.

a) never b) often c) ever d) always

17. Mr Badr does not like flying and he always travels by train. He .... travels by plane.

a) often b) usually c) always d) never

18. Dina goes swimming on Thursday and Saturday. She .... goes swimming.

a) never b) usually c) sometimes d) always

19. We .... speak English during our English lessons.

a) never b) sometimes c) always d) often

20. We .... go to school on Fridays.

a) never b) sometimes c) always d) often

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. My sister goes to a girl's school. (....................)
2. This is Alis phone. It's new! (....................)
3. These are my sisters shoes. Her name is Huda. (....................)
4. Can you see Kamal's and Amir classroom? It is on the right. (....................)
5. It is Fadys' jacket. (....................)
6. These are the boys's football shirts. (....................)
7. Whose shoes are these? They are Ali. (....................)
8. Magdi' bag is blue. (....................)
9. This is Judy and Ola picture. (....................)
10. That is not the children's notebook. It is the teachers. (....................)
11. That is not Mr Abdelaziz's ball. It is the children ball. (....................)
12. These are my brothers jackets. They go to the same school. (....................)

Unit 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. A baby bird is very .... It cannot fly for many days.
   a) weak b) poor c) strong d) kind
2. A plane is very .... It can go at 900 km/h.
   a) tall b) long c) weak d) fast
3. My aunt is very .... She always gives me nice presents!
   a) fast b) weak c) friendly d) funny
4. Camels are very .... They can carry 200 kilos of bags!
   a) weak b) strong c) long d) tall
5. **A:** How .... is the Cairo Tower? **B:** It is 187 metres.
   a) long b) tall c) many d) much
6. The Queen of England is very .... She has got many houses.
   a) rich b) friendly c) unfriendly d) poor
7. A brave person is happy to do something ....
   a) fun b) usual c) dangerous d) bad
8. A clever person ....
   a) helps people b) knows a lot
   c) is unkind d) shouts at people
9. A sensible person ....
   a) makes good decisions b) has no time
   c) is very tall d) is unfriendly
10. A busy person is always ....
    a) talking b) walking
    c) doing something d) laughing
11. We often get angry when we ....
    a) are unhappy about something b) laugh
    c) feel happy d) succeed
12. Something scary makes you feel ....
    a) sad b) bad c) funny d) frightened

Language

13. My best friend .... short, dark hair.

a) has got b) have got c) get d) is

14. Has your father .... a moustache?

a) get b) getting c) got d) gets

15. Nader has got a wheelchair .... he cannot walk very well.

a) so b) because c) and d) but

16. Osama likes playing football, basketball .... tennis.

a) or b) and c) but d) so

17. Mohamed Salah lives in England, so he .... speak English.

a) is able b) able to c) can d) can't

18. He is very busy. He .... take many holidays.

a) can't b) isn't c) hasn't d) wasn't

19. Mustafa loves .... art at school.

a) do b) does c) doing d) done

20. My brothers and I don't like .... TV after school.

a) watch b) watches c) watched d) watching

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Magda <u>don't</u> like swimming. (....................)
2. A: Does Salem like playing computer games? B: Yes, he <u>do</u>. (....................)
3. What <u>is</u> your sister look like? (....................)
4. Mustafa loves playing football, but he doesn't like <u>play</u> tennis. (....................)
5. I love <u>learn</u> about how things work. (....................)
6. I <u>likes</u> doing maths, too. I am quite good at maths. (....................)
7. I quite like <u>did</u> sport. My favourite sport is tennis. (....................)
8. I <u>am liking</u> playing tennis with my friends, but I am not very good at it. (....................)
9. I <u>does not</u> like playing computer games. (....................)
10. After I do my homework, I like <u>read</u> a book. (....................)

Unit 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. There is a mouse .... the laptop on the teacher's desk.

a) near b) next c) in front d) between

2. There is an MP3 player .... to the laptop.

a) far b) in front c) next d) under

3. There is a phone charger .... of the printer.

a) next b) behind c) in front d) under

4. The whiteboard is .... the teacher's desk.

a) behind b) between c) in front d) next

5. There is a tablet .... the book.

a) between b) in front c) next d) under

6. .... on the icon on your laptop.

a) Click b) Write c) Make d) Send

7. .... at the website and find some information.

a) Write b) Click c) Tap d) Look

8. Can you .... me a text message when you arrive?

a) send b) do c) take d) make

9. .... the icon on your mobile phone.

a) Make b) Click c) Write d) Tap

10. I'd like to .... a selfie in front of the river.

a) take b) do c) tap d) make

11. A blog is a/an .... diary.

a) offline b) online c) paper d) print

12. It is important to .... safe online.

a) sleep b) stand c) sit d) stay

13. A .... is a word or numbers you use to go onto a website.

a) keyword b) password

c) crossword d) new word

14. A .... is something you do not want to tell people about.

a) truth b) lie c) secret d) story

15. Computers and mobile phones are examples of ....

a) technology b) nature c) farming d) subjects

16. Don't .... photos to people you don't know.

a) receive b) send c) make d) see

Language

17. I'm .... chess online.

a) play b) playing c) played d) plays

18. Fares .... doing his computer studies homework.

a) is b) has c) does d) will

19. They're .... at websites for information.

a) looking b) looks c) looked d) look

20. She .... you a photo now.

a) sending b) sends c) is sending d) is sent

21. There .... lots of flowers and insects in a big park.

a) have b) has c) are d) is

22. A girl is sitting under the tree and her mother .... a photo of her.

a) takes b) is taking c) took d) taking

23. The girl's brothers are .... tennis.

a) playing b) play c) played d) plays

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Adam is send text messages to his father. (....................)
2. A: What is your mother doing?
   B: Mum work in the bank now. (....................)
3. Are Hala making a video call? (....................)
4. To make a video call, turns your tablet on. (....................)
5. Send photos to people you don't know. (....................)
6. There is a mouse near the laptop on the teacher's desk? (....................)
7. There is printers in my classroom. (....................)
8. Where Adam is looking for information about MP3 players? (....................)
9. Soha is making a video call, but she is talking to her friends. (....................)
10. There is phone chargers next to the printer. (....................)

Unit 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. We .... a picnic last holiday.
   a) had b) made c) took d) gave
2. My family and I went to the beach and I .... a sandcastle.
   a) made b) had c) climbed d) camped
3. I .... a horse in the forest when we had a picnic there.
   a) drove b) rode c) went d) flew
4. I swam in the sea and .... a dolphin.
   a) saw b) played c) built d) had

Language

5. We camped in the forest and .... in a tent!
   a) sleep b) sleeps c) sleeping d) slept
6. Last summer, my family .... a fantastic holiday in Morocco.
   a) have b) had c) has d) are having
7. We .... in the sea. It was not very warm!
   a) didn't swim b) don't swim
   c) aren't swimming d) weren't swim
8. I rode on a camel. That .... fun.
   a) is b) was c) were d) are
9. We went to a good restaurant and .... delicious food.
   a) ate b) eaten c) eats d) eat
10. I .... tennis with my friends yesterday.
    a) play b) plays c) playing d) played
11. We .... a city called Marrakesh and we went to a museum.
    a) are visiting b) visit c) visited d) visiting
12. We .... some delicious food when we were in Morocco.
    a) eat b) ate c) eaten d) eats

13. I did a lot of things last holiday! I .... my family in Canada.

a) visit b) visited c) visiting d) am visit

14. I .... a mountain last year.

a) am climbing b) climb c) climbed d) climbing

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. He swam in the sea, but he saw any dolphins. (..................)
2. She doesn't wear a coat because it was a very hot day. (..................)
3. How did you went to school yesterday? (..................)
4. What did you did last Saturday? (..................)
5. What did your mother bought at the market? (..................)
6. What do you eat for dinner last night? (..................)
7. There was camels on the beach. (..................)
8. I didn't slept in caves when I was on holiday. (..................)
9. The beach weren't far from Sayed's home. (..................)
10. Sayed's uncle and aunt was in Cairo last weekend. (..................)
11. We did not stay in a hotel, we sleep in a tent. (..................)
12. Mona's father climbs a mountain last week. (..................)
13. Did you and your family stayed in a hotel? (..................)
14. We didn't watch TV. We play basketball. (..................)
15. Sami didn't liked playing football. (..................)
16. They didn't travel by car. They walk. (..................)
17. Did you went on holiday last year? (..................)
18. Did you and your family stayed in a hotel? (..................)
19. Sayed and Mariam didn't went into the cave. (..................)
20. Sayed didn't swam in the lake at Siwa. (..................)

Unit 6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. "................" is not an ingredient.
   a) Rice b) Nuts c) Raisins d) Stir
2. .... is not a cooking verb.
   a) Pudding b) Boil c) Stir d) Add
3. You can boil water in a ....
   a) saucepan b) teaspoon c) bowl d) cup
4. It is a good idea to eat between two and four .... of fruit a day.
   a) spears b) species c) spices d) pieces
5. A lot of cakes and biscuits are bad .... our bodies.
   a) for b) to c) with d) at

Language

6. Beans and vegetables do not have .... sugar or fat.
   a) a b) some c) much d) many
7. Karim often has .... snack before he goes to bed.
   a) a b) any c) many d) an
8. We .... eat too much cake. It has too much sugar in it.
   a) shouldn't b) should c) shouldn't to d) should to
9. The saucepan is very hot. You shouldn't .... it.
   a) touched b) touching c) touches d) touch
10. I like biscuits with .... raisins in them.
    a) a lot b) too much c) any d) a lot of
11. Are there .... tomatoes in the fridge?
    a) some b) any c) a d) an
12. There .... figs in the cupboard.
    a) is any b) are any c) aren't any d) aren't some

13. You .... always clean your teeth before you go to bed.

a) should b) should to c) shouldn't d) shouldn't to

14. Hany .... not eat snacks in the classroom.

a) should b) shouldn't c) mustn't d) must to

15. Have we got .... rice to make koshari?

a) enough b) too much c) too many d) some

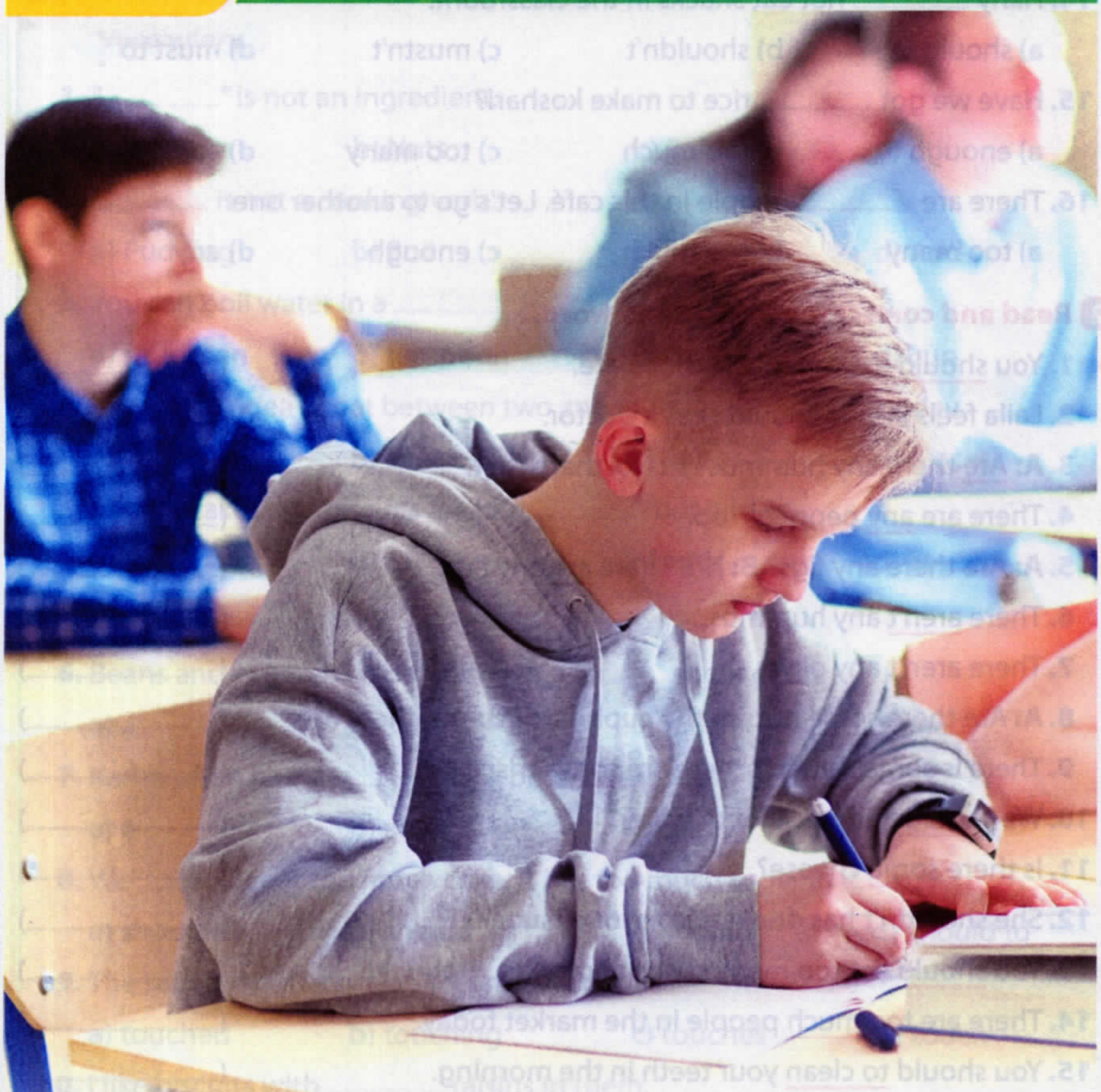
16. There are .... people in this café. Let's go to another one.

a) too many b) too much c) enough d) any

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. You should eat too much chocolate. (........................)
2. Laila feels ill. She should sees a doctor. (........................)
3. **A:** Are there any hummus? **B:** No, there isn't. (........................)
4. There are any peppers, too. (........................)
5. **A:** Are there any figs? **B:** No! There are any figs. (........................)
6. There aren't any hummus. (........................)
7. There aren't any olive. (........................)
8. **A:** Are there some nuts in the cupboard? **B:** Yes, there are. (........................)
9. There is some salt, but there are some crisps. (........................)
10. We shouldn't drink a lot of water. (........................)
11. Is there some cheese? (........................)
12. She shouldn't has drinks with a lot of sugar. (........................)
13. You should eat too many crisps and cakes. (........................)
14. There are too much people in the market today. (........................)
15. You should to clean your teeth in the morning. (........................)
16. There is some raisins. (........................)
17. **A:** Is there any cheese? **B:** Yes, there isn't. (........................)
18. **A:** There is any salt? **B:** Yes, there is. (........................)
19. Are there any apple on the tree this year? (........................)
20. You should eating a lot of fruit and vegetables. (........................)

Part 4 Final Exams



Schools & Directorates Exams

اختبارات المدارس والإدارات

Tapescripts

1 Cairo Governorate (El-Gamalia Educational Administration)

24

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 4

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1. Hani goes to school ....
   a) by car b) by train c) by bus d) on foot
2. Hani lives in ....
   a) Aswan b) Alex c) Cairo d) Tanta
3. Hani is not good at ....
   a) cooking b) drawing c) singing d) swimming
4. Hani's favourite subject is ....
   a) Arabic b) maths c) science d) English

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue: 2.5

Ahmed asks Nader about his favourite sport.

Ahmed : Do you like sports, Nader?

Nader : (1).. .

Ahmed : (2)..?

Nader : My favourite sport is football.

Ahmed : (3)..?

Nader : I play it once a week.

Ahmed : Where do you play it?

Nader : (4).. .

Ahmed : Who is your favourite sports star?

Nader : (5).. .

C Reading Comprehension

4.5

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name is Omar. I'm thirteen years old. I'm in prep one. My favourite subject is English because I'm good at languages. My English teacher is friendly and helpful. I have got a lot of friends, but Ramy is my best friend. We go to the same school. He has got short, curly hair and brown eyes. He is very kind. We go to the library once a week. We read a lot of books there. He can't walk so he uses a wheelchair. He likes watching football matches.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage? ....
2. What is Ramy like? ....
3. Why do you think Ramy uses a wheelchair? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Omar and Ramy go to the library .... a week.
   a) once b) twice c) three times d) four times
5. The underlined pronoun "He" refers to ....
   a) Omar b) Ramy c) football d) Omar and Ramy
6. ".................... " is the same meaning as "kind".
   a) Unkind b) Friendly c) Unhappy d) Weak

D Vocabulary and Structure

5

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A baby bird is very .... It can't fly for many days.
   a) weak b) strong c) poor d) rich
2. The .... rings when a lesson starts and finishes.
   a) ball b) bell c) drum d) mobile
3. My father and mother are my ....
   a) cousins b) uncles c) parents d) daughters
4. Throw the ball to ...., please. I'm waiting.
   a) my b) mine c) I d) me
5. At break, I play games with my friends in the ....
   a) playground b) class c) library d) laboratory

6. A brave person is happy to do something ....

a) fun b) strange c) bad d) dangerous

7. **A:** How .... is the Cairo Tower? **B:** It's 187 metres.

a) long b) tall c) much d) often

8. Trains are slow, but planes are ....

a) fast b) busy c) free d) heavy

9. He .... a story now.

a) read b) reads c) has read d) is reading

10. Some children in Uganda go to school .... a canoe.

a) by b) in c) on d) at

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Mr Walid is sitting in the teacher room. (......................)
2. First, putting some water in a kettle. (......................)
3. Can I have any juice, please? (......................)
4. What places did you visits last Friday? (......................)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your visit to the zoo"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

24

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

4

1. Where did Soha spend her holiday?
   a) In Paris. b) In Rome.
   c) In Italy. d) In Madrid.
2. How was the food?
   a) Salty. b) Bad.
   c) Cold. d) Delicious.
3. What is Paris famous for?
   a) The Eiffel Tower. b) The Pyramids.
   c) The High Dam. d) The Sphinx.
4. What did Soha buy for Nada?
   a) A bag. b) A postcard.
   c) A souvenir. d) An MP3 player.

B Language Functions

2.5

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Tamer is asking Ahmed about his favourite subject.

Tamer : What is your favourite subject?
Ahmed : (1).. .
Tamer : (2).. ?
Ahmed : Because English is an interesting subject.
Tamer : Who is your English teacher?
Ahmed : (3).. .
Tamer : How often do you study it?
Ahmed : (4).. .
Tamer : (5).. ?
Ahmed : Yes, I want to be an English teacher.

C Reading Comprehension

4.5

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Dolphins are very interesting animals. They are like fish, but they aren't fish. Fish can live under water, but dolphins cannot. They can stay under water for a long time, but they have to come out of the water to breathe air. Fish lay eggs, but dolphins give birth to babies. Dolphins have big mouths and lots of small **sharp** teeth. They use their teeth for catching fish to eat. Everyone likes dolphins because they are clever and clean. They can do many things fast. They can jump in the air. Some dolphins have even learnt to pull a boat.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What's the main idea of the passage? ....
2. What do dolphins use their teeth for? ....
3. How will you feel if you swim near a dolphin? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The word "**sharp**" means ....

   a) many b) cutting c) clever d) slow

5. Dolphins can .... high in the air.

   a) swim b) jump c) throw d) walk

6. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to ....

   a) teeth b) eggs c) people d) dolphins

D Vocabulary and Structure

5

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Heidi .... in a bed in the attic of the house.

   a) sleeps b) walks c) leaves d) goes

2. Mohammed Salah is very good at .... goals.

   a) kicking b) scoring c) hitting d) diving

3. Your sister is your parents' ....

   a) daughter b) son c) aunt d) father

4. Social studies and science are school ....

   a) objects b) subjects c) teams d) groups

5. A .... is a word or numbers you use to go onto a website.

a) keyword b) crossword c) password d) secret word

6. Some children in Egypt .... to school.

a) road b) recycle c) ride d) cycle

7. Put rice and water in a .... before cooking rice pudding.

a) bag b) teaspoon c) saucepan d) cup

8. Ahmed .... his English book now.

a) reads b) read c) is reading d) reading

9. She didn't .... to the beach yesterday.

a) goes b) went c) gone d) go

10. There .... milk in the fridge.

a) is any b) are any c) are some d) is some

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. He usually got up early. (..............................)
2. There was camels on the beach yesterday. (..............................)
3. Would you like any cup of tea? (..............................)
4. Didn't shout at your parents. (..............................)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your best friend"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

3 **Giza Governorate** (Kerdasa Directorate)

24

A Listening

1 **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:** 4

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1. When does Samar get up?

a) At six thirty. b) At six.
c) At seven. d) At eleven.

2. Samar goes to school with her ....

a) father b) mother
c) friend d) sister

3. Samar has .... with her family.

a) lunch b) tea
c) dinner d) breakfast

4. How does Samar go to school?

a) By car. b) On foot.
c) By bus. d) By bicycle.

B Language Functions

2 **Complete the following dialogue:** 2.5

Amr is meeting Ali for the first time.

Amr : It's good to see you, Ali.
Ali : It's good to see you, too, Amr.
Amr : (1)..?
Ali : I'm from Giza.
Amr : Giza! It's a big city. (2)..?
Ali : (3).. And you?
Amr : I'm twelve years old, too. What's your favourite sport?
Ali : (4).. .
Amr : Great! See you later. (5).. .
Ali : Goodbye.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

I love technology. It's very useful for me. Technology helps us to do our work. We use it every day. We can send messages, watch videos and play games. But to be safe online, we must follow some important instructions. First, keep your password secret. You shouldn't tell people your personal information. Don't make friends with people you don't know online. Don't send photos to people you don't know. Don't answer phone or video calls from someone you don't know. Finally, if there is a problem, you must tell a **parent** or a teacher.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage? ....
2. What must you do if you have a problem? ....
3. How can you spend your time online? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. You must keep your .... secret.

a) text b) email c) password d) postcard

5. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ....

a) telephone b) instructions c) call d) technology

6. The word "**parent**" means a/an ....

a) mother or a father b) uncle or an aunt
c) friend d) cousin

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My father doesn't .... to music.

a) listened b) listening c) listen d) listens

2. Mazen .... voluntary work at a hospital.

a) makes b) does c) buys d) says

3. Nabila and Nadia like .... They always go to the sea.

a) eating b) sleeping c) studying d) swimming

4. We go to the school .... to read books and stories. There are lots of books to read.
   a) class b) break c) library d) playground
5. Amira .... long, straight hair.
   a) has got b) have got c) is d) was
6. .... on this icon to send the message.
   a) Take b) Give c) Write d) Click
7. What .... doing now?
   a) you were b) are you c) you are d) were you
8. Noha .... the drums in the school band.
   a) makes b) plays c) writes d) does
9. My mother and I go..................... at the weekend. We buy vegetables and fruit.
   a) shopping b) studying c) playing d) reading
10. When I see a scary dog, I feel ....
   a) good b) great c) frightened d) hungry

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

2

1. There aren't <u>some</u> vegetables in the fridge. (.............................)
2. It is <u>Hudas</u> book. (.............................)
3. When does your father <u>has</u> breakfast? (.............................)
4. I <u>study</u> English last year. (.............................)

E Writing

6

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

"My family"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

24

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1. Where did you go yesterday?
   a) Cairo. b) Luxor.
   c) Aswan. d) Siwa.
2. Where is it?
   a) In the desert. b) In the town.
   c) In the temple. d) In the country.
3. What is Siwa famous for?
   a) Cakes. b) Oranges.
   c) Olives. d) Eggs.
4. Where did you sleep in the desert?
   a) In a class. b) In a tent.
   c) In a school. d) In a park.

B Language Functions

2.5

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Ali is asking Omar about his favourite sports star.

Ali : Who is your favourite sports star?
Omar : (1).. .
Ali : What sport does he play?
Omar : (2).. .
Ali : (3)..?
Omar : He has got dark, curly hair.
Ali : (4)..?
Omar : I like him because he scores a lot of goals.
Ali : Do you want to be like him?
Omar : (5).. .

C Reading Comprehension

4.5

3 **Read the following, then answer the questions:**

Egypt is a great country in the north-east of Africa. Cairo is the capital city. People of Egypt speak Arabic. There are many **interesting** places to visit in Egypt. Tourists visit Egypt on holidays to enjoy its good weather. They can do many exciting things. They can enjoy beaches and delicious food. **They** can buy souvenirs and take photos of many historical places. They always say that Egypt is a safe country. We love our country Egypt and work hard to help it develop.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What's the main idea of the passage? ....
2. How is the weather in Egypt? ....
3. Which places do you recommend to tourists to visit? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "**they**" refers to ....
   a) Egyptians b) tourists c) holidays d) beaches
5. Egypt is in the .... of Africa.
   a) east b) west c) south d) north-east
6. The word "**interesting**" means ....
   a) awesome b) wonderful c) fantastic d) all of these

D Vocabulary and Structure

5

4 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. A sensible person makes good ....
   a) sport b) hobby c) decisions d) time
2. Osama likes playing football, basketball .... tennis.
   a) and b) but c) so d) because
3. .... on the icon on your laptop.
   a) Play b) Read c) Click d) Tap

4. This is my uncle and .... name is Ali.

a) her b) his c) their d) hers

5. The .... is my favourite place to go in summer to swim.

a) airport b) mountain c) beach d) desert

6. We .... a picnic last holiday.

a) had b) made c) took d) gave

7. A .... is a place where we do sports at school.

a) waterwheel b) fair c) funfair d) playground

8. It's important .... your homework regularly.

a) does b) doing c) to do d) done

9. Students .... go to school on Fridays.

a) always b) often c) never d) usually

10. Habiba is a top .... in Africa.

a) gymnast b) gymnastics c) training d) goal

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Is your father got a moustache? (..............................)
2. My sister goes to a girl's school. (..............................)
3. Grandma read a book now. (..............................)
4. Rami likes basketball and he doesn't like volleyball. (..............................)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your favourite hobby"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

24

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 4

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1. Tamer is .... years old.
   a) 7 b) 8
   c) 9 d) 10
2. Tamer lives in ....
   a) Cairo b) Alexandria
   c) Luxor d) Aswan
3. Tamer has got .... brothers.
   a) three b) four
   c) two d) five
4. Tamer likes playing ....
   a) chess b) football
   c) basketball d) tennis

B Language Functions

2.5

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Samar and Aya are talking about how they go to school.

Samar : How do you go to school?
Aya : (1).. . And you?
Samar : I usually go to school by bus.
Aya : (2)..?
Samar : Because my school is far away.
Aya : (3)..?
Samar : It takes 50 minutes.
Aya : Which is better, to go to school in the car or on the bus?
Samar : (4).. . It's faster than the bus.
Aya : (5).. .

C Reading Comprehension

4.5

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Ahmed loves nature. He likes walking and watching the trees, animals, flowers and insects all around him. He **doesn't like** being in the house, but he loves being in the garden. His favourite place is the park near his house. He can see lots of different kinds of birds there. He has got a mobile phone. He takes lots of photos of flowers and birds, but he doesn't send text messages or make video calls. He doesn't like playing video games.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title to this passage. ....
2. What does Ahmed use his mobile phone for? ....
3. Why do you think Ahmed doesn't like playing video games? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Ahmed doesn't send ....
   a) letters b) text messages c) photos d) emails
5. The underlined word "there" refers to the ....
   a) birds b) home c) school d) park
6. The verb "**doesn't like**" has the same meaning as ....
   a) enjoys b) hates c) loves d) prefers

D Vocabulary and Structure

5

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My .... is my mother's or father's brother.
   a) uncle b) son c) aunt d) grandmother
2. A .... is a hole in the mountain.
   a) lake b) cave c) river d) forest
3. .... work is work you do for no money.
   a) Manual b) Voluntary c) Hard d) Easy
4. Maria has a car. .... colour is red.
   a) Its b) It's c) Her d) His

5. My daughters always .... to pop music.

a) listening   b) are listening   c) listens   d) listen

6. Athletes work hard to .... their studies, work and their families.

a) practise   b) balance   c) research   d) volunteer

7. Don't .... photos to people you don't know.

a) receive   b) send   c) make   d) see

8. The girl's brothers are .... tennis.

a) playing   b) play   c) played   d) plays

9. I usually .... my homework after school.

a) do   b) make   c) take   d) give

10. It's important to .... safe online.

a) sleep   b) stand   c) sit   d) stay

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. My mother go to Paris last year. (....................)
2. Is there some milk in the fridge. (....................)
3. Look! She watches a new film on TV. (....................)
4. Let's has some juice. (....................)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

"How to stay safe online"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

24

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

4

1. Where does your family live?
   a) In Paris. b) In Cairo.
   c) In Sohag. d) In Aswan.
2. What's your mother's job?
   a) A doctor. b) A nurse.
   c) An engineer. d) A teacher.
3. Where does your father work?
   a) In Paris. b) In Cairo.
   c) In Tanta. d) In Alexandria.
4. How many brothers do you have?
   a) One. b) Two.
   c) Three. d) None.

B Language Functions

2.5

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Samir is asking Ali about his favourite hobbies.

Samir : What's your favourite hobby?
Ali : (1).. .
Samir : (2).. ?
Ali : I play it in the club.
Samir : (3).. ?
Ali : I go there by bus.
Samir : Who do you play it with?
Ali : (4).. .
Samir : Do you have any other hobbies?
Ali : (5).. .

C Reading Comprehension

4.5

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name's Anas. I'm twelve years old. This year, I'm in preparatory one at school. I have a **wonderful** break time at school. It comes after the fourth lesson. It is usually between 11 and 11:30 in the morning. Break time is quite important because it makes us ready for the coming lessons. We never stay in our classes during the break. Some students play sports in the playground. Others open their lunch boxes and start eating together. I really enjoy myself during the break. After lunch, I go to the school library where there are lots of good books to read or borrow.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the text? ....
2. What does the underlined word "Others" refer to? ....
3. Do you like break time? Why/Why not? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Students .... in classes during the break.
   a) always stay   b) don't stay   c) study   d) revise
5. Anas .... the break.
   a) doesn't like   b) never likes   c) hates   d) likes
6. The word "**wonderful**" means ....
   a) amazing   b) boring   c) ugly   d) strange

D Vocabulary and Structure

5

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Your brother is your parents' ....
   a) sister   b) brother   c) daughter   d) son
2. I enjoy playing .... online.
   a) chips   b) chance   c) chess   d) cheese
3. Habiba Marzouk wants to .... her dreams and go to the Olympics.
   a) check   b) achieve   c) play   d) give

4. It's half .... seven.

a) past b) of c) to d) too

5. We went to the park and had .... there. We were very happy.

a) fan b) fine c) fin d) fun

6. There are many interesting .... in this story.

a) devices b) characters c) players d) actors

7. Her hair isn't .... It's straight.

a) curly b) easy c) normal d) famous

8. I .... black hair. I have got brown hair.

a) have got b) has got c) haven't got d) hasn't got

9. .... Mona drive a car?

a) Do b) Has c) Can d) Is

10. He never .... his breakfast at school.

a) have b) has c) doesn't have d) not have

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. My brother are playing football now. (..........................)
2. Maher always is busy on school days. (..........................)
3. He buys some books last week. (..........................)
4. This pen belongs to Sami. It is him. (..........................)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

"A famous sports star"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

7 Qalyubia Governorate (East Shoubra Educational Directorate)

24

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1. How many sisters does she have?
   a) No one. b) One.
   c) Two. d) Three.
2. How old is Faten?
   a) Ten. b) Eleven.
   c) Twelve. d) Thirteen.
3. Where was she born?
   a) In Cairo. b) In Alexandria.
   c) In Giza. d) In Aswan.
4. How many brothers has Faten got?
   a) No one. b) One.
   c) Two. d) Three.

B Language Functions

2.5

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Reda is meeting Bassem who bought a new mobile.

Reda : Good morning, Bassem.

Bassem : Good morning, Reda.

Reda : What a nice mobile! When did you buy it?

Bassem : (1) ....

Reda : (2) .... ?

Bassem : 6700 pounds.

Reda : (3) .... Can you come with me to buy one?

Bassem : (4) ....

Reda : (5) .... ?

Bassem : We can go this evening.

C Reading Comprehension

4.5

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

I have got many friends, but Karim is my best friend. He has got short, dark **straight** hair. He lives in Hurghada with his mum, dad and two sisters. His favourite sport is swimming. He goes swimming twice a week. Karim is a big fan of Mohamed Salah. He always watches football matches on TV and sometimes he goes to the club. In the club, he plays football with his friends.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title to the passage. ....
2. How often does Karim go swimming? ....
3. Why do you think Karim goes to the club? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Karim has got short, ... straight hair.
   a) dark b) light c) red d) brown
5. The underlined pronoun "He" refers to ....
   a) Mohamed Salah b) Karim
   c) Karim's father d) Karim's friend
6. The word "**straight**" is the opposite of ....
   a) blond b) long c) curly d) short

D Vocabulary and Structure

5

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/An .... has no mother or father.
   a) gymnast b) engineer c) teacher d) orphan
2. I can't drive, I .... drive a car.
   a) often b) sometimes c) never d) usually
3. A/An .... is a room at the top of the house.
   a) stairs b) hall c) kitchen d) attic
4. This is my aunt. .... name is Amal.
   a) His b) Her c) Hers d) She
5. .... is the study of numbers.
   a) Art b) Music c) Mathematics d) Economics

6. I can't use my tablet. I need to .... it.

a) charge b) finish c) print d) wave

7. I .... a picnic yesterday.

a) has b) had c) have d) having

8. My father's daughter is my ....

a) sister b) uncle c) aunt d) son

9. I have some .... from Khan El-Khalili.

a) vegetables b) souvenirs c) players d) picnics

10. I bought a new MP3 .... to play music on.

a) speaker b) computer c) player d) user

5 Read and correct the underlined words: (2)

1. He drink tea every day. (....................)
2. My sister has getting short, curly hair. (....................)
3. Is there any chairs in the room? (....................)
4. Does Hala cleaning the house at the moment? (....................)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on: (6)

"A day on the beach"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

24

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب. 4

1. We .... drink too much fruit juice.
   a) shouldn't b) should
   c) isn't d) doesn't
2. We should eat between two and .... pieces of fruit a day.
   a) four b) eight
   c) one d) ten
3. Fruit juice has got a lot of ....
   a) salt b) cold
   c) fat d) sugar
4. Fruit is .... for us.
   a) useful b) bad
   c) useless d) boring

B Language Functions

2.5

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Salma is asking Fatma about her favourite food.

Salma : What's your favourite food, Fatma?

Fatma : (1).. .

Salma : (2).. ?

Fatma : They are rice, pasta, lentils and tomatoes.

Salma : How often do you eat it?

Fatma : (3).. .

Salma : (4).. ?

Fatma : I'd like to eat it at the restaurant.

Salma : Is it delicious?

Fatma : (5).. .

C Reading Comprehension

4.5

3 **Read the following, then answer the questions:**

Hello! I'm Ahmed. I like technology very much. So I want to write about my mobile phone. It's a modern and expensive one. I got it from my parents on my birthday last week. I like it very much. I always keep it in my bag. It's got a calculator, so I sometimes use it at school. I call my friends with it. It's got a camera. I take selfies with it all the time. I also go onto the internet to get information about my study. It's very **useful** for me.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is this passage about? ....
2. When did Ahmed get his mobile phone? ....
3. Do you have a mobile phone? What do you do with it? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. We can use a calculator when we study ....
   a) English b) maths c) history d) art
5. The word "**useful**" means ....
   a) useless b) beautiful c) helpful d) wonderful
6. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the ....
   a) camera b) mobile phone
   c) school d) internet

D Vocabulary and Structure

5

4 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Osama .... voluntary work in a children's hospital.
   a) makes b) has c) does d) acts
2. This room belongs to my daughters, it's ....
   a) theirs b) their c) them d) they
3. .... are brothers or sisters who are the same age.
   a) Teams b) Twins c) Tools d) Trains

4. All of us are .... of Dr. Ahmed Zewail. He was a scientist.

a) sad b) angry c) proud d) careful

5. We should always .... school rules.

a) break b) run c) follow d) wear

6. Those are my .... bicycles.

a) friends' b) friend is c) friends d) friend

7. How often does she .... tea a day?

a) has b) had c) have d) having

8. I like this film; it has got a lot of ....

a) adventures b) glasses c) posts d) legs

9. Our teacher gets .... when we don't do the homework.

a) funny b) busy c) brave d) angry

10. He watched a/an .... with a famous actor on TV.

a) match b) screen c) cinema d) interview

5 Read and correct the underlined words: 2

1. **A:** Were you waiting for Ali? **B:** Yes, I am. (..................)
2. He never come to school late. (..................)
3. Have he got English today? (..................)
4. My uncle is my fathers brother. (..................)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on: 6

"Your favourite school subject"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

24

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

4

1. Where is Reem from?
   a) Giza. b) Benha. c) Tanta. d) Cairo.
2. What subject does she like?
   a) Science. b) Maths.
   c) Arabic. d) English.
3. How good is she at maths?
   a) Not bad. b) Not good.
   c) Good. d) Very good.
4. What is her favourite hobby?
   a) Watching TV. b) Listening to music.
   c) Swimming. d) Reading.

2.5

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Nadeen asks Nada about her holiday.

Nadeen : Where did you go on holiday last year?

Nada : (1).. .

Nadeen : Did you swim in the sea?

Nada : (2).. .

Nadeen : (3)..?

Nada : I ate a lot of fish.

Nadeen : Where did you stay?

Nada : (4).. .

Nadeen : (5)..?

Nada : Yes, I made sandcastles.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Last year, my father and I visited Cairo in January. We spent a night there. We stayed in a big hotel. We wanted to go to the Egyptian Museum, so we took the metro because it is the **cheapest** and quickest system in Cairo. When we arrived at the museum, we saw a lot of amazing things and learnt a lot about Egypt's history. After that, we returned to the hotel by taxi. It was an interesting trip!

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What's this passage about? ....
2. What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to? ....
3. What other places do you recommend for them? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. In the museum, they knew things about ....
   a) geography b) Arabic c) history d) maths
5. The word "**cheapest**" means ....
   a) not expensive b) expensive
   c) costly d) costs a lot of money
6. They went to Cairo last ....
   a) summer b) spring c) winter d) autumn

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She's a/an .... She lost her father and mother.
   a) clever b) orphan c) sensible d) brave
2. My brother is in Italy. I really miss ....
   a) his b) he c) him d) them
3. On a .... weekend, I visit my grandmother.
   a) little b) typical c) small d) much
4. At school, you .... talk to your friends at break.
   a) has to b) mustn't c) can d) can't

5. Can you tell me more about his ....?

a) features b) feathers c) weather d) leather

6. There is a mouse .... the laptop on the teacher's desk.

a) near b) next c) in front d) between

7. A .... is something you buy to remember a holiday.

a) souvenir b) medal c) view d) prize

8. The .... for making pizza was easy.

a) cook b) instruction c) recipe d) ingredient

9. You should look .... your teeth.

a) after b) for c) of d) like

10. He is a good footballer. He .... a lot of goals.

a) plays b) scores c) gives d) records

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. We drink tea at the moment. (........................)
2. Habiba is a gymnast. His family lives in Cairo. (........................)
3. They visited their grandmother three weeks before. (........................)
4. Can I have any water? (........................)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

"A fantastic day you spent"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

24

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1. Where did you travel last week?
   a) To Port Said. b) To Aswan.
   c) To Cairo. d) To Sohag.
2. Where did your father buy the tickets?
   a) At Ramses Station. b) In Alexandria.
   c) At the train d) In Port Said.
3. How did you travel?
   a) By taxi. b) By train.
   c) By plane. d) By car.
4. How was the journey?
   a) Fine. b) Cool.
   c) Sad. d) Bad.

B Language Functions

2.5

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Salem is asking Amir about his father.

Salem : What's your father's job?

Amir : (1).. .

Salem : Does he like his job?

Amir : (2).. . He likes helping people.

Salem : (3)..?

Amir : He works in a big hospital in Alexandria.

Salem : (4)..?

Amir : His holiday is on Fridays.

Salem : Do you want to be a doctor, too?

Amir : (5).. .

C Reading Comprehension

4.5

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Mustafa was a poor man, but he worked hard. His job was to clean the streets. One day, while he was going back home, he saw an old lady trying to cross the street. He hurried to help her, but she fell down and hurt her leg. He carried her to the nearest hospital. The doctor gave her some medicine. She called Mustafa and said to him, "I live alone. Thank you for your help and this bag is for you." To his surprise, it was full of money and the woman died after half an hour.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is this passage about? ....
2. Do you think Mustafa was a good man? Why? ....
3. Where did Mustafa take the old lady? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "He" refers to ....
   a) Mustafa b) the old lady c) the bag d) hospital
5. Mustafa became a .... man.
   a) poor b) rich c) bad d) silly
6. After giving Mustafa the bag, the lady ....
   a) slept b) cried c) died d) ran

D Vocabulary and Structure

5

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My grandfather is .... Khalil.
   a) cold b) killed c) called d) call
2. Magdy has tickets to see the new play at the ....
   a) theatre b) bus c) playground d) restaurant
3. You can .... on the icon and find information.
   a) tap b) tape c) try d) look
4. A .... is something you do not want to tell people about.
   a) truth b) lie c) secret d) story

5. Mustafa loves .... art at school.

a) doing b) do c) does d) did

6. An engineer usually .... new roads.

a) build b) is building c) builds d) to build

7. An email is a simple .... sent through the internet.

a) gift b) passage c) message d) notebook

8. Be .... You can't go out without a coat in this weather.

a) printable b) stupid c) happy d) sensible

9. I have short, dark curly ....

a) hear b) hair c) ear d) her

10. I don't like these cakes because they have .... sugar.

a) too much b) too many c) enough d) a lot

5 Read and correct the underlined words: (2)

1. This red bag belongs to Karim. It's hers. (..........................)
2. Asks for help from a parent or teacher. (..........................)
3. I can pick up that box. My arms are weak. (..........................)
4. What games do you playing online? (..........................)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on: (6)

"Your daily life"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

11 **Beheira Governorate** (Etay El-Baroud Educational Directorate)

24

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 4

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1. Ali goes to school with ....
   a) Sami b) Hani
   c) his parents d) Sami and Hani
2. Ali is in the .... stage.
   a) nursery b) preparatory
   c) secondary d) university
3. Ali goes to school ....
   a) by train b) by bus
   c) by car d) on foot
4. Ali's parents work in the same ....
   a) school b) factory
   c) hospital d) shop

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue: 2.5

Azza and Heba are talking about hobbies.

Azza : What is your favourite hobby?

Heba: (1).. .

Azza : (2)..?

Heba: I like reading science books.

Azza : (3)..?

Heba: My favourite writer is Dr. Mostafa Mahmoud.

Azza : Does he write science books?

Heba: (4).. .

Azza : Is he still alive?

Heba: (5).. . He died in 2009.

C Reading Comprehension

4.5

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

One of the most important things in our life is health. Everyone wants to keep healthy, but some people think it is too hard because they are too busy. There are some easy things you should do to keep healthy. You should drink water instead of fizzy drinks. Fizzy drinks taste good, but they have much sugar. Too much sugar will make you **gain weight**. You should also exercise because this will help you not to get sick or feel tired. Finally, you should avoid too much food.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What's the main idea of the passage? ....
2. What should we drink instead of fizzy drinks? ....
3. From your point of view, what else should we do to keep healthy? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "this" in the passage means ....
   a) fizzy drink b) exercise c) food d) feeling tired
5. .... is not a healthy drink.
   a) Milk b) Cola c) Water d) Lemonade
6. "**Gain weight**" means to be ....
   a) small b) big c) thin d) fat

D Vocabulary and Structure

5

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My teacher is proud of .... because I always get high marks.
   a) I b) my c) mine d) me
2. What school .... should we follow?
   a) games b) rules c) gates d) classes
3. A/An .... person is happy to do something dangerous.
   a) busy b) scary c) brave d) old
4. They used a/an .... to make a plastic model.
   a) coin b) mobile phone c) charger d) 3D printer

5. Yasser has got a wheelchair .... he cannot walk very well.

a) so b) because c) and d) but

6. This sign says, "Put your .... in the bin".

a) litter b) letter c) car d) Hit

7. We .... visit the temple last week.

a) don't b) doesn't c) didn't d) haven't

8. Some children in Egypt .... to school every day.

a) circle b) cycle c) recycle d) bicycle

9. I had an adventure last year. I climbed a ....

a) jungle b) forest c) mountain d) beach

10. Get all the .... together before you start cooking.

a) grades b) menus c) ingredients d) degrees

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

2

1. Ali don't play football after school. (...........................)
2. This is Ali and Sami house. (...........................)
3. There aren't any sugar in my tea. (...........................)
4. Don't drink too many fruit juice. (...........................)

6

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your favourite story"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

24

A Listening

4

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1. Mohamed Salah can score lots of ....
   a) names b) goals
   c) days d) facts
2. He can run very ....
   a) fast b) slow
   c) short d) weak
3. He lives in ....
   a) Egypt b) England
   c) France d) China
4. Mohamed Salah has many ....
   a) brothers b) sisters
   c) cousins d) fans

B Language Functions

2.5

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Yunis and Ahmed are talking at school.

Yunis : It's the bell. What subject have we got next?

Ahmed : (1).. .

Yunis : Social studies! I'm not very good at social studies.

Ahmed : (2)..?

Yunis : My favourite subject is science. What about you?

Ahmed : (3).. .

Yunis : Are you good at English?

Ahmed : (4).. .

Yunis : (5)..?

Ahmed : Mr Amir is our English teacher this year.

C Reading Comprehension

4.5

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Many tourists come to Egypt from all over the world. Some of them come by ship, but most of them come by plane. Egypt is a fantastic place for a holiday. In Egypt, tourists can visit many exciting places. In Alexandria and Hurghada, they can enjoy beaches. In Cairo, they like to visit the Pyramids. There, they can ride camels and enjoy taking photos. In Old Cairo, they visit Khan El-Khalili. It's famous for its markets. They can buy **souvenirs** for their friends. They go to Luxor and Aswan to enjoy the old temples.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title to this passage. ....
2. How do most tourists come to Egypt? ....
3. Do you think that Egypt is a good place for tourists to visit? Why? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "**souvenirs**" means something you buy to .... a place.
   a) say b) remember c) stay d) understand
5. The underlined pronoun "them" refers to ....
   a) tourists b) friends c) beaches d) photos
6. Tourists like to visit the Pyramids to .... camels.
   a) take b) eat c) ride d) buy

D Vocabulary and Structure

5

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Good students work to a study .... It helps them to better organise their time.
   a) library b) playground c) laboratory d) timetable
2. At ...., I play games with my friends in the playground.
   a) classroom b) library c) gymnast d) break
3. My father went to the mechanic to fix the .... door.
   a) cars' b) car's c) car is d) car

4. A: What are your ....? B: Reading and playing football.
   a) subjects b) hobbies c) foods d) clubs
5. Nagy has got a wheelchair .... he can't walk.
   a) and b) because c) but d) so
6. When the battery of the mobile is low, I can use the ....
   a) cook b) printer c) charger d) keyboard
7. Last summer, we went to Siwa and climbed a ....
   a) mountain b) tent c) cave d) bike
8. Put rice and water in a .... before cooking rice pudding.
   a) bag b) teaspoon c) saucepan d) cup
9. A brave person is happy to do something ....
   a) funny b) bad c) terrible d) dangerous
10. You drink .... coffee. It's not good for you.
   a) too much b) too many c) enough d) lots

5 Read and correct the underlined words: 2

1. You are very good at draw. (........................)
2. Throw the ball to my, please. I'm waiting. (........................)
3. We go to the beach yesterday. (........................)
4. He working in the bank now. (........................)

E Writing

6

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your favourite meal"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

24

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

4

1. The boy's family lives in ....
   a) Paris b) Cairo
   c) London d) Dubai
2. Dad goes to the .... on Sundays.
   a) cinema b) market
   c) airport d) work
3. The plane takes .... hours to fly to Paris.
   a) five b) six
   c) seven d) eight
4. On Saturdays, they .... in the park.
   a) sleep early b) visit cousins
   c) do homework d) play football

B Language Functions

2.5

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Salwa is asking Manal about her school.

Salwa : Hello, Manal. How are you?

Manal : Hello, Salwa. (1).. .

Salwa : Where do you live?

Manal : (2).. .

Salwa : What is your favourite subject?

Manal : (3).. .

Salwa : (4)..?

Manal : I go to school by bus.

Salwa : (5)..?

Manal : I have got eight lessons every day.

C Reading Comprehension

4.5

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

A woman leaves her house one Saturday evening for a few hours. When she goes back home, she finds her front door open. Then, she sees a broken window. In the house, her jewellery boxes are on the floor. She turns over the boxes and sees they are empty.

She is **horrified** by what she sees next. There is a man on the floor. The thief has fallen asleep! The woman quietly goes to another room and calls the police. "Please hurry," she says, "before he wakes up and runs away." The police arrive right away. The thief is still taking a nap. The police arrest him. The woman is very happy.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the passage about? ....
2. How did the thief enter the house? ....
3. Do you think the woman was clever? Why? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "he" refers to the ....
   a) friend b) thief c) policeman d) husband
5. The woman was lucky because the thief was ....
   a) sleeping b) kind c) clever d) weak
6. The underlined word "**horrified**" means ....
   a) pleased b) happy c) frightened d) helpful

D Vocabulary and Structure

5

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We went to a good restaurant and .... delicious food.
   a) ate b) eaten c) eats d) eat
2. Mona always .... to the teacher.
   a) listen b) listening c) listens d) listened
3. Habiba eats well because .... is a difficult sport.
   a) gymnast b) gymnastics c) running d) walking

4. A: We didn't swim in the sea because it was very windy. B: What a ....!

a) pity b) dear c) really d) no

5. A clever person ....

a) helps people b) knows a lot
c) is unkind d) shouts at people

6. .... you wearing brown shoes?

a) Do b) Have c) Can d) Are

7. A .... is a large natural hole in the side of a mountain or hill.

a) rock b) hall c) home d) cave

8. Which of these is an ingredient?

a) A bottle. b) A bowl. c) Raisins. d) A spoon.

9. I had a really .... dream last night. I couldn't sleep well after it.

a) scary b) unhealthy c) delicious d) interesting

10. She .... on the icon and then wrote an email.

a) sent b) made c) tapped d) took

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

2

1. She always gets up late. She is active. (.........................)
2. Where do you spend your last holiday? (.........................)
3. Students shouldn't study their lessons. (.........................)
4. The childrens' bikes are very nice. (.........................)

E Writing

6

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

"A trip to a nice place you visited"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1. Omar loves ....

a) party b) break
c) nature d) phone

2. He likes .... trees and birds.

a) looking b) watching
c) being d) walking

3. He .... being in the garden.

a) hates b) dislikes
c) likes d) gets

4. He likes looking at the ....

a) garden b) zoo
c) house d) stars

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Khaled is asking Ali about his father's job.

Khaled : Hi, Ali. What's your father's job?

Ali : (1).. .

Khaled : (2)..?

Ali : He works in Tanta Prep School.

Khaled : (3)..?

Ali : He teaches English.

Khaled : Do his pupils like him?

Ali : (4).. .

Khaled : Do you want to be a teacher like him?

Ali : (5).. .

C Reading Comprehension

4.5

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Chess has a long history. The game has changed quite **a bit** from its earliest forms in India. The modern game we enjoy today wasn't known until the 16th century. The pieces weren't the same until the 19th century.

Chess as we know it today was born out of the Indian game "Chaturangat" before the 600s AD. The game went to Asia and Europe over the coming centuries, and became what we know as chess around the 16th century. One of the first masters of the game was a Spanish man named, Ruy Lobez. He wrote a book in 1561.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the text? ....
2. What does the underlined pronoun "He" refer to? ....
3. Do you like playing chess? Why/ Why not? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The word "**a bit**" is similar in meaning to ....

   a) much   b) a lot   c) many   d) a little

5. Chess started in ....

   a) America   b) Africa   c) Europe   d) India

6. Chess as we know started in the .... century.

   a) 15th   b) 16th   c) 18th   d) 19th

D Vocabulary and Structure

5

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My uncle likes .... work. He helps poor people for free.

   a) daily   b) voluntary   c) family   d) art

2. I hope to be in the next .... and win a medal.

   a) Olympics   b) party   c) holiday   d) break

3. Buses, trains and cars are means of ....

   a) rules   b) subjects   c) transport   d) colours

4. The hair growing over the man's mouth is called a/an ....

   a) band   b) moustache   c) ache   d) beard

5. Alice had a lot of .... in Wonderland.

a) adverbs b) addresses c) adjectives d) adventures

6. Lions are .... animals. We can't keep them at home.

a) nice b) scary c) quiet d) thin

7. Youssef is sending a/an .... message to his mother now.

a) selfie b) icon c) text d) test

8. Omar doesn't .... swimming when it is cold.

a) go b) going c) goes d) to go

9. There .... any books on the table.

a) are b) is c) aren't d) isn't

10. You should .... sports every day to be fit.

a) does b) doing c) do d) did

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Look! Sara is take a photo in the garden. (..........................)
2. Do Esraa work at a school? (..........................)
3. Hoda visit Cairo last month. (..........................)
4. There is too many sugar in my tea. I can't drink it. (..........................)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

"A review of a restaurant you visited"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

24

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 4

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1. How was Ali's holiday?
   a) Bad. b) Sad.
   c) Great. d) Boring.
2. Where did he go on holiday?
   a) Italy. b) France.
   c) Iraq. d) Jordan.
3. How did he travel?
   a) On a train. b) By plane.
   c) By ship. d) On foot.
4. Where did he stay?
   a) In a flat. b) In an attic.
   c) In a house. d) On a ship.

B Language Functions

2.5

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Omar is asking Maher about *Alice's adventures in Wonderland* story.

Omar : What's your favourite hobby, Maher?

Maher : (1).. .

Omar : Have you read "*Alice's adventures in Wonderland*"?

Maher : (2).. . It's a nice children's story.

Omar : (3).. ?

Maher : I think she is a sensible girl.

Omar : (4).. ?

Maher : Sensible means that she can think carefully.

Omar : Where do you usually read the stories?

Maher : (5).. .

C Reading Comprehension

4.5

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Technology is all around you. It helps **develop** most of the things we have in our kitchens like washing machines and fridges. Technology is when we take something from the world of science and make it into something that people use. It uses many different ideas. Scientists help to develop technology to keep our food cold by using the fridge. However, all of us like to eat hot food. In this way, scientists use technology to help all of us with our daily lives. They invented the telephones which we use to talk to others when we are not with them.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Where can you find technology? ....
2. What's the main idea of the passage? ....
3. Do you think that scientists are great people? Why? Why not? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to ....
   a) telephones b) technology c) scientists d) ideas
5. Washing machines and fridges are examples of ....
   a) scientists b) kitchens c) phones d) technology
6. The underlined word "**develop**" means ....
   a) improve b) use c) repair d) damage

D Vocabulary and Structure

5

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mohammed Salah is very good at .... goals.
   a) travelling b) scoring c) training d) dreaming
2. Social studies and science are school ....
   a) athletes b) objects c) subjects d) printers
3. Ahmed and Ali play .... together in the room.
   a) crisps b) cheese c) chess d) beach
4. Aya is not very good at art, ... she is very good at English.
   a) because b) so c) and d) but

5. I .... with a dolphin in Hurghada last summer.
   a) swims b) swim c) swam d) swimming
6. Ali didn't .... a film yesterday.
   a) saw b) see c) sees d) seen
7. Most children love food that has sweet ....
   a) test b) toast c) taste d) tasty
8. Cairo and Alexandria are big ....
   a) cities b) lakes c) countries d) deserts
9. I forgot my mobile .... I can't use it.
   a) password b) icon c) secret d) mouse
10. I prefer tea with much sugar, so add four .... for me, please.
   a) forks b) dishes c) teaspoons d) glasses

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. It's not my camera. My is new. (...........................)
2. She doesn't have some meat. (...........................)
3. Does she like watch TV? (...........................)
4. Didn't speak loudly. It is a bad habit. (...........................)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

"A description of your classroom"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....

24

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 4

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1. I .... English very much.
   a) like b) dislike
   c) hate d) know
2. English is my .... subject.
   a) bad b) favourite
   c) sad d) old
3. I watch English ....
   a) books b) pictures
   c) films d) drama
4. I read ....
   a) computer studies b) Arabic
   c) art d) stories

B Language Functions

2.5

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Asser is in a restaurant.

Waiter : Hello, what would you like to eat today?

Asser : Hello, (1).. .

Waiter : A small or a large pizza?

Asser : (2).. . I am not very hungry.

Waiter : (3)..?

Asser : I'd like to drink orange juice, please.

Waiter : Anything else?

Asser : No, thanks. (4)..?

Waiter : These are 150 pounds, please.

Asser : (5).. .

C Reading Comprehension

4.5

3 **Read the following, then answer the questions:**

Last summer, Youssef visited his uncle Mahmoud. His uncle lives in Cairo. It was the first time that Youssef had visited Cairo. It is a very big city. A lot of people live there. It is famous for interesting places. Youssef saw the Egyptian Museum. He also took the metro. It is very **quick**, easy and cheap. He travelled by boat on the Nile. He went shopping and bought nice things for his family. Youssef was very happy.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What's the best title of the passage? ....
2. When did Youssef visit his uncle? ....
3. Which places would you like to visit in Egypt? Why? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Mahmoud is Youssef's ....
   a) father b) uncle c) cousin d) brother
5. The word "**quick**" is the same meaning as ....
   a) cheap b) small c) slow d) fast
6. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to the ....
   a) boat b) Egyptian Museum
   c) metro d) Nile

D Vocabulary and Structure

5

4 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. I .... a dolphin in Hurghada last week.
   a) sees b) see c) saw d) seeing
2. .... on the icon on your laptop.
   a) Write b) Click c) Read d) Take
3. My favourite subject is .... I love learning about the past.
   a) history b) art c) maths d) Arabic
4. There .... any canals near our village.
   a) isn't b) aren't c) wasn't d) haven't

5. My uncle is very .... He chooses things wisely.

a) strong b) tall c) fast d) sensible

6. The Egyptian football team arrived .... Uganda two days ago.

a) in b) at c) for d) from

7. Buses, cars, trains and motorbikes are forms of ....

a) clothes b) transport c) subjects d) food

8. Sara likes art because she likes .... pictures.

a) draw b) draws c) drawing d) is draw

9. Ali always talks nicely to people. He's very ....

a) sad b) bad c) funny d) friendly

10. A blog is a/an .... diary.

a) online b) paper c) week d) book

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Does she watching TV? (..............................)
2. Gymnastics are my favourite sport. (..............................)
3. Have she got blond hair? (..............................)
4. Lamia wear glasses. (..............................)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Technology makes our life easy"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

24

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

4

1. Anas went to Paris with his ....
   a) friend b) father
   c) brother d) uncle
2. Anas stayed in a ....
   a) hotel b) house
   c) tower d) market
3. Anas bought a souvenir for ....
   a) sister b) Ahmed
   c) uncle d) Omar
4. The souvenir was a small ....
   a) hotel b) Eiffel Tower
   c) market d) Paris

B Language Functions

2.5

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Ahmed and Khalid are talking about their hobbies.

Ahmed : Did you do your English homework?

Khalid : (1).. .

Ahmed : (2)..?

Khalid : I did it last night.

Ahmed : (3)..?

Khalid : Sure. I like drawing.

Ahmed : What do you like drawing?

Khalid : (4)... What about you?

Ahmed : (5).. .

Khalid : So, you go to the library at break.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Mr Adel took his wife, Mrs Amira and his children to the park. They arrived there at 10 a.m. Mr Adel and his wife sat under a tree. Their children were very **glad**. They ran and jumped on the grass. Amira decided to take some photos of them. While she was taking her camera out of her bag, she heard a cry. An old lady was running after a thief who took her mobile phone and started to run away.

Amira quickly took three photos of him. She showed the police the photos. A few hours later, the police caught the thief.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What's the passage about? ....
2. How do you think technology helped the old lady? ....
3. What does the underlined pronoun "him" refer to? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "**glad**" means ....
   a) busy b) happy c) sad d) bad
5. Amira was a .... woman.
   a) lazy b) clever c) stupid d) helpless
6. The thief took a .... from the old lady.
   a) photo b) camera c) mobile phone d) newspaper

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Habiba eats well because .... is a difficult sport.
   a) gym b) gymnastics c) gymnast d) gymnasium
2. When her parents died in an accident, she became a/an ....
   a) orphan b) band c) character d) nature
3. We know it is time for the next lesson when we hear the ....
   a) bill b) bell c) peel d) ball
4. A busy person is always ....
   a) talking b) walking c) laughing d) doing something

5. I'd like to .... a selfie in front of the river.

a) take b) tap c) do d) make

6. .... are a lot of trees and bushes that cover a large area.

a) Deserts b) Rivers c) Waterfalls d) Forests

7. My mother uses healthy .... when she cooks our food.

a) lists b) subjects c) ingredients d) castles

8. Our parents are proud of .... because we work hard at school.

a) us b) we c) our d) me

9. Nader has got a wheelchair .... he cannot walk very well.

a) so b) because c) and d) but

10. There are .... people in the market today.

a) too much b) much c) a lot d) too many

5 Read and correct the underlined words: (2)

1. This is the teacher room. They usually sit in it. (..........................)
2. Nader have got short dark hair. (..........................)
3. Doesn't give your personal information to anyone. (..........................)
4. There are many people at the station yesterday. (..........................)

E Writing

(6)

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

"A holiday you spent in a nice place"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

24

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1. Jamila lives in ....
   a) Jordan b) Egypt
   c) Algeria d) Morocco
2. Tagine is a/an .... meal in her country.
   a) traditional b) old
   c) new d) modern
3. Jamila's favourite .... is tagine.
   a) hobby b) subject
   c) food d) sport
4. There are meat and .... in this meal.
   a) crisps b) spices
   c) fish d) spoon

B Language Functions

2.5

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Ann is asking Sara about her phone.

Ann : Hi, Sara. Do you have a mobile phone?

Sara : Oh! Yes, but (1).. .

Ann : Why do you want to change it?

Sara : Because it became very old and (2).. .

Ann : Three cameras! Why so?

Sara : (3).. .

Ann : (4)..?

Sara : Yes, I think it will be very expensive.

Ann : (5)..?

Sara : It may cost 5000 pounds.

C Reading Comprehension

4.5

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name is Hani. I love technology so much. Modern technology is so important in our life. It has made our life easy and comfortable. The mobile phone is a good example of technology, I always use my mobile phone to make calls, take selfies and play games. My favourite hobby is playing video games. Another example of technology is the internet. I always use the internet to text my friends. Also, <u>it</u> helps me a lot with my study. Finally, I'd like to say that technology is so important and we can't live without it.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title to the passage. ....
2. What's Hani's favourite hobby? ....
3. What do you think of modern technology? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "<u>it</u>" refers to the ....
   a) call b) hobby c) internet d) sport
5. Hani uses his mobile phone to .... video games.
   a) play b) say c) write d) text
6. Without technology, our life will be ....
   a) difficult b) favourite c) expensive d) comfortable

D Vocabulary and Structure

5

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I always work hard to .... my dream.
   a) store b) play c) boil d) achieve
2. Look at the .... to know your lessons today.
   a) watch b) table c) timetable d) calendar
3. Belal went to a .... school to learn English.
   a) music b) language c) dance d) camp
4. Look at the .... and choose your food.
   a) menu b) book c) coffee d) chair

5. After we put sugar in the tea, we should .... it.

a) cut b) stir c) eat d) add

6. My school .... is white shirt and black pants.

a) inform b) form c) uniform d) picture

7. The .... serves food and drinks in a restaurant.

a) water b) mechanic c) customer d) waiter

8. This dress belongs to Mona. It's ....

a) hers b) she c) her d) his

9. Hamza .... a message now.

a) writes b) is writing c) writing d) write

10. Are there .... olives in the fridge?

a) some b) much c) any d) an

5 Read and correct the underlined words: (2)

1. Doesn't play in the street, Omar. (..........................)
2. You should cleaned your teeth in the morning. (..........................)
3. Were Habiba happy yesterday? (..........................)
4. Jomana doesn't watches TV every day. (..........................)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on: (6)

"Voluntary work"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

24

A Listening

4

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1. What sport does Mohamed Salah play?
   a) Football. b) Tennis.
   c) Basketball. d) Karate.
2. What is Mohamed Salah good at?
   a) Drawing. b) Singing.
   c) Reading. d) Scoring goals.
3. How tall is Mohamed Salah?
   a) 1.75. b) 1.57.
   c) 2.75. d) 3.75.
4. What does Mohamed Salah look like?
   a) He's scary. b) He's unkind.
   c) He's got curly hair. d) He is fat.

B Language Functions

2.5

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Mona is asking Nada about her favourite food.

Mona : Hello, Nada. How are you?

Nada : (1).. .

Mona : What is your favourite food?

Nada : (2).. .

Mona : Koshari! Fantastic. (3).. ?

Nada : My mother cooks it well.

Mona : Is it delicious?

Nada : (4).. .

Mona : (5).. ?

Nada : I usually eat it at home with my family.

C Reading Comprehension

4.5

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name is Fady and my best friend is called Ali. He has got straight hair and brown eyes. **He** is kind and funny. He likes reading and playing video games. Those are my favourite hobbies, too! Ali has got a wheelchair because he cannot walk. It is not **easy** for Ali to travel around school. I open the doors for Ali and I help him to get things in the classroom. Ali's wheelchair is not usually a problem. We sometimes have lunch together. Ali cannot run, but he is fast in his wheelchair! I like Ali because he is a lot of fun. I am very happy that he is my friend.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title to the passage. ....
2. What are Ali's favourite hobbies? ....
3. What do you think of Fady? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "easy" is the opposite of ....
   a) simple b) clear c) different d) difficult
5. They sometimes .... together.
   a) watch TV b) have lunch c) play football d) go shopping
6. The underlined word "**He**" refers to ....
   a) Fady b) video c) Ali d) school

D Vocabulary and Structure

5

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Social studies and science are school ....
   a) objects b) subjects c) teams d) groups
2. To .... is to sleep for a time in a tent.
   a) buy b) visit c) camp d) ride
3. The film was .... I enjoyed it very much.
   a) boring b) bad c) exciting d) excited
4. He goes to school by bike. He likes ....
   a) cycling b) walking c) driving d) running

5. We have a beautiful .... on the floor of the living room.

a) fridge b) curtain c) carpet d) TV

6. A .... is a group of people who play music together.

a) hand b) team c) band d) song

7. Don't tell people you don't know your .... information.

a) worried b) sunny c) personal d) colourful

8. Hadeer .... a sports car.

a) never drives b) drives never c) never drive d) never

9. Amira .... got a car. She walks to work.

a) have b) haven't c) has d) hasn't

10. I don't .... to music.

a) listens b) listening c) listen d) listened

5 Read and correct the underlined words: 2

1. Give this phone to Ahmed. It's hers. (..........................)
2. What do you eat for dinner last night? (..........................)
3. They are watch TV now. (..........................)
4. There is too many water in the bottle. (..........................)

E Writing

6

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your typical school day"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

24

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 4

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1. What's your favourite subject?
   a) English. b) Arabic.
   c) Maths d) Computer studies.
2. When do you often have it?
   a) On Sundays. b) On Mondays.
   c) On Tuesdays. d) On Fridays.
3. What's the teacher's name?
   a) Mr Ali. b) Mr Ahmed.
   c) Mr Adel. d) Mrs Mona.
4. What is the teacher like?
   a) Bad. b) Tall.
   c) Short. d) Kind.

B Language Functions

2.5

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Ahmed is talking to Ayman.

Ahmed : Can I ask you some questions?

Ayman : (1) ....

Ahmed : (2).. ?

Ayman : I'm twelve years old.

Ahmed : (3).. ?

Ayman : I live with my father, mother and two sisters.

Ahmed : How do you go to school?

Ayman : (4).. .

Ahmed : What's your favourite subject?

Ayman : (5).. .

C Reading Comprehension

4.5

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Cairo is the biggest city in Africa. It's the capital city of Egypt, about 8,000,000 people live here, and thousands of tourists visit it every day. There are lots of things to see and do. There are several places of interest in Cairo such as the Egyptian Museum, the Cairo Tower and Khan El-Khalili. Cairo's streets are always busy, but don't worry, there are many ways to get around. There are lots of means of transport such as the metro, big buses and taxis. The metro is the quickest and easiest way to travel around the city.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage? ....
2. What's the biggest city in Africa? ....
3. Why do you think thousands of tourists visit Cairo? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Cairo's streets are always busy. The word "busy" means ....
   a) crowded b) free c) quiet d) empty
5. .... is the quickest means of transport in Cairo.
   a) The metro b) The bike c) The cart d) The bus
6. The underlined pronoun "**it**" refers to ....
   a) Cairo b) Africa b) Egypt d) tourist

D Vocabulary and Structure

5

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The children who live on the other side of the lake, go to school in a ....
   a) car b) canoe c) bicycle d) snowmobile
2. My favourite book is .... "Treasure Island".
   a) cold b) called c) pulled d) scored
3. I love .... I like watching trees, animals and flowers.
   a) technology b) games c) nature d) sport
4. My brother is good at .... He likes numbers.
   a) maths b) sports c) social studies d) languages

5. People do .... work without getting money.

a) voluntary b) business c) group d) job

6. Vegetables and fruits are ....

a) healthy b) health c) wealthy d) unhealthy

7. Heidi is very sad to be .... from her grandfather.

a) way b) away c) a way d) weight

8. Hany told Samy that it was nice to see ....

a) him b) his c) he d) her

9. I .... got glasses, but my sister has got glasses.

a) have b) hasn't c) haven't d) has

10. How does Sami .... when his father is at home?

a) feel b) feels c) felt d) feeling

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Do Esraa work at a school? (..........................)
2. When I am eight, I went to Siwa. (..........................)
3. She goes always running in the morning. (..........................)
4. He study his lessons now. (..........................)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

"A visit to the zoo"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

24

A Listening

4

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1. Where is your school?
   a) Far from my house. b) Near my house.
   c) Far from the shop. d) Near the shop.
2. How do you go to school?
   a) On foot. b) By car.
   c) By bus. d) By train.
3. How is your school?
   a) Big. b) Small.
   c) Clean. d) Tidy.
4. What's your mother's job?
   a) A nurse. b) A doctor.
   c) A teacher. d) A housewife.

B Language Functions

2.5

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Wael is playing chess online.

Basel : What are you doing, Wael?
Wael : (1).. .
Basel : (2).. ?
Wael : I am playing with John.
Basel : John! (3).. ?
Wael : He is my English friend.
Basel : Do you always play online?
Wael : (4).. .
Basel : Can I play with you next time?
Wael : (5).. .

C Reading Comprehension

4.5

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Last August, when the weather was hot, we went to the beach near my home in Hurghada. Mariam made this sandcastle. There was a cave in the rocks. But Mariam didn't want to go into it, because she was **frightened**! Last October, we visited my uncle, aunt and cousins in Cairo. We had a picnic in Al-Azhar Park. We ate delicious food, then we played games and my cousin Ali rode his bike. When I was eight, we went to Siwa. We swam in the lake, and climbed the mountain. We saw camels and slept in a tent in the desert. It was my favourite holiday!

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What's the main idea of the passage? ....
2. What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to? ....
3. Do you think that they enjoyed their visit to Cairo? Why? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The word "frightened" means very ....
   a) strong b) happy c) afraid d) angry
5. Al-Azhar Park is in ....
   a) Cairo b) Hurghada c) Siwa d) Aswan
6. "August" is a/an .... month.
   a) winter b) summer c) autumn d) spring

D Vocabulary and Structure

5

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We put food in the .... to stay cold.
   a) pot b) pan c) fridge d) kitchen
2. It is always very .... in summer.
   a) hot b) cold c) rainy d) snowy
3. He has got dark hair and a ....
   a) beard b) heard c) bird d) tired
4. Camels are very .... They can carry 200 kilos of bags!
   a) tall b) short c) weak d) strong

5. I like pizza. It's a delicious ....

a) mail b) male

c) meal d) mile

6. Something scary makes you feel ....

a) sad b) bad c) funny d) frightened

7. Your .... is a word or numbers you use to go onto a website.

a) passport b) book c) bag d) password

8. .... any printers?

a) There is b) Is there c) Are there d) There are

9. How .... your last holiday?

a) was b) did c) is d) does

10. Look! She .... in the garden.

a) plays b) played c) play d) is playing

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. What is your mother <u>do</u>? (..............................)
2. <u>Keeping</u> your password secret. (..............................)
3. You should <u>to clean</u> your teeth in the morning. (..............................)
4. There <u>are</u> too much salt in the recipe. (..............................)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Healthy food"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

24

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب. 4

1. When did you go to the zoo?
   a) Last year. b) Last month.
   c) Yesterday. d) Last week.
2. What did you see in the cave?
   a) Birds. b) Monkeys.
   c) Bats. d) Nothing.
3. How were the monkeys?
   a) Tired. b) Bored.
   c) Asleep. d) Ill.
4. How was the cave?
   a) Light. b) Dark.
   c) Windy. d) Sunny.

B Language Functions

2.5

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Ahmed is talking to his friend Omar about sports.

Ahmed : I like sports.

Omar : (1)..?

Ahmed : I like football.

Omar : (2)..?

Ahmed : Mohammad Salah.

Omar : Why do you like him?

Ahmed : (3).. .

Omar : What does he look like?

Ahmed : (4).. .

Omar : (5).. .

C Reading Comprehension

4.5

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name is Magdy. I am twelve years old. I love sports. I go to a preparatory school for boys. My dad's name is Mohammad. He is a teacher of English. He is a good teacher. All the students like **him** because he is kind and helpful. My mum's name is Mona. She is a nurse. I have one brother and one sister. My grandfather is called Ahmed and my grandmother is called Gamila. We live in a small village. The village is quiet and **amazing!** I sometimes help my grandfather who works as a farmer. I love my family very much.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is this passage about? ....
2. What does the underlined pronoun "him" refer to? ....
3. Why do you think the students love Magdy's father? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The word **amazing** means ....

a) bad　　b) fantastic　　c) dirty　　d) ugly

5. Magdy's mother is a ....

a) teacher　　b) doctor　　c) nurse　　d) housewife

6. The boy .... helps his grandfather.

a) always　　b) never　　c) sometimes　　d) often

D Vocabulary and Structure

5

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Cairo is a big ....

a) city　　b) town　　c) village　　d) country

2. .... you play football yesterday?

a) Is　　b) Are　　c) Did　　d) Do

3. Your mother's sister is your ....

a) sister　　b) aunt　　c) mother　　d) daughter

4. I can .... English well.

a) speak　　b) speaks　　c) spoke　　d) to speak

5. I am .... French at this moment.

a) study b) to study c) studying d) studied

6. The film was very .... so, I didn't enjoy it.

a) interesting b) boring c) nice d) exciting

7. Who is the main .... of the story?

a) character b) website c) adventure d) heart

8. My favourite school subject is .... I love learning about numbers.

a) art b) maths c) science d) history

9. My friend has got a .... because he can't walk.

a) secret b) moustache c) wheelchair d) storm

10. .... say unkind things to your friends.

a) Always b) Often c) Never d) Does

5 Read and correct the underlined words: 2

1. He work in a hospital. (............................)
2. Ali goes always to school early. (............................)
3. There are any apples on the table. (............................)
4. Came here, please Adel. (............................)

E Writing

6

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your favourite hobby"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Part 5 Listening Texts



1 **Al-Adwaa Monthly Tests Listening Texts**
نصوص استماع اختبارات الأضواء الشهرية

2 **Final Exams Listening Texts**
نصوص استماع الاختبارات النهائية

Part 5 Al-Adwaa Monthly Tests & Final Exams Listening Texts

1. Check Your English

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Injy : Hi, Lama. Is that a new bag?
Lama: Hi, Injy. No, it's my sister's bag.
Injy : It's big. What's in it?
Lama: This is my pencil case, it's red.
Injy : Is that your book?
Lama: Yes, it's very good. It's about animals.
Injy : Is that a ball in your bag?
Lama: No, it's an orange. I like oranges.
Injy : I prefer apples. Is that your phone?
Lama: Yes, it is.
Injy : Look! It's ten o'clock, time for our English class.

2. Al-Adwaa Monthly Tests

Al-Adwaa October Test

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Habiba Marzouk is a gymnast. She is 18 and lives in Cairo with her family. She has a very busy life. She goes to school and she studies hard. In the evenings, she trains for five hours daily.

Al-Adwaa November Test

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Alice's Adventures in Wonderland is a famous children's story. Alice thinks that Wonderland is interesting, but it is a strange place. She is a sensible girl but she does not understand Wonderland. She meets a lot of interesting characters.

Al-Adwaa December Test

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

I live with my family in Hurghada near the beach. Last week, we went to the beach. My mum and my little brother built a sandcastle, but me and my dad went into a cave. I was very frightened because it was dark inside.

Final Exams

1. Cairo Governorate

(El-Gamalia Educational Administration)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My name is Hani. I live in Tanta with my grandparents. My school is not far, so I always walk to school. My favourite subject is science. My favourite hobby is painting, but I am not good at drawing.

2. Cairo Governorate

(Dar El-Salam Educational Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Soha is my best friend. Last holiday, she travelled to Paris. Paris is famous for the Eiffel Tower. She spent a very nice time there. She went to different restaurants and the food was delicious. She bought me a bag and bought a postcard for our friend, Nada.

3. Giza Governorate

(Kerdasa Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Samar is an active girl. She usually gets up at six thirty. She has breakfast with her sister. Then, they go to school. She always walks to school because it is near their home. In the evening, they watch TV and have dinner with their family.

4. Giza Governorate

(South Giza Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Yesterday, I went to Siwa Oasis. It is one of Egypt's best western desert oases. It's famous for olives. I had a nice time there. We went trekking and slept in a tent.

5. Alexandria Governorate

(El-Agami Educational Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My name's Tamer. I am eight years old. I live with my family in Luxor. I have got three brothers and two sisters. My brothers and I like playing basketball.

6. Qalyubia Governorate

(Benha Educational Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

We are a happy family. We live in a village in Sohag. In the morning, my mum drives me to school, then she goes to work. My mum is a teacher. She works in a primary school. My father is a doctor. He works in Cairo. I have one brother and one sister.

7. Qalyubia Governorate

(East Shoubra Educational Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

I am Faten. I was born in Giza. I am twelve years old. I have got one sister, but I haven't got any brothers. My sister is ten years old.

8. Menoufia Governorate

(Menouf Educational Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

We should have a balanced diet to be fit and healthy. Fruit is very useful. We should eat between two and four pieces of fruit a day, but we shouldn't drink too much fruit juice. That's because it has got a lot of sugar.

9. Gharbia Governorate

(Al-Santa Educational Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Reem is an orphan girl so she lives with her grandma in Benha. In the morning, she goes to school. She likes maths very much and she is very good at it. In the evening, she goes to the library because she likes reading adventure stories. It's her hobby.

10. Dakahlia Governorate

(Aga Educational Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Last week, we had a cool journey. Me and my family travelled to Aswan. We travelled by train. My father bought the tickets at Ramses Station.

11. Beheira Governorate

(Etay El-Baroud Educational Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Ali, Sami and Hani are friends at school. They are in the preparatory stage. They live near each other so they go to school together. They always walk to school. Ali's father and mother are doctors and they work in the same hospital.

12. Damietta Governorate

(New Damietta Educational Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Mohamed Salah is my favourite sports star. He is from Egypt, but he lives in England. He has many fans. He is very fast and that helps him to score many goals.

13. Sharkia Governorate

(Kafr Sakr Educational Zone)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

I live in Dubai with my family, but my father works in Paris. Every Sunday, he goes to the airport to take the plane to Paris. The flight takes about eight hours. He returns home on Friday evening. On Saturday, we meet our cousins in the park and play football.

14. Sharkia Governorate

(El-Qurein Educational Zone)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My friend Omar loves nature. He likes going to the gardens to watch trees, flowers and birds. He goes to the garden in the morning and in the evening. In the evening, he enjoys looking at the stars.

15. Ismailia Governorate

(South Educational Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Last holiday, Ali went with his family to Jordan. They travelled by plane. They stayed in his uncle's house. It was a great holiday. They enjoyed their time there.

16. Suez Governorate

(North Educational Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My favourite subject is English. I am doing my best to speak English well. I always watch English movies and read stories. I also speak English with my brother at home.

17. Fayoum Governorate

(Youssef El-Sadeek Educational Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My name is Omar. My best friend is called Anas. Last year, he travelled to Paris with his uncle for a week. They stayed in a hotel. He bought me a small Eiffel Tower model as a souvenir.

18. Beni Suef Governorate

(Somosta Educational Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Jamila lives in Morocco with her family. Her favourite food is Tagine. It's a traditional meal in Morocco. It is a stew with meat, vegetables, fruit and spices.

19. Minya Governorate

(Samalout Educational Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Mohamed Salah is a famous football player. He has got curly hair. He is very fast and he is 1.75 tall. He is good at scoring goals.

20. Assiut Governorate

(Assiut Educational Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My favourite subject is Arabic. We often have it on Mondays. Mrs Mona is our teacher this year. She is very kind.

21. Qena Governorate

(Nag Hammadi Educational Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Every morning, my mum drives me to school because it's far from my house. However, I like it very much because it is big. My mum works at the same school. She is a teacher of English.

22. Sohag Governorate

(El-Baliana Educational Administration)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Last week, I went to the zoo. I wanted to see the monkeys, but they were asleep! I went into the cave, but I didn't see anything because it was dark.

رقم الإيداع: ٩٦٢٤ / ٢٠٢٣

ترخيص وزارة التربية والتعليم رقم ١٠٣ /٩ /٢ /١١٣

NAHDET MISR
PUBLISHING HOUSE

NAHDET MISR
PUBLISHING HOUSE

16766

6 221133 000895

1st PREP

FIRST TERM

AL ADWAA

Gem

2024

NEW HELLO!

Al-Azhar & Skills Booklet



AL ADWAA

Gem

New Hello!

الصـف الأول الإعـدادى

الفصل الدراسى الأول

2024

Al-Azhar & Skills Booklet

7

راجع إجاباتك

نزل إجابات الكتاب بصيغة PDF

هنا تجد كودك الشخصى

ذاكر صح

www.aladwaa.com Follow Us

NAHDET MISR PUBLISHING HOUSE



Part 1

Al-Azhar Corner

Tapescripts

- Test Yourself on Each 2 Lessons — اختبر نفسك على كل درسين
- Test on Each Unit — اختبار خاص بكل وحدة
- October/November Models — نماذج أكتوبر ونوفمبر الشهرية
- Final Exams — الاختبارات النهائية

1 Complete the following two mini-dialogues:

A: Kady : What do you usually do on Fridays?
Anas : ....

B: Batoul : .... ?
Basmala : My favourite sport is basketball.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. These brothers are the same age. They are ....
   a) cousins b) sisters c) twins d) parents
2. Maher .... voluntary work at a hospital.
   a) plays b) makes c) watches d) does
3. Your aunt is your father's ....
   a) son b) brother c) daughter d) sister
4. I like my teachers. .... are very kind to us.
   a) Theirs b) They c) Them d) Their
5. That's not Basmala's skirt. .... skirt is red.
   a) Her b) Hers c) She d) Its
6. The teacher gave .... a prize last Thursday.
   a) I b) my c) mine d) me

3 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Yourself"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....

1 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. .... are animals that are like sheep.
   a) Monkeys b) Cows c) Goats d) Donkeys
2. A/An .... is a child with no mother or father.
   a) orphan b) cousin c) parent d) attic
3. My father catches planes from the ....
   a) house b) beach c) mountain d) airport
4. Does she .... green eyes?
   a) has b) have c) having d) to have
5. Manar .... like fish.
   a) don't b) isn't c) aren't d) doesn't
6. I .... a nurse. I'm a doctor.
   a) am not b) don't c) haven't d) aren't

2 **Read the following, then answer the questions:**

My name is Nagla. Soha is my sister. We are twins. We live in Giza. My sister's favourite food is chicken. I like fish. We have the same hobbies. We like swimming! We go swimming on Fridays. My sister likes chess, too. I don't like chess. We visit our grandparents every week. Our father drives us to their house. They live in a village. We play with our cousins there.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Where do Nagla and Soha live?

   ....

2. What do Nagla and Soha like?

   ....

3. How often do Nagla and Soha go swimming?

   ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Their grandparents live in a ....
   a) city b) village c) town d) field
5. Soha is Nagla's ....
   a) cousin b) brother c) twin d) uncle

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: نص الاستماع فى نهاية التدريب

1. Gymnastics is a/an .... sport.
   a) easy b) boring
   c) difficult d) clever
2. To be top at gymnastics, you should ....
   a) sleep well b) train hard
   c) run well d) stand well

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Habiba is the best .... in Africa.
   a) gymnast b) gymnastics
   c) athletics d) gymnastic
2. Every player should .... hard to be good.
   a) dream b) achieve c) balance d) train
3. Murad works hard to .... his dreams.
   a) achieve b) archive c) receive d) believe
4. Sara .... with her family in Damietta.
   a) living b) to live c) lives d) live
5. My best friend is called Aya. We .... both in the handball team.
   a) are b) don't c) doesn't d) is
6. How long does it .... to travel to Paris?
   a) to take b) taking c) takes d) take

3 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Your best friend"

....

....

....

....

....

Listening text

Unit 1 Test Yourself on Lessons (5 & 6)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Gymnastics is my favourite sport. It's a difficult sport, but it makes me happy. You should train hard to be top at this sport.

Test on Unit 1

20

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع في نهاية الاختبار

1. How old is Ali?
   a) Seventy. b) Thirty. c) Three. d) Thirteen.
2. What is his mother's job?
   a) A housewife. b) An engineer. c) A nurse. d) A teacher.

2 Complete the following two mini-dialogues:

A: Bido : Where do you live?
Sama : ....

B: Samira : ....?
Randa : My favourite hobby is playing chess.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You should .... between your hobbies and school studies.
   a) train b) balance c) stay d) achieve
2. Doctors usually have a/an .... life.
   a) aged b) musical c) voluntary d) busy
3. I always find .... difficult. So, I always get bad marks in the exams.
   a) gymnastics b) gymnast c) athlete d) physics
4. Ahmed bought a new dress for .... daughter.
   a) she b) him c) them d) his
5. Birds .... in the early morning.
   a) to sing b) singing c) sing d) sings
6. .... she a singer?
   a) Does b) Is c) Do d) Are

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My friend is called Mona. She is 12 years old. She lives with her grandmother in Luxor. Mona loves **her** very much. Mona has many friends at school. She always goes with them to the library to read books. Mona's favourite subject is English. After school, Mona often helps her grandmother in the kitchen. She usually sleeps at half past nine. Mona and her grandmother enjoy watching TV at night. They have a happy life. Mona studies hard. She wishes to be a doctor one day to help the poor.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What's Mona's favourite subject?..................................
2. What does Mona do after school?..................................
3. When does Mona sleep?..................................

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Mona and her grandmother live in ....
   a) school b) Cairo c) Luxor d) kitchen
5. The underlined pronoun "**her**" refers to ....
   a) Mona b) library c) English d) grandmother

5 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Your family"

....
....
....
....
....
....

Listening text

Unit 1 Test

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My name's Ali. I'm thirteen years old. I live with my parents. My mother is a housewife, but my father is an engineer.

1 **Complete the following two mini-dialogues:**

A: Mira : How often do you walk to school?

Jaylan : ....

B: Fouad : ....?

Youssef : I have got seven lessons a day.

2 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Social studies and science are school ....

   a) objects b) subjects c) teams d) groups

2. During the .... lesson, we learn about numbers.

   a) science b) art c) maths d) home economics

3. The .... rings at the end of the lesson.

   a) hall b) pill c) bill d) bell

4. I .... visit my grandparents. I visit them every day.

   a) never b) always c) usually d) sometimes

5. We .... walk to school because our school is very near.

   a) never b) usually c) hardly d) ever

6. I .... go out after work. I am always busy.

   a) always b) often c) sometimes d) never

3 **Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:**

"Your school"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... to school is a cheap and healthy way to travel.
   a) Driving b) Cycling c) Flying d) Wearing
2. Some children travel to school .... a snowmobile.
   a) by b) in c) at d) on
3. A canoe .... the children to school and back home again every day.
   a) rides b) drives c) takes d) goes
4. My .... parents are teachers. He wants to be a teacher, too.
   a) friend's b) friends' c) friends d) friend
5. This is the .... room. It's for all teachers.
   a) teacher's b) teachers' c) teachers d) teacher
6. Some .... hobbies are very unusual.
   a) people b) people' c) peoples d) people's

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Every morning, children from a far village in Egypt cycle to school. It is a cheap and healthy way to travel. They can always arrive on time. It's also hard for children who live next to Lake Bunyonyi, in Uganda. Their school is on the other side of the lake, so they do not **walk** to school. They go in a canoe. The canoe takes the children to school and home again every day. In winter, there is a lot of snow in the USA. So, the children travel to school on a snowmobile.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage? ....
2. Where do children travel to school on a snowmobile? ....
3. How many countries are mentioned in the text? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "Their" refers to children from ....
   a) Egypt b) Uganda c) the world d) the USA
5. The underlined verb "**walk**" means to go ....
   a) on foot b) by bike c) in a canoe d) by boat

13

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: نص الاستماع فى نهاية التدريب

1. Where do they have computer studies?
   a) In the playground. b) In the classroom.
   c) At the break. d) In the hall.
2. When is break?
   a) At eleven. b) At nine. c) At ten. d) At eight.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/An .... is a simple message sent through the internet.
   a) class b) lesson c) English d) email
2. We paint and draw in .... lesson.
   a) art b) maths c) science d) music
3. The language of England is ....
   a) Chinese b) Arabic c) English d) French
4. I .... my homework before I have dinner.
   a) never does b) do never c) do always d) always do
5. I go to school in my .... car.
   a) father b) father's c) father' d) fathers'
6. .... car is that?
   a) Who b) How c) Whose d) Why

3 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

"The subjects you are good at and not good at"

....

....

....

....

....

Listening text

Unit 2 Test Yourself on Lessons (5 & 6)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My name's Sally. I like computer studies. We have it in the classroom. At 11 o'clock, we have our break.

October Models on Units 1&2

Model 1

1 Complete the following two mini-dialogues:

A: Sayed : What does your father do?

Salem : ....

B: Samar : ....?

Samira : I always go to school by bike.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A .... is a group of people who play music together.
   a) team b) band c) class d) partner
2. Habiba Marzouk is a .... gymnast in Africa.
   a) bottom b) middle c) high d) top
3. On a .... weekend, I play football with my friends.
   a) physical b) typical c) musical d) national
4. A: What is your .... favourite subject? B: She likes science.
   a) sister b) sisters c) sister's d) sisters'
5. This book belongs to Ali. Give it to ....
   a) she b) her c) his d) him
6. How often .... your friend visit you?
   a) have b) does c) do d) has

3 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Your typical school day"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Model 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I .... every day to be fit.
   a) watch b) take c) make d) train
2. Some children in Uganda go to school .... a canoe.
   a) by b) in c) on d) at
3. **A:** What .... are you good at? **B:** English and Italian.
   a) sports b) languages c) countries d) cities
4. Maria doesn't .... French on Sundays.
   a) had b) has c) have d) having
5. My brothers are sitting in the garden. They are playing with .... toys.
   a) him b) its c) her d) their
6. He never .... his homework in the evening.
   a) do b) does c) done d) doing

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name is Omar. I live in a small village in Tanta. I live with my family father, mother, my sister Salma and my brother Hassan. My father is a teacher, and my mother is a housewife. I walk to my preparatory school because it's near to my house. My favourite subject is English. We have five English lessons a week. In my free time, I go to the library to read and borrow books.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. How many people are there in Omar's family?
   ....
2. Why does Omar go to the school library?
   ....
3. What do you think of Omar's family?
   ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Omar's father works at ....
   a) school b) home c) farm d) library
5. Omar's mother is a ....
   a) teacher b) housewife c) nurse d) doctor

1 Complete the following two mini-dialogues:

A: Salwa : What does your brother look like?
Samar : ....
B: Mazin : ....?
Basel : Yes, I can play the drums well.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He wants to be a .... person. He wants everyone to know him.
   a) unfriendly b) unkind c) poor d) famous
2. He plays for a good team. He's a good ....
   a) daughter b) teacher
   c) footballer d) writer
3. Mo Salah is one of the best players. He scores many ....
   a) goals b) films c) sports d) stars
4. He .... play with us because he is ill.
   a) can't b) can c) has d) hasn't
5. My best friend .... a new bike. It's beautiful.
   a) have got b) hasn't got
   c) haven't got d) has got
6. .... ride a bike?
   a) You can b) Can you
   c) You have d) Have you

3 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

"A famous sports star"

....

....

....

....

....

....

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I .... swimming twice a week.
   a) play b) go c) walk d) do
2. She is not very nice. She is a .... person.
   a) scary b) kind c) friendly d) sensible
3. I love learning about numbers. I like .... maths.
   a) scoring b) going c) playing d) doing
4. I have .... short, curly hair.
   a) get b) gets c) got d) getting
5. Can your brother .... fast?
   a) run b) runs c) ran d) running
6. .... Salma got glasses?
   a) Does b) Has c) Have d) Is

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Mohamed Salah is a famous Egyptian football player. He was born in 1992. He plays for a very good team in Europe. He plays for Egypt, too. He is very good at scoring goals. He is a fast runner. Mohamed Salah has usually got a big smile. He is quite short for a footballer. He is 1.75 metres tall. He has got curly hair and a beard. He is a kind person. He gives money to build schools and hospitals in Egypt. He is very friendly and he always talks to his fans.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What's the best title for the passage?

....

2. What does the underlined pronoun "He" refer to?

....

3. Where does Mohamed Salah play?

....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Mohamed Salah is .... years old.
   a) 33 b) 32 c) 31 d) 35
5. Mohamed Salah is a/an .... person.
   a) unkind b) kind c) slow d) dangerous

1 **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:** نص الاستماع فى نهاية التدريب

1. What sport does Nevine like?
   a) Chess. b) Football. c) Tennis. d) Volleyball.
2. What does she like doing?
   a) Writing stories. b) Reading.
   c) Watching TV. d) Watching films.

2 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Basel has got a/an .... because he cannot walk.
   a) wheelchair b) sofa c) armchair d) bench
2. My friend likes .... video games.
   a) making b) doing c) playing d) going
3. English isn't very difficult .... a student who studies it hard.
   a) from b) at c) on d) for
4. What does your friend like ....?
   a) doing b) done c) did d) do
5. Osama likes playing football, basketball .... tennis.
   a) but b) and c) so d) because
6. Nancy and Rayan can .... very high.
   a) jumped b) jump c) jumping d) jumps

3 **Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:**

"Your favourite sport"

....

....

....

....

....

Listening text

Unit 3 Test Yourself on Lessons (5 & 6)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My best friend is called Nevine. She likes sports and she loves playing tennis. Her favourite subject is English and she likes writing stories.

Test on Unit 3

20

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الاختبار

1. Basel likes playing ....
   a) tennis b) video games. c) football d) chess
2. Basel is kind and ....
   a) unfriendly b) funny c) bad d) weak

2 Complete the following two mini-dialogues:

A: Nahed : What sport do you like playing?
Huda : ....

B: Teacher : ....?
Student : Yes, my father has got a car.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mo Salah .... many goals every year.
   a) plays b) helps c) takes d) scores
2. A lot of African girls have got .... hair.
   a) boring b) busy c) curly d) careful
3. A/An .... person takes good decisions.
   a) stupid b) angry c) funny d) sensible
4. I .... blond hair. I have got brown hair.
   a) have got b) has got c) haven't got d) hasn't got
5. .... Dalia got any friends in America?
   a) Do b) Has c) Are d) Have
6. Nader has got a wheelchair .... he cannot walk.
   a) because b) so c) when d) but

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Alice's Adventures in Wonderland is a famous children's story. Alice had a lot of adventures in Wonderland. She met a lot of interesting characters. Wonderland was strange but interesting place for Alice. Alice was a sensible, brave and clever girl. She met the White Rabbit that was always late and ran fast. The Cheshire Cat was a funny animal which helped Alice to find different places and characters. The Queen of Hearts was a scary person, but Alice was not frightened of her.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Name three characters Alice met in Wonderland................
2. How did the Cheshire Cat help Alice?................
3. Why do you think Alice was brave? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Alice met a lot of interesting .... in Wonderland.
   a) characters b) kings c) places d) blog posts
5. The Cheshire Cat was a .... animal.
   a) funny b) silly c) sad d) scary

5 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Your favourite story"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Listening text

Unit 3 Test

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My best friend is called Basel. He has got straight hair and brown eyes. He is kind and he is very funny. He likes reading and playing video games.

1 **Complete the following two mini-dialogues:**

A: Mum : What are you doing?

Daughter: ....

B: Yasser : ....?

Abdullah : No, I am not. I'm playing chess online.

2 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Omar is .... his homework.
   a) making b) using c) printing d) guessing
2. I use my .... to listen to music.
   a) MP3 player b) printer c) charger d) mouse
3. We charge our phones with a phone ....
   a) player b) mouse c) printer d) charger
4. I .... chess online at the moment.
   a) playing b) 'm playing c) play d) played
5. .... there any tablets on the desk?
   a) Is b) Do c) Have d) Are
6. There isn't .... sugar in my tea.
   a) a b) an c) any d) some

3 **Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:**

"Technology at school"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If I want to ask my teacher a question, I put my hand ....
   a) out b) off c) down d) up
2. I love .... My favourite hobby is playing video games.
   a) nature b) technology c) insects d) advice
3. I don't send text messages or make video calls .... my phone.
   a) of b) at c) in d) on
4. Is she .... with a pen or a pencil?
   a) write b) writes c) writing d) to write
5. .... the students in your class studying hard?
   a) Are b) Do c) Have d) Can
6. We .... studying Arabic now. We are studying English.
   a) haven't b) have c) are d) aren't

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name is Adel. I love technology very much. My favourite hobby is playing video games. I usually play <u>**them**</u> on my mobile at night, but sometimes I play them on my laptop. My favourite lesson at school is Computer Studies. At the break and lunchtime, I stay in the classroom and look at video game websites on my phone. I don't like making a video call to talk to my friends.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is Adel's favourite hobby? ....
2. Where does Adel stay at the break? ....
3. Does Adel have lunch at school? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Adel plays video games at ....
   a) street b) night c) school d) uncle
5. The underlined word "**them**" refers to ....
   a) video calls b) websites
   c) mobile phones d) video games

1 **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:** نص الاستماع فى نهاية التدريب

1. To make a video call, first .... on your tablet.
   a) tap b) move c) close d) turn
2. Then, ... the name of the person.
   a) write b) put c) tap d) click

2 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. A .... is a word or numbers you use to go onto a website.
   a) keyword b) crossword c) password d) secret word
2. Don't tell your .... information to other people.
   a) personal b) popular c) safe d) dangerous
3. .... this secret. Don't tell anyone about it.
   a) Leave b) Stay c) Make d) Keep
4. .... up, Ali. It's time to go to school.
   a) Waking b) Wake c) To waking d) To wake
5. Don't .... late again, Samy.
   a) coming b) comes c) came d) come
6. .... play in the street.
   a) Not b) Didn't c) Don't d) Doesn't

3 **Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:**

"How to stay safe online"

....

....

....

....

....

Tape scripts

Unit 4 Test Yourself on Lessons (5 & 6)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Hi, Mazin. I will help you make a video call. First, turn your tablet on. Then, write the name of the person. Finally, tap the SEND icon.

November Models on Units 3&4

Model 1

1 Complete the following two mini-dialogues:

A: Abdullah : Can you play the drums?

Anwar : ....

B: Raha : .... ?

Randa : Yes, my father has got a beard.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If you train hard with the team, you'll be a good ....
   a) doctor b) teacher c) writer d) footballer
2. There are many interesting .... in this story.
   a) devices b) characters c) players d) actors
3. Shall I .... your name to the list?
   a) print b) charge c) add d) boil
4. Aya is not very good at science, ... she is very good at English.
   a) but b) because c) and d) so
5. .... an MP3 player?
   a) There are b) Are there c) Is there d) There is
6. Huda, ... that water.
   a) to boil b) boiled c) boils d) boil

3 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Someone you are proud of"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Model 2

11

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You should .... safe when you use the internet.
   a) do b) have c) make d) stay
2. To send a message on your mobile, ... on this icon.
   a) tap b) click c) write d) add
3. My favourite book is .... "Treasure Island".
   a) cold b) called c) pulled d) scored
4. When .... we got English?
   a) did b) has c) have d) do
5. .... Mona drive a car?
   a) Do b) Has c) Can d) Is
6. She .... an email now.
   a) wrote b) writing c) writes d) is writing

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Ahmed loves nature. He likes walking and watching the trees, animals, flowers and insects all around him. He doesn't like being in the house, but he loves being in the garden. His favourite place is the park near his house. He can see lots of different kinds of birds **there**. He has got a mobile phone. He takes lots of photos of flowers and birds, but he doesn't send text messages or make videos call. He doesn't like playing video games.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What's Ahmed's favourite place?
   ....
2. What does Ahmed use his mobile phone for?
   ....
3. Do you think that Ahmed loves nature? Why?
   ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Ahmed doesn't send ....
   a) text messages b) letters c) photos d) emails
5. The underlined word "**there**" refers to the ....
   a) birds b) home c) school d) park

1 Complete the following two mini-dialogues:

A: Mo'men : Where did you go last summer holiday?

Hady : ....

B: Nader : .... ?

Shady : No, there aren't any monkeys on the trees.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Would you like to .... a picnic with me?
   a) have b) go c) take d) give
2. Most children are afraid of .... places.
   a) fantastic b) fun c) dark d) warm
3. I saw many boys swimming in the ....
   a) desert b) lake c) forest d) cave
4. It .... cold yesterday.
   a) is b) isn't c) didn't d) was
5. He .... in Rome long ago.
   a) lived b) lives c) living d) live
6. She .... tennis for three hours yesterday.
   a) plays b) play c) played d) playing

3 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

"A holiday in a nice place"

....

....

....

....

....

....

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He is bad at English, so he's going to have a/an .... next summer.
   a) castle b) advertisement c) course d) hotel
2. In Alexandria, you can have a wonderful .... from your own window.
   a) review b) view c) preview d) interview
3. I need to buy some .... from London for my friends.
   a) souvenirs b) sports c) subjects d) markets
4. Did you .... in the sea?
   a) swims b) swam c) swimming d) swim
5. What .... do last weekend?
   a) you were b) were you c) did you d) you did
6. Why .... you sad yesterday?
   a) did b) were c) do d) have

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Ahmed goes to Hurghada during the summer holiday. He goes there by plane. He often goes there with his family. When he arrives at the airport, he takes a taxi to his uncle's flat. Ahmed stays with his uncle's family for a week. They all go to the beach every day. They usually play on the sand and build sandcastles. He swims and plays a lot with his cousins. His favourite place is the beach because he enjoys swimming in the sea. His birthday is on the 5th of July, so he always has his birthday there.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. When does Ahmed go to Hurghada?

....

2. Where does he have his birthday party?

....

3. How does Ahmed go from the airport to his uncle's flat?

....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Ahmed stays in Hurghada for ....
   a) one week b) two weeks c) three days d) a day
5. Ahmed's birthday is in the ....
   a) winter b) spring c) summer d) fall

TEST YOURSELF — Unit 5 Lessons (5 & 6)

Take a test

13

1 **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:** نص الاستماع فى نهاية التدريب

1. When did you go to the zoo?
 a) Two days ago. b) Last month. c) Yesterday. d) Last week.
2. What did you see in the cave?
 a) Birds. b) Monkeys. c) Bats. d) Nothing.

2 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. A .... is a place where a group of people stay and sleep in for some time.
 a) river b) comb c) lake d) camp
2. My youngest brother is learning how to .... a bike.
 a) stay b) make c) do d) ride
3. I'm frightened .... walking home alone in the dark.
 a) with b) at c) of d) from
4. We really .... the game last Sunday.
 a) enjoyed b) enjoys c) enjoying d) enjoy
5. They .... very well yesterday. They lost the match.
 a) played b) didn't play c) don't play d) play
6. .... they go to the swimming pool yesterday?
 a) Are b) Does c) Did d) Do

3 **Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:**

"A nice trip"

....

....

....

....

....

....

Listening text

Unit 5 Test Yourself on Lessons (5 & 6)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

I went to the zoo yesterday. We went to the monkeys, but they were tired. We went into a cave, but it was dark and we didn't see any bats.

Test on Unit 5

20

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الاختبار

1. How did you travel to Aswan?
   a) By plane. b) By taxi. c) By train. d) By bus.
2. How many people were there on the train?
   a) None. b) Not many. c) A lot. d) A few.

2 Complete the following two mini-dialogues:

A: Waleed : Where did you spend your summer holiday?

Said : ....

B: Ali : ....?

Mona : Yes, we had a good time in the park.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He's still searching .... his book.
   a) on b) for c) in d) at
2. I had a wonderful time at the .... school where I learnt English.
   a) language b) castle c) course d) flat
3. His words made me angry, but I had no .... to them.
   a) journey b) response c) postcard d) sign
4. Ali .... listen to music on his MP3 player last week.
   a) didn't b) doesn't c) wasn't d) isn't
5. The weather .... warm yesterday.
   a) does b) did c) was d) were
6. Where .... your father yesterday?
   a) was b) were c) did d) had

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Holidays are great time. Everyone should enjoy this time. I will never forget this year's holiday. At first, I thought this holiday would be boring because I was going to the sea with my family. We stayed for a week there. We stayed in a nice hotel, but it was quite expensive. The hotel was by the beach. It was really great. The weather was nice. During the holiday, I met a lot of friendly people. They became my friends. We built sandcastles and swam in the sea. I enjoyed my holiday. It was fun.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Why did the writer think the holiday would be boring?
2. What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?
3. Give a suitable title to the passage.

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The hotel wasn't .... the sea.
   a) far from b) near c) behind d) next to
5. The writer stayed for .... there.
   a) a day b) 7 days c) 2 days d) 3 days

5 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

"What you did last summer"

....

....

....

....

....

Listening text

Unit 5 Test

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

I travelled from Cairo to Aswan. My father bought our tickets at Ramses Station and then we got on the train. There were many people on the train.

1 Complete the following two mini-dialogues:

A: Bodi : What food don't you like?
Basmala : ....
B: Sandy : ....?
Maya : Yes, there is some rice in the fridge.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This dish is .... with cream. You will like it.
   a) nasty b) bad c) hot d) delicious
2. .... some sugar to my tea, please.
   a) Stir b) Add c) Boil d) Cook
3. My mother always uses the best .... to cook our food.
   a) ingredients b) subjects c) languages d) papers
4. .... there any milk in the fridge?
   a) Are b) Were c) Does d) Is
5. This cake is very sweet. There's too .... sugar in it.
   a) some b) a lot of c) many d) much
6. There are .... books on the desk.
   a) a lot b) any c) some d) much

3 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Your favourite food"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

1 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. My grandmother .... me some advice on the food we eat.
   a) cleaned b) made c) caught d) gave
2. Koshari has a wonderful ....
   a) test b) toast c) taste d) state
3. Nyama na irio is a stew .... meat and potatoes.
   a) for b) with c) by d) to
4. We .... eat too many crisps.
   a) should b) shouldn't to c) should to d) shouldn't
5. You .... clean your teeth in the morning.
   a) should to b) should c) shouldn't to d) shouldn't
6. It's an exciting film. You should .... it.
   a) watch b) watched c) to watch d) watching

2 **Read the following, then answer the questions:**

Everyone loves snacks! But some snacks are bad for us. It is OK to eat crisps and cakes sometimes, but you should not eat too many of <u>them</u>. Crisps have a lot of fat and salt. Cakes, chocolate and biscuits have a lot of fat and sugar. Too much of this type of food is bad for our bodies. Fruit is a great snack! It is very good for us and most people like the sweet taste. You should eat between two and four pieces of fruit a day. Beans and vegetables do not have much sugar or fat. They are very good for us, so we should eat a lot of them. Snacks like hummus with carrot and pepper are delicious. We should be careful, even with healthy foods. Olives, meat and fish sometimes have a lot of salt.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What do you think about snacks?
   ....
2. How much fruit should you have every day?
   ....
3. Which food has a lot of fat and salt?
   ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "<u>them</u>" refers to ....
   a) cakes b) crisps and cakes c) snakes d) bodies
5. .... have a lot of sugar.
   a) Cakes b) Fish c) Olives d) Beans

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: نص الاستماع فى نهاية التدريب

1. Where is the restaurant?
   - a) Outside the city.
   - b) In the city centre.
   - c) Near the sea.
   - d) Far from the sea.
2. What do you always eat there?
   - a) Fish.
   - b) Rice.
   - c) Fruit.
   - d) a and b.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A .... is the person who buys things from a shop.
   - a) waiter
   - b) customer
   - c) seller
   - d) worker
2. The waiter asked me what food I'd like to ....
   - a) say
   - b) tell
   - c) bring
   - d) order
3. We choose the food we want to eat in the restaurant from the ....
   - a) advertisement
   - b) article
   - c) menu
   - d) list
4. Lama feels ill. She .... see a doctor.
   - a) shouldn't
   - b) should
   - c) have
   - d) has
5. We shouldn't .... too many crisps.
   - a) eating
   - b) to eat
   - c) eats
   - d) eat
6. You .... brush your teeth in the morning.
   - a) should to
   - b) should
   - c) shouldn't to
   - d) shouldn't

3 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Your favourite snack"

....

....

....

....

....

....

Listening text

Unit 6 Test Yourself on Lessons (5 & 6)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

A meal which I always remember is fish and rice at a great restaurant in Alexandria. I went there with my family. The restaurant was very near the sea.

A Language Functions

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: نص الاستماع فى نهاية الامتحان

1. Ali is .... years old.

a) 12 b) 13
c) 14 d) 17

2. Ali's parents work at ....

a) school b) hospital
c) train station d) bank

2 Complete the following two mini-dialogues:

A: Ahmed : What is your favourite subject?
Ali : ....
B: Mazin : ....?
Salah : My favourite story is Alice's Adventures in Wonderland.

B Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He .... on the icon on his laptop.

a) writes b) clicks c) gives d) turns

2. What food did you .... for dinner last night?

a) eats a) ate c) eating d) eat

3. Is there .... cheese in the dish?

a) some b) an c) any d) many

4. What kind of voluntary work do you ...., Amany?

a) do b) make c) play d) watch

5. We .... say unkind things to other students.

a) usually b) often c) never d) always

6. Something scary makes you feel ....

a) happy b) good c) funny d) frightened

C Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name is Mona. I live in Cairo. I want to be a doctor so I always work hard at school. My favourite subjects are science and computer studies. I also want to speak good English to other children in different places. My teacher is very good, but I also like to use technology. I use a tablet to practise my English.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Why does Mona work hard at school?

....

2. What are Mona's favourite subjects?

....

3. What does Mona use to practise English?

....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Mona lives in ....
   a) London   b) Giza   c) Cairo   d) Aswan
5. Mona wants to speak English to other ....
   a) teachers   b) children   c) adults   d) doctors

D Writing

5 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

"How you stay safe online"

....

....

....

....

....

....

Listening text

(Cairo Zone)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My name's Ali. I'm 13 years old. I'm in prep one. My father is a doctor. My mother is a nurse. They work in the same hospital.

Al-Azhar - Assiut Zone

20

A Language Functions

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: نص الاستماع فى نهاية الامتحان

1. Where did Omar go?
   a) To Cairo. b) To Banha.
   c) To Alexandria. d) To Aswan.
2. How did Omar travel there?
   a) By bus. b) By taxi.
   c) By bike. d) By train.

B Usage

2 Complete the following two mini-dialogues:

A: Ali : When do you play football?
Hatem : ....
B: Randa : ....?
Mona : Mum is making a cake.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Pupils shouldn't .... noise in the class.
   a) do b) make c) play d) take
2. These are my .... shoes.
   a) sister b) sisters c) sister's d) sisters is
3. She is a kind person with a big ....
   a) smile b) smell c) team d) good
4. They .... got two cats and a dog.
   a) has b) hasn't c) can d) have
5. Some people like to climb a ....
   a) lake b) mountain c) beach d) desert
6. Are there .... apples in the fridge?
   a) some b) a c) an d) any

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

I'm Aya. I'm a student and this is a typical day for me. I go to school from Sunday to Thursday. On school days, I get up at half past six. I usually have breakfast with my family. My school is far away, so I never walk to school. It always takes a long time because the roads are busy. My school starts at 8:00 a.m. and finishes at 2:00 p.m. I have four lessons before the break and two lessons after it. The break is half an hour. During it, I usually talk with my friends, but sometimes I go to the library to read books. After school I go home, have dinner, do my homework and watch TV with my brother. I usually go to bed at 9:00 p.m. I have a busy day.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. When does Aya get up on school days?

....

2. How many lessons does Aya have a day?

....

3. Does Aya walk to school? Why?

....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Aya goes to school .... days a week.
   a) four b) five c) six d) seven
5. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the ....
   a) school b) class c) break d) library

D Writing

5 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Your best friend"

....

....

....

....

....

Listening text

(Assiut Zone)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My name's Omar. I live in Assiut. Last Friday was a nice day. I went to Cairo with my family. We travelled by train. We visited many places there.

Al-Azhar - Sharkia Zone

20

A Language Functions

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: نص الاستماع فى نهاية الامتحان

1. I .... English very much.
   a) like b) dislike
   c) hate d) know
2. I watch English ....
   a) books b) pictures
   c) films d) drama

2 Complete the following two mini-dialogues:

A: Ali : ....?
Nabil : I have five classes every day.

B: Eman : Do you like watching football matches?
Samera : ....

B Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My best friend .... short, dark hair.
   a) have got b) has got c) get d) is
2. A brave person is happy to do something ....
   a) fun b) usual c) dangerous d) bad
3. My father .... voluntary work at hospital.
   a) plays b) goes c) does d) makes
4. She .... you a photo now.
   a) sends b) sending c) send d) is sending
5. Computers and mobile phones are examples of ....
   a) nature b) farming c) technology d) subjects
6. A .... person makes good decisions.
   a) lazy b) busy c) sensible d) sensitive

C Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

We don't know who made tea for the first time, but we heard and read many stories about that. Nearly five thousands years ago, the King of China boiled his drinking water under a tree. Some of the leaves fell into the pot. When he drank the water, he liked the taste very much. He thought the taste came from leaves of the tree.

People drink tea because they think it helps them stay awake for a long time. Now, tea is grown in China, India and Turkey. Many people like to drink tea with milk. Others like to have it with lemon when they feel tired. People usually have tea in the morning and after lunch.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is this passage about?
....
2. When do people usually drink tea?
....
3. Where is tea grown?
....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "Nearly" means ....
   a) opposite b) almost c) nearby d) far
5. People usually drink tea with .... when they feel tired.
   a) milk b) orange d) leave c) lemon

D Writing

5 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

"A day with your family"

....
....
....
....

Listening text

(Sharkia Zone)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My name's Karim. I'm 15 years old. I'm in prep one. I live in Zagazig. My favourite subject is English. I like it very much. Watching English films is my favourite hobby.

Al-Azhar - Luxor Zone

20

A Language Functions

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: نص الاستماع فى نهاية الامتحان

1. What is your favourite subject?
   - a) Arabic.
   - b) English.
   - c) Computer studies.
   - d) French.
2. A: Where do you stay at break? B: In the ....
   - a) playground
   - b) classroom
   - c) bed
   - d) lab

2 Complete the following two mini-dialogues:

A: Jana : What is your favourite hobby?
Sama : ....

B: Omar : ....?
Mahmoud : I'm watching the match.

B Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My uncle is very .... He chooses things wisely.
   - a) strong
   - b) tall
   - c) fast
   - d) sensible
2. .... Mariam like English?
   - a) Does
   - b) Is
   - c) Was
   - d) Has
3. My brother charges his phone with a phone ....
   - a) mouse
   - b) charger
   - c) printer
   - d) screen
4. My best friend .... short, dark hair.
   - a) has got
   - b) have got
   - c) are
   - d) is
5. My .... is my mother's sister.
   - a) daughter
   - b) grandmother
   - c) aunt
   - d) sister
6. She didn't .... to the beach yesterday.
   - a) gone
   - b) went
   - c) goes
   - d) go

C Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Paris is the capital of France. It is called "the City of Light". It is on the River Seine. Many tourists visit it. Paris is a wonderful city where you can visit many interesting places. Its people are very friendly. There are shops and restaurants where you can eat your favourite food. Paris is very famous for its delicious food. One of the most wonderful places in Paris is the Eiffel Tower. When you stand on the top of this fantastic building, you can see the whole city.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What does the underlined pronoun "It" refer to?

....

2. What can you see from the top of the Eiffel Tower?

....

3. What is Paris famous for?

....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The people of Paris are ....
   a) unkind b) weak c) friendly d) lazy

5. Paris is standing on a ....
   a) river b) lake c) sea d) pond

D Writing

5 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Your favourite sport"

....

....

....

....

Listening text

(Luxor Zone)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

I love going to school very much. We have nine lessons every day. My favourite subject is French. I like the break time because I play a lot of games with my friends in the playground.



Part 2

Integrated Skills

1. **Reading Skills** — مهارات القراءة -

2. **Speaking Skills** — مهارات التحدث -

3. **Writing Skills** — مهارات الكتابة -

1 Reading

▶ Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Laura is 12 years old. She lives in a big house with her family. Her grandparents live with them, too. Her father is a teacher. He always helps his students. Her mother, Amira, is a doctor. She helps **sick people**.

Laura and her only sister, Nilly, are twins. They spend their free time together playing with their toys. They also read nice stories and dress their dolls.

Her grandfather doesn't work. He is 70 years old. He always tells them interesting stories and funny jokes. Her grandmother, Amina, is a good cook. She often makes them delicious cakes and biscuits.

sick people	المرضى
spend	يقضي
tell funny jokes	يقول نكاتاً مضحكة
free time	وقت الفراغ
dolls	دمى
cook	طاه

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Who is older, Laura or Nilly?

....

2. What does "**sick people**" mean?

....

3. Why do you think Laura and Nilly play together?

....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The passage tells us about a ....

a) twin b) sister
c) family d) grandparent

5. .... makes delicious cakes.

a) Amira b) Nilly
c) Laura d) Amina

6. The underlined word "Her" refers to ....

a) Laura b) Nilly
c) Amira d) Amina

2 Speaking

Complete the following dialogues:

1. **Samy** : Where do you work?
   Ali : (1) ....
   Samy : (2) .... ?
   Ali : Yes, I like my job.
2. **Naira** : I like sports.
   Salma : (1) .... ?
   Naira : I play volleyball.
   Salma : (2) .... ?
   Naira : I play it on Monday evenings. What about you?
   Salma : (3) ....
3. **Mayada** : What is your favourite hobby?
   Anas : (1) ....
   Mayada : (2) .... ?
   Anas : I play it in the club.
   Mayada : (3) .... ?
   Anas : I go to the club with my mother.

3 Writing

- **Write about:**

FAMILY TREE

- What's your name?
- Who do you live with?
- What are your parents' names?
- What are their jobs?
- What about your grandparents?
- What about your cousins?

Family tree

....

....

....

....

....

....

1 Reading

Read the following text, then answer the questions:

My daily school routine starts at home. First, I get up early in the morning. I do my morning duties. I wash my face and brush my teeth. Then I do little exercise. Next, I **put on** my school uniform to go to school. I am never late for school. I have different subjects and I always listen carefully to my teachers in the class. My daily routine is full these days. My days at school are Tuesday and Thursday because of COVID-19. The first class starts at 8:00 which is a social studies class with Mr Munir. That finishes at 9:45. Then I have my science class with Mr Nabil. It is my favourite. It finishes at 12:15. After that, I have a break for 15 minutes, so I go to the playground to have lunch with my friends. Then, my last class is maths with Mrs Dalia. School routine can be hard sometimes especially during exams.

duties	مهام/واجبات
carefully	بحرص
routine	نظام يومي
especially	خاصة/خصوصًا

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title to this text.

....

2. Why does the writer go to school on two days?

....

3. What do you think is the thing the writer didn't tell us about his daily school routine?

....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The writer's school routine is hard .... exams.
   a) after   b) before
   c) off   d) in

5. The underlined word "**put on**" means to .... uniform.
   a) take off   b) leave
   c) wear   d) sell

6. The underlined word "**That**" refers to .... class.
   a) art   b) science
   c) maths   d) social studies

2 Speaking

▶ **Complete the following dialogues:**

1. **Samira** : How do you travel to school?
   Rasha : (1).. .
   Samira : (2)..?
   Rasha : It takes about ten minutes.

2. **Eman** : I know you are good at many subjects at school.
   Huda : Yes, I like science, maths and English. (1)......................................?
   Eman : I like social studies and Arabic.
   Huda : (2)..?
   Eman : I always have Arabic on Sunday. What time do you do your homework?
   Huda : (3).. .

3. **Ramy** : How do you go to school?
   Omar : (1).. .
   Ramy : (2)..?
   Omar : My favourite subject is English.

3 Writing

- **Write about:**

YOUR SCHOOL DAY

- What's your name?
- What school do you go to?
- When do you get up?
- How do you go to school?
- How many lessons do you have every day?
- What do you do at break?
- When do you go to bed?

"My school Day"

....

....

....

....

....

UNIT 3 Different people

Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

1 Reading

Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Farida Osman is a famous Egyptian swimmer. She was born on 18th January, 1995. She is the daughter of the dentists Hisham Osman and Randa Elsalawy. Farida Osman is the fastest female swimmer in Egypt and Africa. She started swimming at the age of five at the Gezira Sporting Club with her brother, Ahmed. She stopped swimming for a few years. At the age of 11, she **returned** to swimming and won the 50 m and 100 m races. At the age of 12, she was the youngest Egyptian and Arab athlete to win the event and break the record. At 13, she travelled to the United States for a summer camp where she was in the top 10 places of her year group.

swimmer	سباح
dentist	طبيب أسنان
break the record	يحطم الرقم القياسي
Sporting Club	نادٍ رياضي
return	يعود/يرجع
athlete	لاعب رياضي

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is this passage about?

....

2. What does the underlined pronoun "she" refer to?

....

3. How do you think Farida was different to other sports stars?

....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "**returned**" means ....

a) went back b) travelled
c) swam d) broke

5. Farida broke the record when she was ....

a) five b) eleven
c) twelve d) thirteen

6. Farida's .... is a dentist.

a) father b) mother
c) both a and b d) neither a nor b

2 Speaking

▶ Complete the following dialogues:

1. Alaa : Have you got a penfriend, Rana?
Rana : (1) .... Her name is Angelina.
Alaa : (2) ....?
Rana : She is tall. She has got blond hair.

2. Lina : Look! My father is over there.
Rabab : I can't see him. What does he look like?
Lina : (1) ....
Rabab : (2) ....?
Lina : No, he isn't wearing glasses.

3. Hoda : What's your favourite sport, Hend?
Hend : (1) ....
Hoda : (2) ....?
Hend : Yes, I can swim very well and fast.

3 Writing

• **Write about:**

A CHARACTER IN A STORY YOU READ

- What's his/her name?
- What does he/she look like?
- What is he/she like?
- Why do you like him/her?
- Do you want to be like him/her?

A character in a story I read

....
....
....
....

UNIT 4 We're using technology!

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

1 Reading

Read the following text, then answer the questions:

The internet today is a great source of information. There are a lot of good sides to the internet, but there are some dangers of the internet, so you and your family must stay safe online.

As technology improves, more and more people begin to use computers. To stay safe online, many things can be done. First, you can **store** all the personal information, don't give it to anyone. Keep any passwords you have secret.

Young children should be careful when they use the internet. They shouldn't make friends with people they don't know. They also shouldn't send photos to people they don't know.

source	مصدر
store	يخزن
sides	جوانب
improve	يتحسن
information	معلومات
dangers	مخاطر

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title to this text.

....

2. What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?

....

3. Why do you think a lot of people use the internet?

....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Children shouldn't make friends with ....
   a) parents b) many people
   c) their teachers d) strangers

5. The internet has its .... sides.
   a) good b) bad
   c) a and b d) none

6. The underlined word "**store**" means to .... something in a safe place.
   a) write b) throw
   c) buy d) keep

2 Speaking

▶ **Complete the following dialogues:**

1. Soaad : Hi, Sohyla. It's Soaad. (1)..?

Sohyla : I'm sitting with my mother and father at home.

Soaad : (2)..?

Sohyla : No, we are listening to music.

Soaad : Can I come to your house now?

Sohyla : (3)..

2. Mother : Where are you, Sondos?

Sondos : I'm here in my bedroom.

Mother : (1)..?

Sondos : I'm using my tablet.

Mother : (2)..?

Sondos : Yes, I studied my lessons. I also did my homework.

Mother : (3)..

3 Writing

• **Write about:**

ADVANTAGES OF TECHNOLOGY

- What kinds of technology do you use?
- How much time do you spend using them?
- How is technology important?
- Does technology have an effect on your life? Why/Why not?
- Technology makes the world a better place. Explain.

Advantages of technology

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

1 Reading

Read the following text, then answer the questions:

From : fatma@gmail.com
To : azza@yahoo.com
Subject : My holiday
Hi, Azza!

How are you? I hope that you are fine. I am writing this e-mail to inform you about the holiday that I spent in France. I decided to take a break from everything and spend some time with my family. So I visited Paris with my parents. We travelled by plane. It was so much good to visit that **place** as it was full of beauty and nature. We stayed at a good hotel. The hotel was at such a good location and had a very good service. The trip was not too expensive. The food over there was really good. We tried the traditional food of France. I hope you enjoyed hearing about my trip and I am excited to hear about yours.

Stay safe,
Yours,
Fatma

inform	يبلغ
nature	الطبيعة
service	خدمة
beauty	الجمال
location	الموقع
traditional	تقليدى

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of this email?

....

2. What does the underlined word "**place**" refer to?

....

3. Did the writer like her holiday in Paris? Why?

....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The writer went to Paris with his ....

a) teachers b) friends c) family d) school

5. The writer went to Paris by ....

a) ship b) bus c) train d) plane

6. .... wrote this e-mail.

a) Fatma b) Azza c) Parents d) None

2 Speaking

▶ **Complete the following dialogues:**

1. **Nour** : Where did you go last weekend?
   Noran : (1).. .
   Nour : (2)..?
   Noran : I went with my family.
2. **Basel** : Hi, Sandy. How do you usually spend your summer holiday?
   Sandy : (1).. .
   Basel : Hurghada! (2)..?
   Sandy : Yes, we enjoy our time there very much.
3. **Maher** : What did you do yesterday, Mazin?
   Mazin : (1).. .
   Maher : (2)..?
   Mazin : Yes, I saw a lot of animals and birds.
   Maher : (3)..?
   Mazin : Yes, I enjoyed a lot.

3 Writing

- **Write about:**

A DAY YOU CAN'T FORGET

- Where did you go?
- When did you go there?
- Who did you go with?
- How did you go there?
- How did you enjoy your time there?
- What did you do there?

A day I can't forget

....
....
....
....
....
....

UNIT 6 Let's eat!

Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

1 Reading

Read the following text, then answer the questions:

I went to a nearby café for lunch with my sister. But the service was not really good and the chips were too terrible to finish. When we arrived at 1:40, we had to wait 20 minutes while they got our table ready. OK, because we didn't book before we came, but the restaurant was only half full. There was no reason to make us wait at all.

We ordered the chips as a side dish and they looked delicious. But, when we tasted them, they were overcooked, so we left most of them. When the waiter asked if everything was OK, we said we really didn't like the chips and he said, "That's funny, I love them," and that was it. He didn't offer us anything else or take them off our bill. Also, when we didn't leave a tip, he looked **annoyed**.

service	الخدمة
book	يحجز
bill	فاتورة
tip	بقشيش
overcooked	مطبوخ بدرجة زائدة

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What's the main idea of the passage?

....

2. Why didn't the writer like the café?

....

3. Do you want to go to that café? Why/Why not?

....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "they" refers to ....

a) the chips **b)** the waiters

c) daughter **d)** people

5. They started to eat at ....

a) 1:40 **b)** 2:40

c) 2:00 **d)** 2:20

6. The underlined word "**annoyed**" means ....

a) strange **b)** kind

c) angry **d)** nice

2 Speaking

▶ **Complete the following dialogues:**

1. Samir : It is important to eat healthy food.
Samar : (1) ....?
Samir : I like meat and salad. (2) ....?
Samar : I like fish.

2. Grandma : Would you like some cake?
Nelly : (1) ....?
Grandma : No, there aren't any nuts in it.
Nelly : OK, I'll take some.
Grandma : (2) ....?
Nelly : Yes, but don't put too much sugar.

3. Waiter : Are you ready to order?
Customer : (1) ....
Waiter : (2) ....?
Customer : Yes, a salad, please.
Waiter : That's 50 pounds, please.

3 Writing

- **Write about:**

HEALTHY DIET

- What does healthy diet mean?
- Why should we have healthy diet?
- Which food is good for us?
- Which food is bad for us?
- What does healthy food contain?
- How does healthy food affect our life?

Healthy diet

....
....
....
....

رقم الإيداع: ٩٦٢٤ / ٢٠٢٣
ترخيص وزارة التربية والتعليم
رقم ١٠٣/ ٩/ ٢/ ١١٣
NAHDET MISR
PUBLISHING HOUSE

بسم الله الرحمن الرحيم

قام بإعداد هذه النسخة pdf
وفهرستها ورفعها :
د محمد أحمد محمد عاصم
نسألكم الدعاء